



*Executive Series*

# 2426 Printer Family



## User's Guide

### Windows<sup>®</sup>

For the latest info, go to <http://my.okidata.com>

59366901

**OKI**

## Copyright Information

### Document Name

Executive Series 2426 Printer Family  
User's Guide for Windows  
P/N 59366901

### Disclaimer

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this document is complete, accurate, and up-to-date. The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for the results of errors beyond its control. The manufacturer also cannot guarantee that changes in software and equipment made by other manufacturers and referred to in this document will not affect the applicability of the information in it. Mention of software products manufactured by other companies does not necessarily constitute endorsement by the manufacturer.

While all reasonable efforts have been made to make this document as accurate and helpful as possible, we make no warranty of any kind, expressed or implied, as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained herein.

The most up-to-date drivers and manuals are available from the website <http://my.okidata.com>.

### Copyright Information

Copyright © 2004. All rights reserved.

First Edition, September, 2004

Revision 1.00

Written and produced by the Oki Data Training and Publications Department



As an ENERGY STAR® Program Participant, the manufacturer has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

This product complies with the requirements of the Council Directives 89/336/EEC (EMC) and 73/23/EEC (LVD) as amended where applicable on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to electromagnetic compatibility and low voltage.

### Trademark Information

Oki and Microline are registered trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Company Ltd. ENERGY STAR is a registered trademark of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Hewlett-Packard, HP, and LaserJet are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Microsoft, MS-DOS and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Apple, Macintosh and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Computers Inc. Other product names and brand names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their proprietors.

# Contents

<b>Notes, Cautions, etc.</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>19</b>
Printer Models and Features.....	19
Summary Table .....	19
Descriptions.....	20
How to use this manual .....	21
Online .....	21
Printing Pages.....	22
<b>Getting Started</b> .....	<b>23</b>
Unpacking .....	23
Printer Drivers, Software Utilities, and Documentation .....	24
Where to put the printer .....	25
Weight Requirements .....	25
Space Requirements .....	25
Parts of the Printer.....	26
External.....	26
Internal.....	27
Back.....	28
<b>Setting Up</b> .....	<b>29</b>
Shipping Materials: Removing.....	29
Toner .....	34
Installation .....	34
TONER LOW or CHANGE TONER .....	39
TONER SAVE Mode .....	40
Printing Black.....	41
Loading Paper .....	42
Tray 1.....	42
Letterhead .....	47
Envelopes .....	48
Paper Out.....	49
Choosing the Paper Tray (Paper Feed).....	52
Printing Paths .....	53
Face Up / Straight Through .....	53
Face Down .....	54
Manual Feed .....	55
Power.....	56
Connecting the power cable .....	56
POWER SAVE Mode .....	57
Turn Off the Printer.....	59

Hard Disk Drive not installed.....	59
Hard Disk Drive installed.....	60
Interfaces .....	61
Location Diagram.....	61
Parallel.....	62
USB .....	62
Network .....	62
Control (Front) Panel .....	63
Lights and Display.....	63
Diagram and Explanations .....	63
Buttons.....	64
Diagram and Explanations .....	64
Language of Display: Changing.....	66
Paper (Media).....	67
Size .....	67
Selecting.....	67
Paper Feed, Exit Path, and Duplex Options .....	69
Weight and Type .....	70
Selecting.....	70
Paper Feed, Exit Path, and Duplex Options .....	72
Paper, US Bond (Metric) .....	72
Transparencies and Labels .....	73
Recommendations .....	74
Adjusting the Color .....	77
Adjust the Color Intensity	
(Color Tuning) .....	77
Print the Color Tuning Pattern .....	78
Sample Color Tuning Pattern .....	79
Example: Adjust the Magenta .....	80
Printer Settings (Menu Settings) .....	82
Printing a list of the Current Settings .....	82
(MenuMap).....	82
Changing the Printer Settings.....	83
Reset to Factory Defaults .....	84
Lists of Available Settings by Menu .....	85
<b>Windows XP .....</b>	<b>119</b>
Printer Drivers .....	119
Which Printer Driver to Use? .....	120
Memory: Enabling.....	121
PostScript Only.....	121
Hard Disk Drive: Enabling.....	122
PostScript.....	122

PCL .....	123
Paper Trays: Enabling .....	124
PostScript.....	124
PCL .....	125
Duplex Unit: Enabling .....	126
PostScript .....	126
PCL.....	127
Paper Feed, Size and Media .....	128
Changing Defaults .....	128
PostScript .....	128
PCL .....	133
Network Printer Status Utility.....	138
Operation .....	139
Factors that Affect Color Printing.....	140
Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors .....	141
(Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can re- produce).....	141
Viewing Conditions.....	141
Printer Driver Color Settings.....	141
Monitor Settings .....	142
How your Software Application Displays Color.....	143
Paper Type.....	143
Color Matching .....	144
Choosing a Method .....	144
RGB or CMYK? .....	145
Matching Photographs.....	146
Matching Specific Colors .....	147
(Example: Company logo) .....	147
Printing Vivid Colors .....	148
PCL Driver .....	149
Print Color Swatch Utility.....	152
PostScript Driver .....	153
OKI Color Matching.....	155
PostScript .....	155
PostScript Color Matching .....	157
Using ICC Profiles .....	159
PostScript Only .....	159
Windows ICM Color Matching.....	162
PCL or PostScript.....	162
Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet .....	163
(N-Up Printing).....	163
PostScript.....	163

PCL.....	164
Custom Page Sizes .....	166
PostScript.....	166
PCL.....	170
Print Resolution.....	174
PCL or PostScript .....	174
Duplex Printing .....	175
(Printing on Both Sides of the Paper) .....	175
PostScript.....	175
PCL.....	177
Printing Booklets.....	179
PostScript.....	179
PCL.....	182
Printing Watermarks .....	184
PCL Only.....	184
Collating.....	186
PCL or PostScript .....	186
Proof and Print .....	187
PCL or PostScript .....	187
Secure Printing .....	191
(Printing Confidential Documents).....	191
PCL or PostScript .....	191
Hard Disk Drive .....	195
PCL or PostScript .....	195
Overlays .....	199
What are Overlays? .....	199
Example of Using Overlays .....	199
Creating Overlays.....	200
Creating documents to use as overlays.....	201
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay .....	203
Defining Overlays .....	205
Printing Posters .....	212
PCL Only.....	212
<b>Windows 2000.....</b>	<b>214</b>
Printer Drivers .....	214
Which Printer Driver to Use? .....	215
Memory: Enabling.....	216
PostScript Only.....	216
Hard Disk Drive: Enabling.....	217
PostScript.....	217
PCL .....	218
Paper Trays: Enabling .....	219

PostScript.....	219
PCL .....	220
Duplex Unit: Enabling .....	221
PostScript.....	221
PCL.....	222
Paper Feed, Size and Media .....	223
Changing Defaults .....	223
PostScript .....	223
PCL .....	228
Network Printer Status Utility.....	233
Operation .....	234
Factors that Affect Color Printing.....	235
Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors .....	236
(Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can re- produce).....	236
Viewing Conditions.....	236
Printer Driver Color Settings.....	236
Monitor Settings .....	237
How your Software Application Displays Color.....	238
Paper Type.....	238
Color Matching .....	239
Choosing a Method.....	239
RGB or CMYK? .....	240
Matching Photographs.....	241
Matching Specific Colors .....	242
(Example: Company logo).....	242
Printing Vivid Colors .....	243
PCL Driver .....	244
Print Color Swatch Utility.....	247
PostScript Driver .....	248
OKI Color Matching.....	250
PostScript .....	250
PostScript Color Matching .....	252
Using ICC Profiles .....	254
PostScript Only .....	254
Windows ICM Color Matching.....	257
PCL or PostScript.....	257
Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet .....	258
(N-Up Printing).....	258
PostScript.....	258
PCL.....	259
Custom Page Sizes.....	261

PostScript.....	261
PCL.....	265
Print Resolution.....	270
PCL or PostScript.....	270
Duplex Printing.....	271
(Printing on Both Sides of the Paper).....	271
PostScript.....	271
PCL.....	273
Printing Booklets.....	275
PostScript.....	275
PCL.....	278
Printing Watermarks.....	280
PCL Only.....	280
Collating.....	282
PCL or PostScript.....	282
Proof and Print.....	283
PCL or PostScript.....	283
Secure Printing.....	287
(Printing Confidential Documents).....	287
PCL or PostScript.....	287
Hard Disk Drive.....	292
PCL or PostScript.....	292
Overlays.....	296
What are Overlays?.....	296
Example of Using Overlays.....	296
Creating Overlays.....	297
Creating documents to use as overlays.....	298
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay.....	300
Defining Overlays.....	302
Printing Posters.....	309
PCL Only.....	309
<b>Windows Me/98/95.....</b>	<b>311</b>
Printer Drivers.....	311
Which Printer Driver to Use?.....	311
Memory: Enabling.....	312
PostScript Only.....	312
Hard Disk Drive: Enabling.....	314
PostScript or PCL.....	314
Paper Trays: Enabling.....	315
PostScript or PCL.....	315
Duplex Unit: Enabling.....	316
PostScript or PCL.....	316



Paper Feed, Size and Media .....	317
Changing Defaults .....	317
PostScript or PCL .....	317
Network Printer Status Utility .....	321
Operation .....	322
Factors that Affect Color Printing .....	323
Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors .....	324
(Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can re- produce).....	324
Viewing Conditions.....	325
Printer Driver Color Settings.....	325
Monitor Settings .....	326
How your Software Application Displays Color.....	327
Paper Type.....	327
Color Matching .....	328
Choosing a Method .....	328
General Information .....	328
RGB or CMYK? .....	329
Matching Photographs.....	330
Matching Specific Colors .....	331
(Example: Company logo) .....	331
Printing Vivid Colors .....	332
PCL Driver .....	333
Print Color Swatch Utility.....	336
PostScript Driver .....	337
PostScript Driver .....	339
OKI Color Matching .....	339
PostScript Color Matching.....	341
Using ICC Profiles .....	344
Windows ICM Color Matching.....	346
Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet .....	347
(N-Up Printing).....	347
PostScript.....	347
PCL.....	349
Custom Page Sizes .....	351
PostScript.....	351
PCL.....	355
Print Resolution.....	360
PCL or PostScript .....	360
Duplex Printing .....	362
(Printing on Both Sides of the Paper) .....	362
PostScript or PCL .....	362

Printing Booklets.....	365
PCL and Windows Me .....	365
Printing Watermarks .....	367
PostScript.....	367
PCL.....	369
Collating.....	371
PCL or PostScript .....	371
Font Substitution .....	372
PostScript Only .....	372
Proof and Print .....	373
PCL or PostScript .....	373
Secure Printing .....	377
(Printing Confidential Documents).....	377
PCL or PostScript .....	377
Hard Disk Drive .....	381
PCL or PostScript .....	381
Overlays .....	386
What are Overlays? .....	386
Example of Using Overlays.....	386
Creating Overlays.....	387
Creating documents to use as overlays.....	388
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay .....	390
Defining Overlays .....	392
Printing Posters .....	399
PCL Only.....	399
<b>Windows NT .....</b>	<b>401</b>
Printer Drivers .....	401
Which Printer Driver to Use? .....	402
Memory: Enabling.....	403
PostScript Only.....	403
Hard Disk Drive: Enabling.....	404
PostScript.....	404
PCL .....	405
Paper Trays: Enabling .....	406
PostScript.....	406
PCL .....	407
Duplex Unit: Enabling .....	408
PostScript.....	408
PCL.....	409
Paper Feed, Size and Media .....	410
Changing Defaults .....	410
PostScript .....	410

PCL .....	414
Network Printer Status Utility .....	419
Operation .....	420
Factors that Affect Color Printing .....	421
Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors .....	422
(Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can re- produce).....	422
Viewing Conditions.....	422
Printer Driver Color Settings.....	422
Monitor Settings .....	423
How your Software Application Displays Color.....	424
Paper Type.....	424
Color Matching .....	425
Choosing a Method .....	425
RGB or CMYK? .....	426
Matching Photographs.....	427
Matching Specific Colors .....	428
(Example: Company logo) .....	428
Printing Vivid Colors .....	429
PCL Driver .....	430
Print Color Swatch Utility .....	433
PostScript Driver .....	434
OKI Color Matching.....	436
PostScript .....	436
PostScript Color Matching .....	438
Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet .....	440
(N-Up Printing).....	440
PostScript.....	440
PCL.....	441
Custom Page Sizes .....	443
PostScript.....	443
PCL.....	449
Print Resolution.....	454
PCL or PostScript .....	454
Duplex Printing .....	456
(Printing on Both Sides of the Paper) .....	456
PostScript.....	456
PCL.....	458
Printing Booklets.....	460
PCL Only.....	460
Printing Watermarks .....	462
PCL Only.....	462

Collating .....	464
PCL or PostScript .....	464
Proof and Print .....	465
PCL or PostScript .....	465
Secure Printing .....	469
(Printing Confidential Documents).....	469
PCL or PostScript .....	469
Hard Disk Drive .....	473
PCL or PostScript .....	473
Overlays .....	478
What are Overlays? .....	478
When to Use Overlays.....	478
Example of Using Overlays.....	478
Creating Files for Overlays .....	479
Requirements for Using .....	480
Read This First .....	480
Hardware / Software Requirements.....	480
Required Actions .....	480
Storage Requirements.....	481
Locations .....	481
Maximum Available Space .....	481
Creating documents to use as overlays .....	482
PCL.....	482
PostScript.....	483
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay .....	484
PCL or PostScript .....	484
Defining Overlays.....	486
PostScript.....	486
PCL.....	490
Printing Posters .....	493
PCL Only.....	493
<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>495</b>
Adding Paper.....	495
Changing the Toner Cartridge.....	498
Changing the Image Drum .....	505
Changing the Transfer Belt .....	508
Changing the Fuser.....	514
Cleaning the LED heads.....	517
<b>Moving (Shipping) the Printer .....</b>	<b>520</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>522</b>
Messages on Control (Front) Panel Display .....	522

List of Messages .....	522
Repeating Asterisk (*) Symbol .....	526
Paper Jams.....	527
Clearing .....	527
Check the paper tray.....	528
Check behind the front cover .....	529
Check the transfer belt.....	530
Check behind the rear cover.....	531
Check the fuser unit.....	532
Check the paper separator .....	534
Check the duplex unit.....	535
Check additional paper trays .....	537
Examples of Paper Jams.....	538
Paper jams are frequent .....	538
More than one sheet feeds at a time .....	538
Paper curls.....	538
Paper feeds at an angle.....	538
Printer does not print after jam is cleared.....	539
Print Quality Problems .....	540
Stripes: White .....	540
Stripes: Black.....	540
Blurred letter edges.....	541
Faded Output .....	542
Shading on unprinted sections.....	543
Toner rubs off the output.....	543
Output is garbled or incorrect.....	543
Parallel Interface Problems .....	544
Parallel Transmission Mode .....	544
Cannot configure for parallel connection .....	545
Output is garbled or incorrect.....	546
USB Problems .....	547
Cannot configure for USB connection .....	547
Cannot print.....	548
Application Error.....	549
General Protection Fault.....	549
Paper Size Change request .....	550
Printer does not go online.....	551
Printer makes a strange noise.....	551
Printer takes a long time to start printing .....	552
Printing is slow.....	553
Printing does not start.....	553
Printing cancels .....	553

<b>Accessories</b> .....	<b>554</b>
Memory (Additional) .....	555
When to Install .....	555
Available Amounts .....	555
How to Install .....	556
Hard Disk Drive .....	562
Initialize Automatically .....	565
Initialize Manually.....	565
Duplex Unit.....	566
Installation .....	566
Paper Trays.....	567
Installation .....	567
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>572</b>
<b>Consumables</b> .....	<b>575</b>
Toner .....	575
Drums .....	575
Fuser Units .....	576
Transfer Belt.....	576
OKI® Print Media.....	577
OKI SynFlex™.....	577
OKI Bright White Proofing Paper.....	577
OKI Premium Card Stock .....	577
OKI Premium Color Transparencies .....	577
OKI Premium Envelopes.....	578
<b>Factory Default Settings</b> .....	<b>579</b>
Print Menu.....	579
Media Menu .....	580
Color Menu .....	581
System Configuration Menu .....	582
PCL Emulation Menu.....	583
PPR Emulation Menu.....	584
FX Emulation Menu.....	585
Parallel Menu .....	586
USB Menu.....	587
Network Menu.....	588
Memory Menu.....	589
Disk Maintenance Menu .....	590
System Adjust Menu .....	591
Maintenance Menu.....	592
<b>Color Swatch Utility</b> .....	<b>593</b>
General Information .....	593

Printing Color Swatches .....	594
Creating Custom Swatch Colors .....	596
<b>PDF Direct Print Utility.....</b>	<b>597</b>
General Information .....	597
Requirements for Use.....	597
Using .....	598
<b>Storage Device Manager .....</b>	<b>600</b>
for Windows .....	600
General Information .....	600
Summary of Functions .....	601
Installation.....	602
Getting Help .....	603
Network Administrator Functions.....	604
Notes and Cautions.....	605
Using .....	606
Opening the Program.....	606
Setting Up an Administrative Password.....	607
Forms .....	608
PostScript.....	608
Step 1: Create the Form.....	609
Step 2: Create a New Project.....	610
Step 3a: Add Files to the Project .....	611
Step 3b: Delete Files from the Project.....	611
Step 4: Store the Files.....	612
Step 5: Save the Project and Download it to the Printer .....	613
Step 6: Test Print the Form.....	614
PCL .....	615
Step 1: Create the Forms in Your Software Application.....	616
Step 2: Create a New Project.....	616
Step 3: Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format .....	617
Step 4a: Add Files to the Project .....	619
Step 4b: Delete Files from the Project.....	619
Step 5: Check File Settings and Save the Project.....	620
Step 6: Download the Project .....	621
Step 7: Test Print the Form.....	622
Printing the File List.....	623
Using Storage Device Manager.....	623
From the Control (Front) Panel .....	623
Internal Hard Disk Drive: Maintenance .....	624
Flash Memory: Maintenance.....	624
View and Delete Files .....	624

HDD Print Jobs Feature .....	624
Delete Files .....	626
Show Resources Feature .....	626
Overlays .....	628
What are Overlays? .....	628
When to Use Overlays .....	628
Example of Using Overlays.....	628
Creating Files for Overlays .....	629
Requirements for Using.....	630
Windows 2000 and XP: PCL .....	632
Windows 2000: PCL .....	633
Windows Me/98/95: PCL.....	636
Windows Me/98/95: PostScript.....	640
Windows NT: PostScript.....	641
Windows NT: PCL .....	642
<b>Print Job Accounting Utility .....</b>	<b>644</b>
Introduction .....	644
Overview .....	646
Sample Network Diagram .....	646
Requirements .....	646
Operating System Requirements .....	647
Server (Windows Only).....	647
Client Computers (Windows or Macintosh).....	647
Installation.....	648
Installing the Print Job Accounting Server Software .....	648
Installing the Print Job Accounting Client Software .....	649
Server Software Capabilities .....	651
User Name Versus Account ID.....	653
User Name .....	653
Account ID .....	653
Server Software .....	655
Starting the Server Software.....	655
Server Software Pull-Down Menus.....	657
Setting Up Automatic Email .....	663
Defining Printer Groups .....	665
Registering Printers .....	667
Changing Settings for a Registered Printer .....	687
Setting Up Account IDs.....	688
Print Logs .....	703
Client Software.....	716
Starting the Client Software .....	716
Setting the User Name and Account ID .....	716



Checking the Status of Printers on the Network .....	719
Troubleshooting .....	726
Known Problems / Solutions .....	727
Uninstalling Print Job Accounting .....	728
Uninstall the Client Software .....	729
<b>PrintSuperVision.....</b>	<b>730</b>
General Information .....	730
Features .....	730
Using .....	731
Types of Users .....	731
Typical Usage Scenarios .....	731
System Requirements .....	732
Server Software .....	732
Client Software.....	732
Additional Information.....	732
<b>Network Printer Status Utility .....</b>	<b>733</b>
General Information .....	733
Installation.....	733
Using .....	734
Checking the Printer Status .....	736
<b>Oki LPR Utility.....</b>	<b>737</b>
General Information .....	737
How to Install.....	737
Oki LPR Status Box .....	738
Additional Information.....	738
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>739</b>

# Notes, Cautions, etc.

## **NOTE**

A note appears like this. A note provides additional information to supplement the main text which helps you to use and understand the product.

## **CAUTION!**

A caution appears like this. A caution provides additional information which, if ignored, may result in equipment malfunction or damage.

## **WARNING!**

*A warning appears like this. A warning provides additional information which, if ignored, may result in a risk of personal injury.*

## **Important!**

An important message appears like this. An important message provides supplemental information which can prevent potential problems.

# Introduction

Congratulations on purchasing this color printer!

This chapter summarizes the main features of your printer.

It also explains how to use this User's Guide to get the most from your printer.

## Printer Models and Features

### Summary Table

Model	Resolution	Print speed	Network card	Duplex unit	Memory	Hard disk
ES2426n	600 x 1200 dpi	24 ppm color <sup>a</sup>	Standard	Option	128 MB	Optional 20 GB HDD
ES2426dn	600 x 1200 dpi	24 ppm color <sup>a</sup>	Standard	Standard	128 MB	Optional 20 GB HDD
ES2426e	1200 x 1200 dpi	24 ppm color <sup>a</sup>	Standard	Standard	256 MB	Optional 20 GB HDD

a. 26 ppm monochrome

# Printer Models and Features

## Descriptions

- Single pass digital technology for high quality, speed and reliability.
- Versatile paper handling:
  - Standard 530-sheet paper tray
  - Standard 100-sheet multi purpose tray for card stock, envelopes, labels, etc.
  - Optional 530-sheet paper trays providing up to a maximum of 1690-sheet capacity
- High capacity 20Gb hard disk drive (optional).
- Flexible interfaces with automatic switching:
  - USB
  - High-speed, bi-directional parallel (IEEE-1284)
  - Industry standard network connectivity via internal network interface card
- Environmentally friendly: the advanced power save mode minimizes power consumption and the separate toner and drum design cuts down on waste.
- Automatic color balance adjustment: To ensure consistent output at all times, the printer automatically performs a color check when the machine is switched on or when the top cover is opened and closed. After the check, the printer automatically adjusts the color balance. It can even be set to adjust the color balance during long print runs.
- Auto media detect: detects the weight of the media being fed through the printer then automatically adjusts the fusing temperature, speed (if necessary) and transfer voltage to ensure correct fusing and print quality.
- Duplex printing for fast two-sided output (standard on dn and e models, optional on n models).

## How to use this manual

This manual covers the unpacking, setup and operation of your printer. It helps you use your printer's many features.

This manual also includes:

- troubleshooting information
- maintenance guidelines
- instructions for adding options

### NOTES

**This User's Guide was written using one printer as a model. The illustrations/screenshots reflect this.**

**The information in this manual is supplemented by the extensive online help facility in the printer driver software.**

### Online

Use Adobe Acrobat Reader to read this manual on screen.

Use the navigation and viewing tools provided in Acrobat.

You can access specific information in two ways:

- In the list of bookmarks down the left hand side of your screen, click the topic of interest to jump to the required topic. (If the bookmarks are not available, use the Table of Contents.)
- In the list of bookmarks click Index to jump to the Index. (If the bookmarks are not available, use the Table of Contents.) Find the term of interest in the alphabetically arranged index. Click the associated page number to jump to the page containing the subject.

## Printing Pages

The whole book, individual pages, or sections may be printed.

### NOTE

**The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. If you plan to print parts of this manual, choose a PostScript driver. Otherwise, the graphics print at low resolution. The print quality may not be satisfactory.**

The procedure for printing from Acrobat Reader is:

1. From the toolbar, select **File**, then **Print** (or press the Ctrl + P keys).
2. Choose the pages you wish to print:
  - a. **All pages** for the entire manual.
  - b. **Current page** for the page at which you are looking.
  - c. **Pages from** and **to** for a range of pages. You select the range by entering the appropriate page numbers.
3. Click **OK**.

# Getting Started

## Unpacking

### WARNING

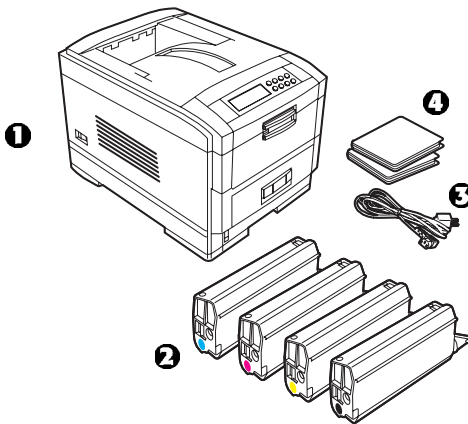
*This printer weighs 106 lbs. (48 kg).  
Two people are required to lift the printer safely.*

Unpack the printer.

Save all of the packing materials. Use them if you have to move (ship) the printer.

Choose a suitable place to put the printer.

Check that you have all of these parts BEFORE you continue.



1. The printer
2. Toner cartridges (4) [cyan, magenta, yellow and black]
3. Power cable
4. Documentation: Setup Guide, Software Installation Guide, Warranty booklet.
5. LED lens cleaner (not illustrated)
6. Light-proof plastic bags (not illustrated)
7. CD(s) [not illustrated]

## **Printer Drivers, Software Utilities, and Documentation**

The CDs supplied with your printer contain:

Drivers

Color Utilities

Network Utilities

Manuals



# Where to put the printer

## Weight Requirements

Place the printer on a flat surface large enough and strong enough to accept the size and weight of the printer.

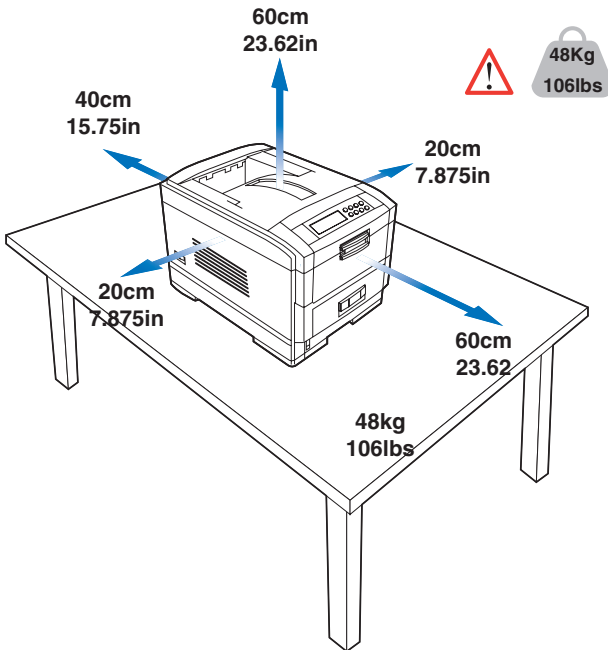
### WARNING

*This printer weighs 106 lbs. (48 kg).*

*Two people are required to lift the printer safely.*

## Space Requirements

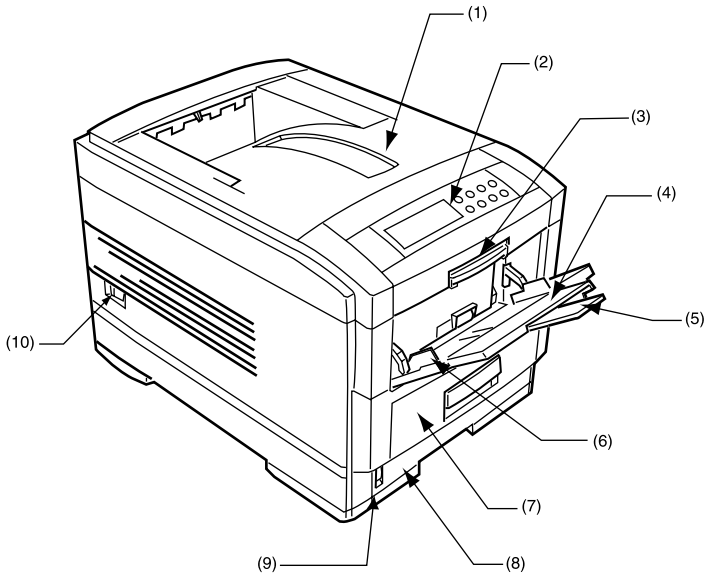
There must be enough space around the printer to allow for access and printer maintenance.



# Parts of the Printer

## External

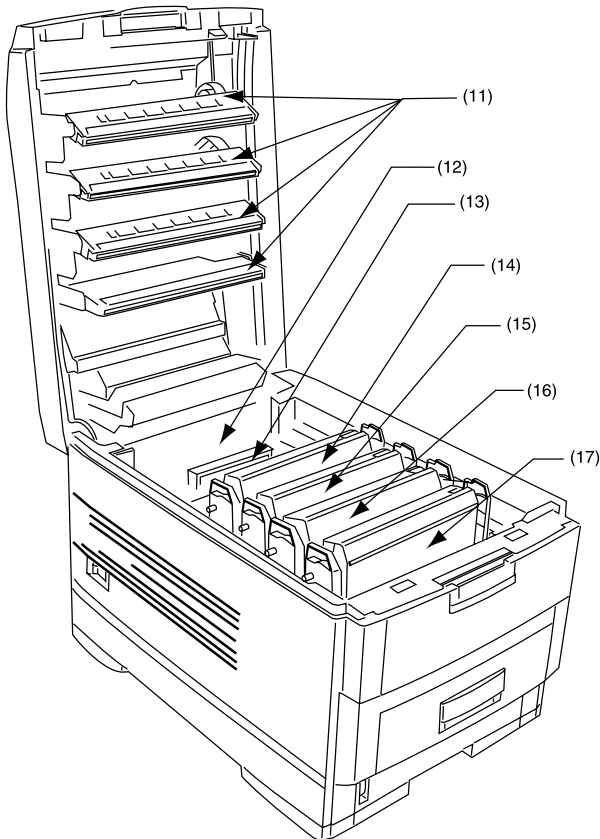
1. Top cover
2. Control panel
3. Top cover release catch
4. Multi purpose tray (manual feed)
5. Paper support extension
6. Paper guides
7. Front cover
8. Paper tray
9. Paper level indicator
10. Power switch



# Parts of the Printer

## Internal

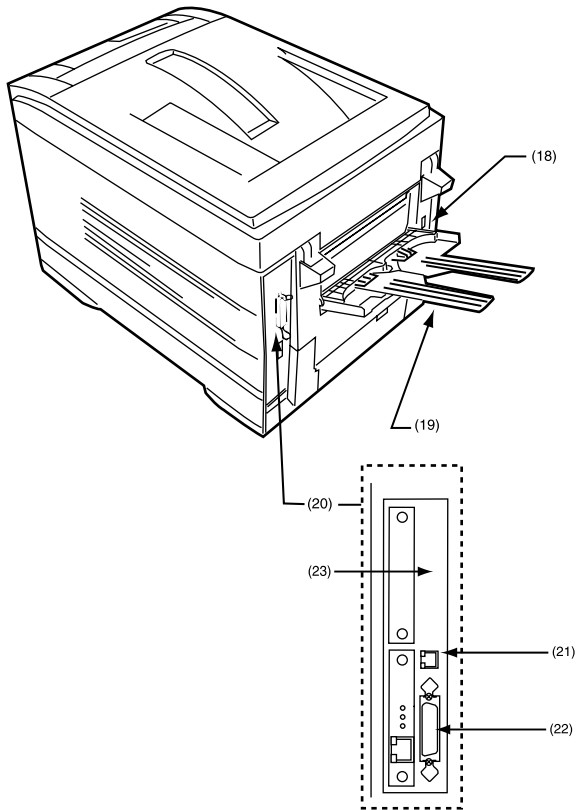
- 11. LED heads (4)
- 12. Discharge roller
- 13. Fuser unit
- 14. Image drum and toner cartridge (cyan)
- 15. Image drum and toner cartridge (magenta)
- 16. Image drum and toner cartridge (yellow)
- 17. Image drum and toner cartridge (black)



# Parts of the Printer

## Back

- 18. Power connector
- 19. Rear exit paper tray
- 20. Interfaces and option card slot
- 21. USB interface connector
- 22. Parallel interface connector
- 23. Network interface card



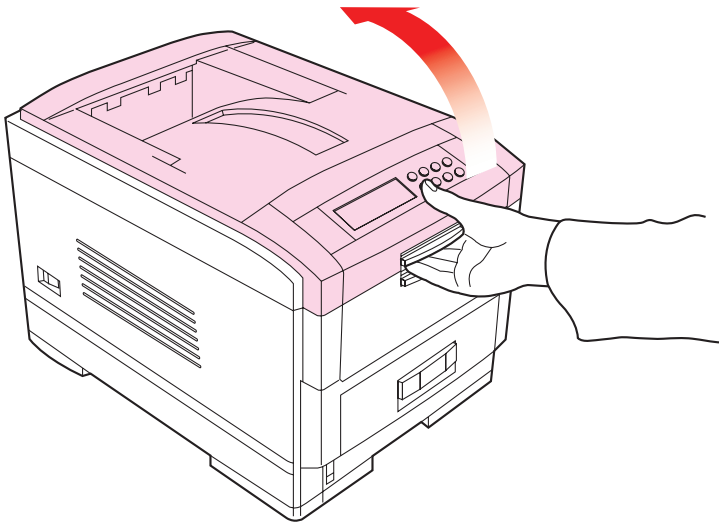
# Setting Up

Before connecting this printer to the computer and power supply

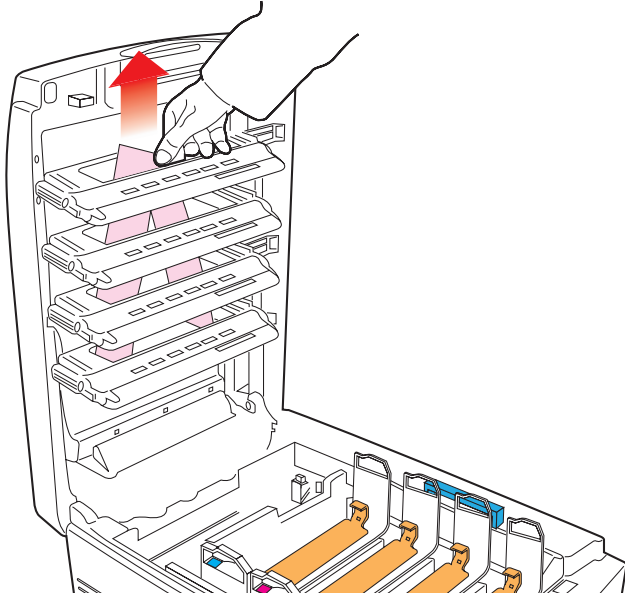
- the shipping packaging must be removed
- the toner cartridges must be installed
- and paper must be loaded.

## Shipping Materials: Removing

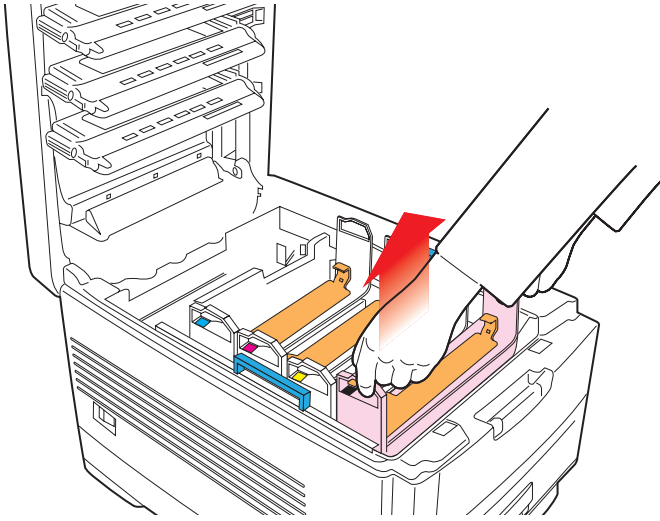
1. Remove any adhesive tape and packaging from the printer.
2. Use the release handle to open the top cover.



3. Remove the LED head restrainer from behind the LED heads in the top cover.



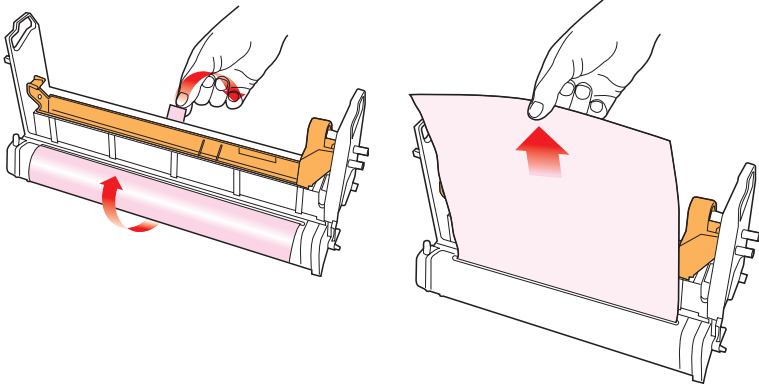
4. Remove the black image drum and place it on a level surface.



## CAUTION!

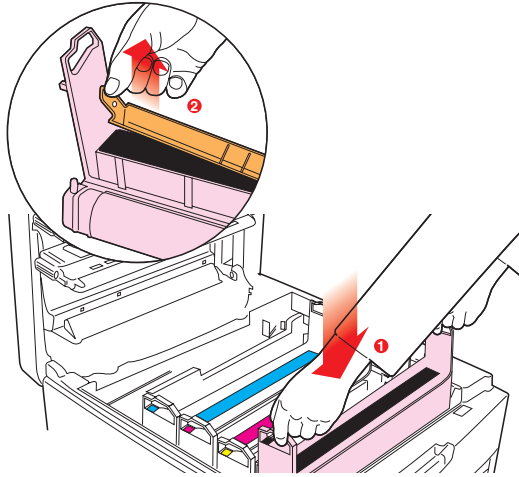
- Never expose image drums to light for more than 5 minutes.
- Always hold image drum by the ends.
- Never expose image drums to direct sunlight.
- Never touch the green surface of the drum.

5. Remove the protective sheet.





6. Put the black image drum back into the printer (1). Push the tab (2) inwards and remove the blanking plate from the drum.
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6 for each color drum.



# Toner

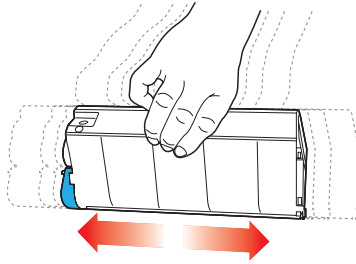
## Installation

### **WARNING!**

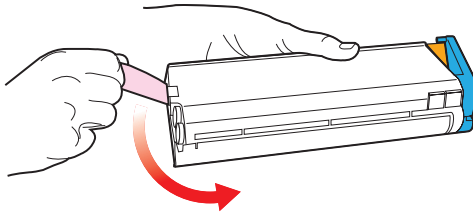
*Take extreme care when handling toner.*

- *Toner can be harmful if inhaled, swallowed or if it gets in the eyes.*
- *Toner can also stain hands and clothing.*
- *See the Material Safety Data Sheets in your Warranty, Regulatory and Safety Information booklet for more information.*

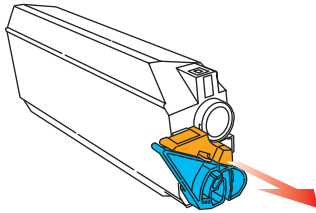
1. Remove the black toner cartridge from the package.
2. Shake the toner cartridge back and forth several times.



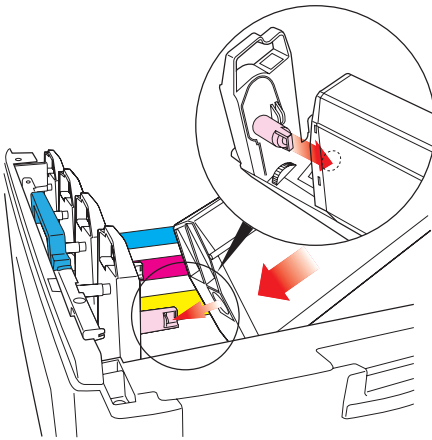
3. Hold the toner as shown. Remove the tape.



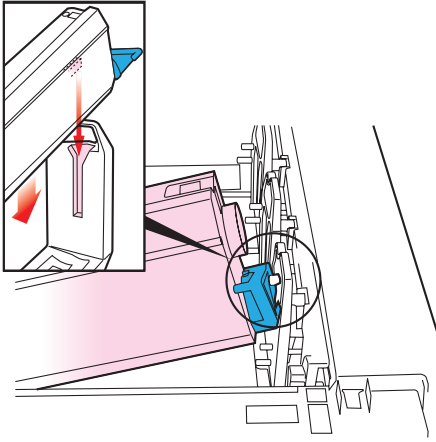
4. Remove the plastic clip from behind the colored lever.



5. Insert the toner cartridge into the black image drum, left side first, engaging the drum locating peg in the hole in the toner cartridge. *Make sure the colors of the toner cartridge and image drum correspond!*



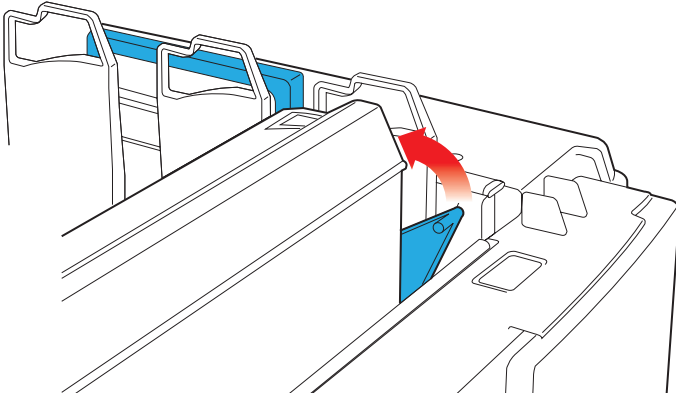
6. *Gently* push the toner cartridge down engaging the locking pin into the groove on the image drum.



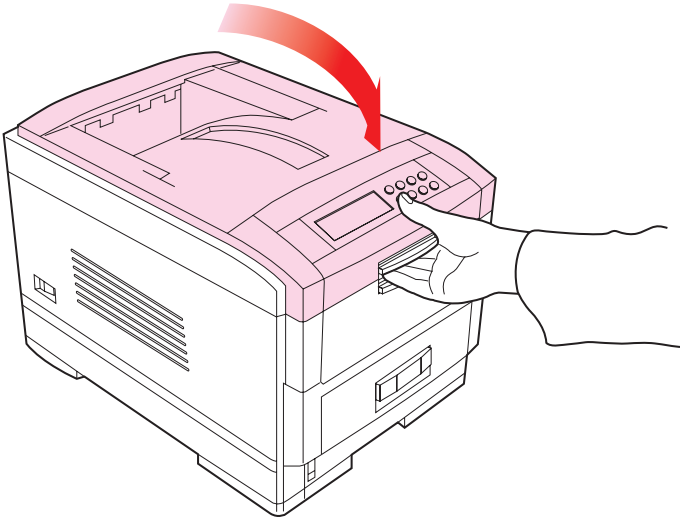
7. *Gently* push the colored lever toward the rear of the machine until it stops. This releases the toner into the image drum.

### **CAUTION!**

The lever should go back easily. If the lever resists moving, **STOP**. Press down on the cartridge to be sure that it is firmly in place before proceeding.



8. Repeat the process for each color toner cartridge.  
Make sure to match the color toner to the color image drum.
9. Close the top cover.



## **Toner**

### **TONER LOW or CHANGE TONER**

#### **NOTE**

After installing the new toner cartridges, the message **TONER LOW** or **CHANGE TONER** may appear on the display. If this message does not disappear after a few pages have printed, reinstall the appropriate toner cartridge.

# Toner

## **TONER SAVE Mode**

Use Toner Save to maximize the life of your toner cartridges.

Toner Save is turned on or off through the Print Menu.

### **Turn the feature on or off**

1. Press **ONLINE**. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press **MENU** repeatedly until **PRINT MENU** displays.
3. Press **SELECT**.
4. Press **ITEM** (either + or -) repeatedly until **TONER SAVE** displays.
5. Press **VALUE** (either + or -) until the desired status displays.  
**ON**: Toner Save is activated (turned on).  
**OFF**: Toner Save is deactivated (turned off).
6. Press **SELECT**.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected status.
7. When you are finished, press **ONLINE**. **ONLINE** displays.



# Toner

## Printing Black

Your printer prints the color black in one of two ways:

- Composite Black
- True Black

## Composite Black

The cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toners are *combined* to create composite black.

Use composite black when printing photographs.

## True Black

*Only* black toner is used to print true black.

Use true black when printing a combination of text and graphics.

## Printer (Menu) Setting: True Black

True Black is turned on or off through the PCL Emulation Menu.

This setting *only* applies in PCL mode.

### Turn the feature on or off

1. Press ONLINE. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press MENU repeatedly until **PCL EMUL MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) repeatedly until **TRUE BLACK** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the desired status displays.  
**ON**: True Black is activated (turned on).  
**OFF**: True Black is deactivated (turned off).
6. Press SELECT.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected status.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Loading Paper

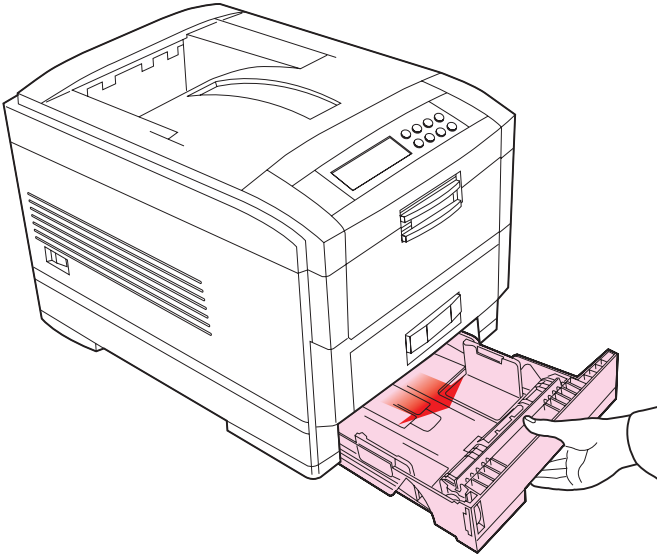
## Tray 1

### CAUTION!

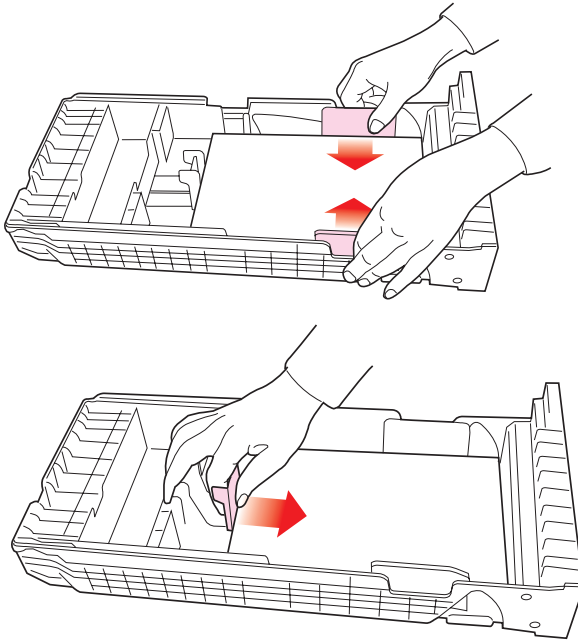
To prevent paper jams

- Don't leave space between the paper and the paper guides and rear stopper.
- Don't overfill the paper tray. Capacity depends on the type of paper and the paper weight. (max. 550 sheets of 20-lb. US Bond—75 g/m<sup>2</sup>—paper).
- Don't load damaged paper.
- Don't load paper of different sizes, paper quality or thickness at the same time.
- Don't remove the paper tray during printing.
- Close the paper tray *gently*.

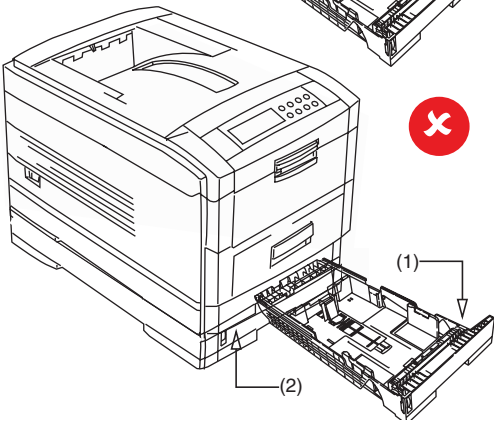
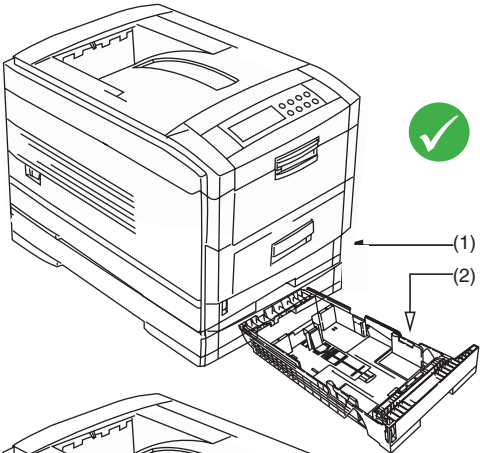
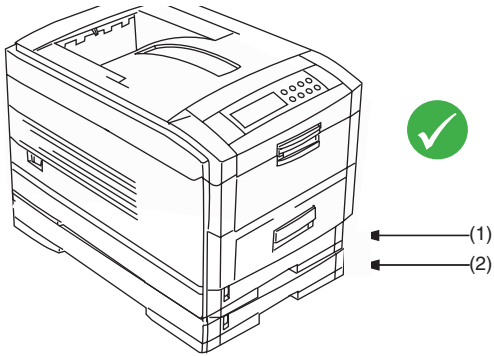
1. Pull out the paper tray.



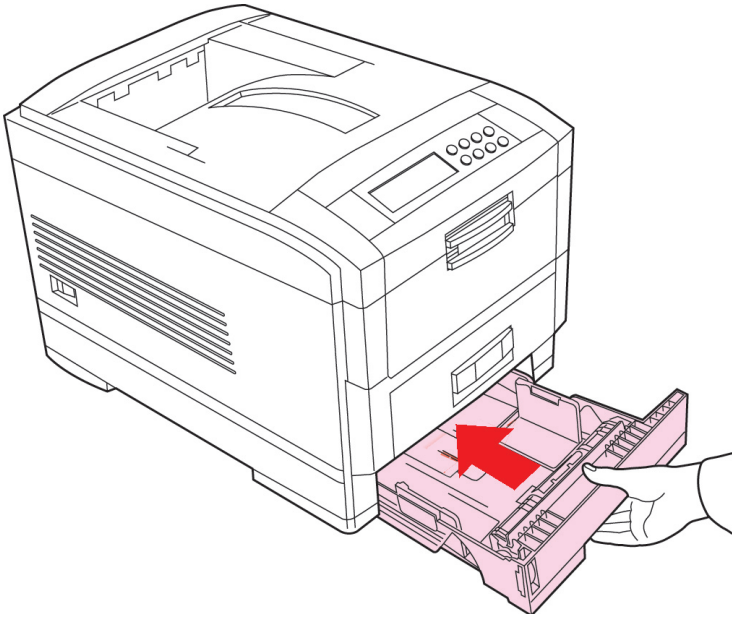
2. Load paper.
3. Adjust the paper guides and rear stopper for the size of paper being used.



4. A lower paper tray cannot be used for printing if any tray above it is not inserted.



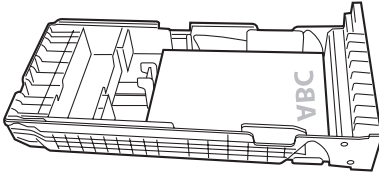
5. *Gently* close the paper tray.



# Loading Paper

## Letterhead

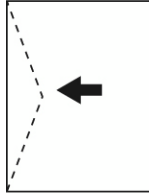
1. Load letterhead paper face down (for both portrait and landscape).



# Loading Paper

## Envelopes

1. Load envelopes face up (flap down) as shown for both portrait and landscape printing.





# Loading Paper

## Paper Out

Use paper from next available tray

(Automatic Tray Switching)

### NOTE

When a paper tray runs out of paper, the printer automatically switches to the next available paper tray when

- more than one paper tray is installed  
and

- **AUTO TRAY SWITCH** is set to **ON**.

This setting is in the Print Menu.

Refer to “Changing the Printer Settings” on page 83.

If one paper tray runs out of paper during a print job, the printer can use paper from the next available paper source (tray).

This feature is called Automatic Tray Switching.

You can also specify the order in which the paper trays are used during Automatic Tray Switching.

The factory defaults for these settings are:

Automatic Tray Switching is ON.

Tray Sequence is DOWN.

# Loading Paper

## Paper Out

### Use paper from next available tray

#### (Automatic Tray Switching)

#### Turn on or off

1. Press MENU until **PRINT MENU** displays.
2. Press SELECT.
3. Press ITEM (either + or 1) until **AUTO TRAY SWITCH** displays.
4. Press VALUE (either + or 1) until the desired setting displays.
5. Press SELECT.
6. Press ONLINE. The printer goes online. **ONLINE** displays.

# Loading Paper

## Paper Out

### Use paper from next available tray

#### (Automatic Tray Switching)

#### Set the sequence of use

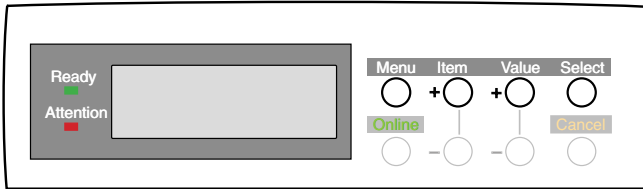
1. Make sure Automatic Tray Switching is ON.  
See "Turn the feature on or off" on page 57.
2. Press MENU until **PRINT MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or 1) until **TRAY SEQUENCE** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or 1) to select the desired setting.  
Choices are down, up, and paper feed tray.  
The factory default for this setting is: DOWN
6. Press SELECT.
7. Press ONLINE. The printer goes online. **ONLINE** displays.

# Loading Paper

## Choosing the Paper Tray (Paper Feed)

### NOTE

- 1 If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print.  
An error message displays.
- 2 The following printer settings are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the application (page setup).



1. Press ONLINE. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press MENU repeatedly until **PRINT MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **PAPER FEED** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the required paper feed displays
6. Press SELECT.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper feed.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Printing Paths

## Face Up / Straight Through

### CAUTION!

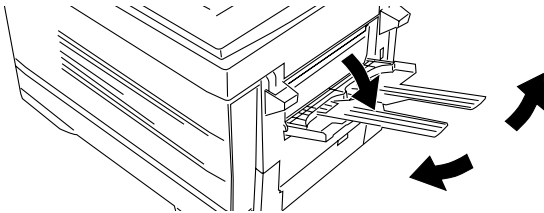
Don't open or close the rear paper exit while printing, as it may result in a paper jam.

Always use the face up (rear) stacker [straight through exit path] for thick paper (card stock etc.).

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the straight through paper exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

The paper exits from the *side* of the printer.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



# Printing Paths

## Face Down

### CAUTION!

Don't open or close the rear paper exit while printing, as it may result in a paper jam.

Always use the face up (rear) stacker [straight through exit path] for thick paper (card stock etc.).

For face *down* printing, make sure the rear paper exit is *closed*.

The paper exits from the *top* of the printer.

- *Paper is stacked in printed order*
- *Paper tray capacity is about 500 sheets, depending on paper weight.*

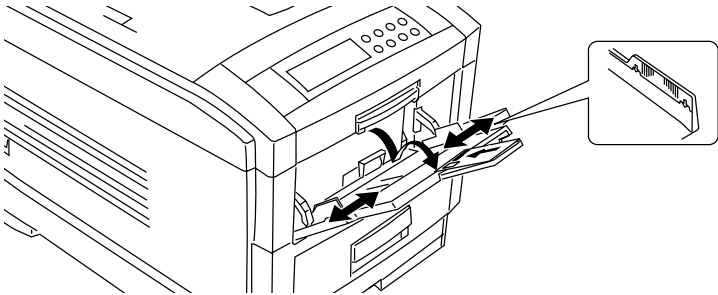
# Printing Paths

## Manual Feed

### CAUTION!

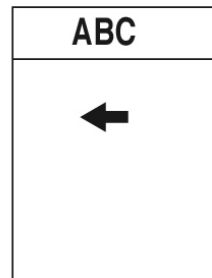
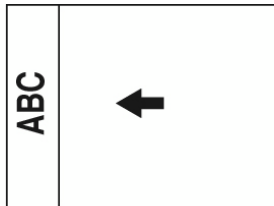
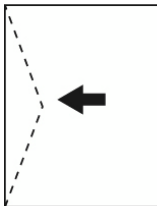
Don't open or close the rear paper exit while printing, as it may result in a paper jam.

1. Open the Multi-purpose (MP) tray. Extend the paper feed guides.



2. Load the paper.

- Load the media face up.
- Adjust the paper guides to the size of the media being used.
- Don't exceed the Paper Full line (about 100 sheets depending on paper weight).
- Load envelopes or letterhead stationery as shown.



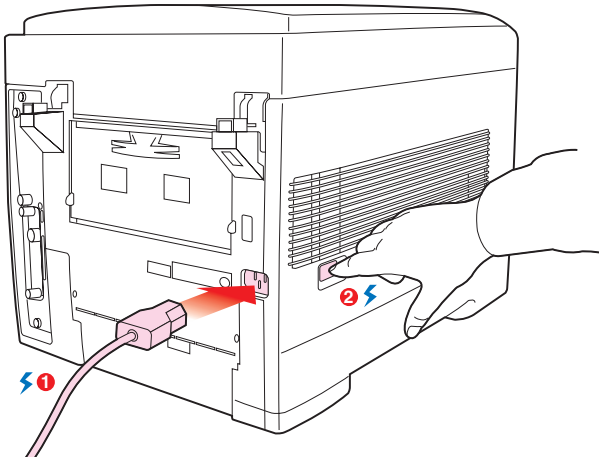
## Power

### Connecting the power cable

#### **WARNING!**

*Make sure the printer is turned OFF before connecting the power cable.*

1. Connect the power cable (1) to the printer.
2. Connect the cable to a grounded power supply outlet.



3. Use the on/off switch (2) and turn ON the printer.
4. The printer goes through its initialization and warm up sequence. When the printer is ready to print, the READY indicator comes on and stays on (green).  
**ONLINE** appears on the display.



# Power

## POWER SAVE Mode

Use Power Save to avoid turning off the printer.

If you **MUST** turn off the printer, you must perform a shutdown sequence. See “Hard Disk Drive installed” on page 60.

Power Save is turned on or off through the Maintenance Menu.

You can choose the length of time the printer “waits” before entering Power Save. This is done through the setting “Power Save Delay Time” in the System Configuration menu.

### Turn the feature on or off

1. Press ONLINE. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press MENU repeatedly until **MAINTENANCE MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **POWER SAVE** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the desired status displays.  
**ENABLE:** Power Save is activated (turned on).  
**DISABLE:** Power Save is deactivated (turned off).
6. Press SELECT.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected status.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Power

## **POWER SAVE Mode**

### **Set the "Wait" interval**

1. Make sure Power Save is activated. See the previous procedure.
2. Press MENU until **SYSTEM CONFIG MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **POWER SAVE DELAY TIME** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the desired time displays.
6. Press SELECT.

An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected time.

7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

## Power

### Turn Off the Printer

### Hard Disk Drive not installed

### Shutdown Sequence

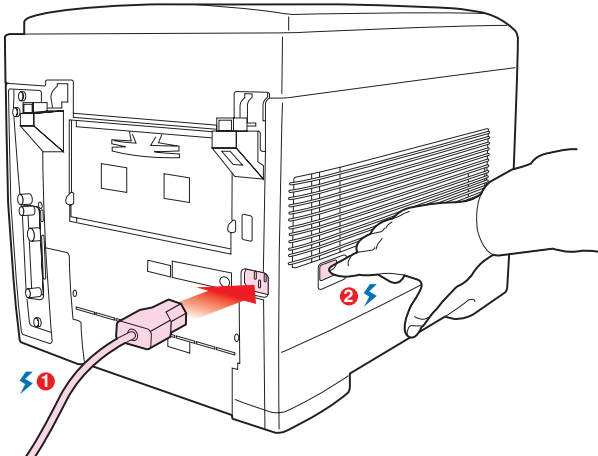
#### CAUTION!

- NEVER turn the printer off while it is printing.
- After turning the printer off, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again.

This allows the internal power levels to drop.

Turning on too soon could cause the printer to malfunction.

1. Use the on/off switch (2) and turn OFF the printer.



# Power

## Turn Off the Printer

### Hard Disk Drive installed

#### Shutdown Sequence

#### CAUTION!

- **NEVER** turn the printer off while it is printing.
- If the optional hard disk has been installed, the following procedure **MUST BE FOLLOWED** before turning off the printer. This protects any data that is stored on the hard disk.
- Follow this procedure every time the printer is turned off for any reason.
- After turning the printer off, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. This allows the internal power levels to drop. Turning on too soon could cause the printer to malfunction.

Use Power Save to avoid turning off the printer.

Refer to “POWER SAVE Mode” on page 57.

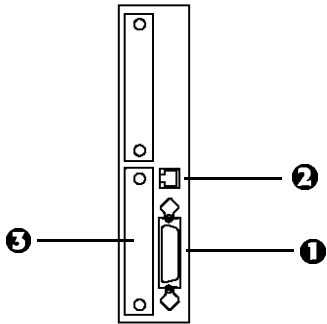
If you **MUST** turn off the printer:

1. Press MENU until **SHUTDOWN MENU** displays
2. Press SELECT.
3. Press SELECT again to begin the shutdown sequence.
4. When **PLEASE POWER OFF SHUTDOWN COMPLETED** displays, use the on/off switch to turn off the printer.

Wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again. This allows the internal power levels to drop. Turning on too soon could cause the printer to malfunction.

# Interfaces

## Location Diagram



Your printer has three interfaces.

1. Parallel
2. USB
3. Network

## Interfaces

### Parallel

For direct connection to a PC.

This port requires a bi-directional (IEEE 1384 compliant) parallel cable.

### USB

For connection to a PC running Windows 98 or above (not Windows 95 upgraded to Windows 98) or Macintosh.

This port requires a cable conforming to USB version 1.1 or above.

- The printer may not operate properly if a USB compatible device is connected at the same time as other USB-compatible machines.
- When connecting multiple printers of the same type, they appear as \*\*\*\*\* , \*\*\*\*\* (2), \*\*\*\*\* (3), etc. These numbers depend on the order of connecting or turning on each printer.

### Network

For network cable connection.

#### NOTE

**Administrator's authority is required when installing a network connection.**

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on:

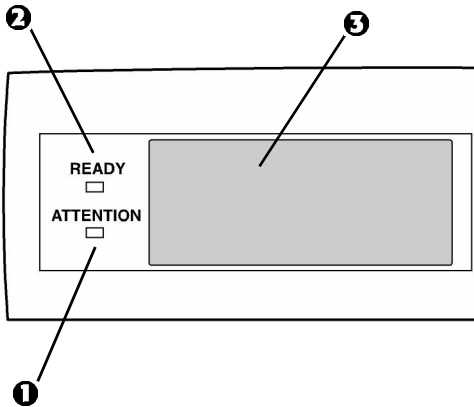
- Making the interface connections
- Installing the printer drivers
- Installing network software.

You can also go to **<http://my.okidata.com>** to see/download a copy of the *Software Installation Guide* or for the latest information on your printer.

# Control (Front) Panel

## Lights and Display

### Diagram and Explanations



#### Attention

This light is **red**. (1)

ON - attention is required. *Printing continues.*

FLASHING - attention is required. *Printing stops.*

#### Ready

This light is **green**. (2)

ON - ready to receive data.

OFF - not ready to receive data.

FLASHING - processing data or error.

#### Display Panel

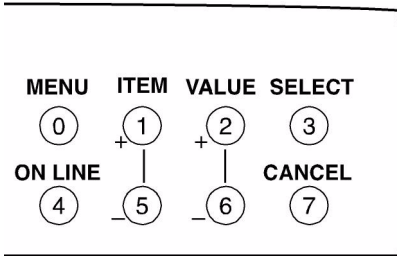
Displays (3)

- print status
- menu items in menu mode
- error messages

# Control (Front) Panel

## Buttons

### Diagram and Explanations



### Online

- Press to take the printer **ONLINE** or **OFFLINE**.
- In Menu mode, press to place the printer **ONLINE**.
- When **PAPER SIZE ERROR** displays, press to force the printer to print.

### Cancel

Press to cancel a print job.

### Menu

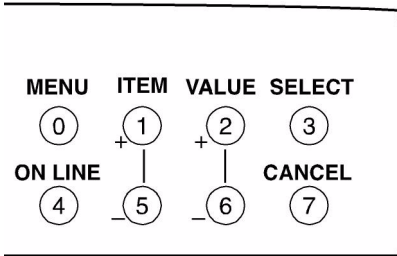
- Press briefly to enter the MENU mode.  
Press briefly again to select the next menu.
- Press for more than 2 seconds to scroll through the different menus.



# Control (Front) Panel

## Buttons

### Diagram and Explanations



#### Item (+)

Press briefly to scroll forward to the next menu item.

#### Item (-)

Press briefly to scroll backward to the previous menu item.

#### Value (+)

Press briefly to scroll forward to the next value setting for each menu item.

#### Value (-)

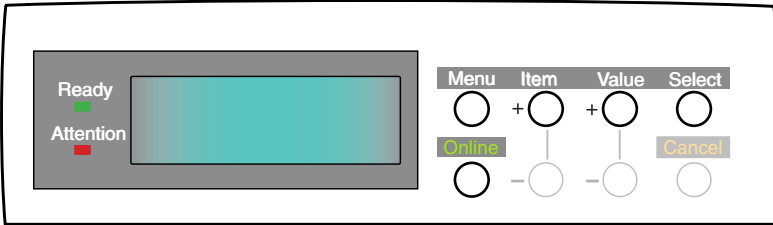
Press briefly to scroll backward to the previous value setting for each menu item.

#### Select

Press briefly to select the displayed menu, item or value.

# Control (Front) Panel

## Language of Display: Changing



1. Press ONLINE. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press MENU until **SYSTEM CONFIG MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **LANGUAGE** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the required language displays.
6. Press SELECT.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected language.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Paper (Media)

## Size

## Selecting

### NOTE

**1** When using paper trays,

- Custom paper sizes must be set.
- Standard paper sizes are automatically recognized if **CASSETTE SIZE** is selected.

**CASSETTE SIZE** is the default setting for **EDIT SIZE** in the Print Menu

Refer to “Changing the Printer Settings” on page 83.

**2** When using the Multi-Purpose (MP) tray (manual feed), the paper size has to be selected.

**3** If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print.

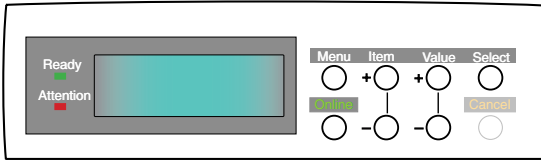
An error message displays.

**4** The following printer settings are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the application (page setup).

# Paper (Media)

## Size

## Selecting



1. Press ONLINE. **OFFLINE** displays.
2. Press MENU until **PRINT MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or –) repeatedly until **EDIT SIZE** displays.
5. Press VALUE (either + or –) until the required paper size displays
6. Press SELECT.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper size.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.
8. Before printing the file, select the correct paper settings in the printer driver.

# Paper (Media)

## Size

### Paper Feed, Exit Path, and Duplex Options

The size, weight, and type of the paper (print media) determine:

- which paper feed tray can be used
- which paper exit path can be used
- whether you can use double sided (duplex) printing

Single sided printing is also known as simplex printing.

Please refer to the following table.

Paper (Media) Size	Feed			Exit		
	Tray 1	Tray 2/3	MP Tray Manual	Rear (Face up) Straight-Through	Top (Face down)	
A4	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
A5	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
A6	S <sup>a</sup>	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b	
B5	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
Letter	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
Legal (13in / 330.2mm)	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
Legal (14in / 355.6mm)	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
Executive	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	
Envelopes	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b	
Custom <sup>c</sup>	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b	

- S = Simplex (print on one side of the paper)  
D = Duplex (printing on both sides of the paper).
- Not Usable.
- Width: 3 to 8.5 inches (76.2 to 215.9 mm)  
Height: 5 to 14 inches (127 to 356.6 mm)  
Must be defined in the printer driver before printing

# Paper (Media)

## Weight and Type Selecting

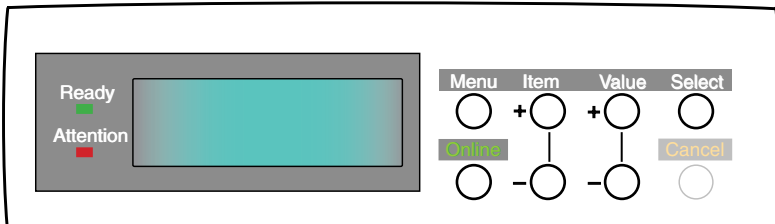
### CAUTION!

If type and weight are not correctly set,

- print quality deteriorates
- the fuser roller may be damaged.

### NOTE

- 1 If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print.  
An error message displays.
- 2 The following printer settings are given as a guide only.  
Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the application (page setup).



Your printer automatically detects paper type and weight.

To override these settings:

1. Press ONLINE. OFFLINE displays.
2. Press MENU until MEDIA MENU displays
3. Press SELECT.
4. Press ITEM (either + or -) until MEDIA TYPE or MEDIA WEIGHT for the required tray displays.

5. Press VALUE (either + or –) until the required paper type or weight displays
6. Press the SELECT button.  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper type or weight.
7. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.
8. Before printing the file, select the correct paper settings in the printer driver.

# Paper (Media)

## Weight and Type

### Paper Feed, Exit Path, and Duplex Options

#### Paper, US Bond (Metric)

The size, weight, and type of the paper (print media) determine:

- which paper feed tray can be used
- which paper exit path can be used
- whether you can use double sided (duplex) printing

Single sided printing is also known as simplex printing.

	Paper (Media) weight	Feed			Exit	
		Tray 1	Tray 2 / 3	MP Tray (Manual)	Rear (Face up) Straight-Through	Top (Face down)
<b>Paper, US Bond (Metric)</b>						
17 lb. (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Light	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>
18 to 19 lb. (68 to 71 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium light	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>
20 to 24 lb. (75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
25 to 27 lb. (91 to 104 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium heavy	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
28 to 32 lb. (105 to 122 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Heavy	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>
33 to 54 lb. (123 to 203 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Ultra heavy	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b

- S = Simplex (printing on one side of the paper)
- D = Duplex (printing on both sides of the paper).
- b. Not Usable.



# Paper (Media)

## Weight and Type

## Paper Feed, Exit Path, and Duplex Options

## Transparencies and Labels

The size, weight, and type of the paper (print media) determine:

- which paper feed tray can be used
- which paper exit path can be used
- whether you can use double sided (duplex) printing

Single sided printing is also known as simplex printing.

	Feed			Exit		
	Paper (Media) weight	Tray 1	Tray 2 / 3	MP Tray (Manual)	Rear (Face up) Straight-Through	Top (Face down)

### Transparencies: Media Weight Ignored

Set MediaType = Transparency	b	S <sup>a</sup>	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
------------------------------	---	----------------	---	----------------	----------------	---

### Labels

Thickness .004 to .007 in. (0.1 to 0.17 mm)	Medium Heavy	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
Thickness .007 to .008 in. (0.17 to 0.2 mm)	Ultra Heavy	b	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b

# Paper (Media)

## Recommendations

### Paper

#### CAUTION

**Print media must be able to withstand 446°F (230°C) for 0.2 second.**

- For recommended papers,  
see the Handy Reference Guide  
or  
check <http://my.okidata.com>.
- Paper should be stored flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat sources.
- Don't use damp, damaged or curled paper.
- Using heavily laid or textured paper
  - a. seriously shortens the life of the image drum
  - b. causes poor print quality.Change the media setting to 'Ultra Heavy' to improve print quality.  
When using 'Ultra Heavy':
  - print speed slows
  - the duplex option CANNOT be used.
- Don't use very smooth, shiny or glossy paper.
- Don't use heavily embossed headed paper, very rough paper or paper that has a large grain difference between the two sides.
- Don't use paper with perforations, cut-outs or ragged edges.
- Don't use carbon paper, NCR paper, photosensitive paper, pressure sensitive paper or thermal transfer paper.
- Avoid using recycled paper.

# Paper (Media)

## Recommendations

### Envelopes

#### CAUTION

**Print media must be able to withstand 446°F (230°C) for 0.2 second.**

- Use only recommended envelopes (OKI 52206301 and 52206302: see page 578).
- Envelopes should be stored flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat sources.
- Don't use envelopes with windows.
- Don't use envelopes with metal clasps.
- Don't use envelopes with self-sealing flaps.
- Don't use damp, damaged or curled paper envelopes.

## Paper (Media)

### Recommendations

### Labels

#### CAUTION

**Print media must be able to withstand 446°F (230°C) for 0.2 second.**

- For recommended labels,  
see the Handy Reference Guide  
or  
check <http://my.okidata.com>.
- Only use labels designed for color laser printers and photocopiers.
- Labels must cover the entire carrier sheet.
- The carrier sheet or adhesive must not be exposed to any part of the printer.

# Adjusting the Color

## Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)

### Important!

- In most cases, Color Tuning is not necessary. The printer is optimized for color printing at its default settings.
- Once you change these settings, they remain in effect until you go back in and change them.
- To return the settings to the defaults, use the steps below to set each value back to 0 (zero).

You can use the printer's menu to adjust the color intensity for a specific color by adjusting the HIGHLIGHT, MID-TONE and DARK (shadows) Color Tuning Patterns.

- To *increase* the color intensity, use a higher positive setting (default = 0, maximum = +3).
- To *decrease* the color intensity, use a higher negative setting (default = 0, maximum = -3).

## Adjusting the Color

### Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)

#### Print the Color Tuning Pattern

#### NOTE

When using the Print Job Accounting utility, you cannot print when "Local Print" is set to "No printing" or "No color printing."

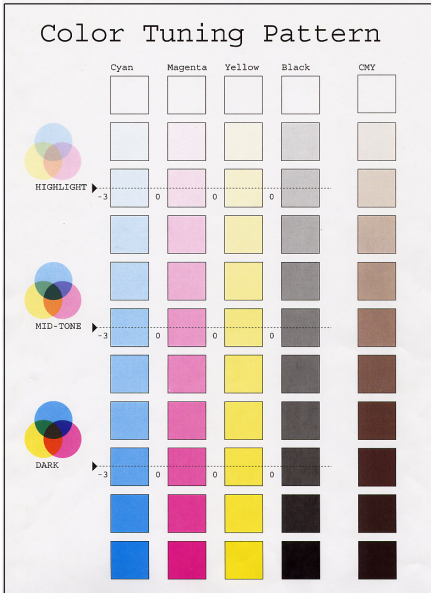
1. Make sure letter size paper is loaded in the tray.
2. Press MENU until **COLOR MENU** displays.
3. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **COLOR TUNING** displays.
4. Press SELECT.

*The Color Tuning Pattern prints.*

# Adjusting the Color

## Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)

### Sample Color Tuning Pattern



## Adjusting the Color

### Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)

#### Example: Adjust the Magenta

To adjust the intensity of the magenta portion:

1. Print the Color Tuning Pattern. See “Print the Color Tuning Pattern” on page 78
2. Adjust the Magenta highlight color.
  - a. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **MAGENTA HIGHLIGHT** nn displays.
  - b. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., +3).
  - c. Press SELECT.  
*An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.*
3. Adjust the Magenta mid-tone color.
  - a. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **MAGENTA MID-TONE** nn appears.
  - b. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., nn = +3).
  - c. Press the SELECT button.  
*An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.*
4. Adjust the Magenta dark color.
  - a. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **MAGENTA DARK** nn displays.
  - b. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., nn = +3).
  - c. Press SELECT.  
*An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.*
5. Press the online button to save the new setting and return the printer to online status
6. Print from your application.



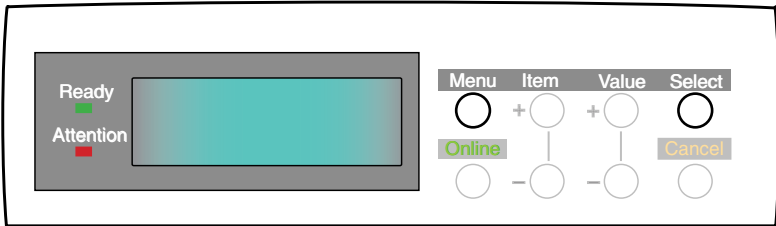
7. Repeat the above steps until you get the desired magenta color intensity.

### **NOTE**

**To adjust these settings for the Cyan, Yellow or Black color intensity, substitute the appropriate color name in the steps above.**

## Printer Settings (Menu Settings)

### Printing a list of the Current Settings (MenuMap)

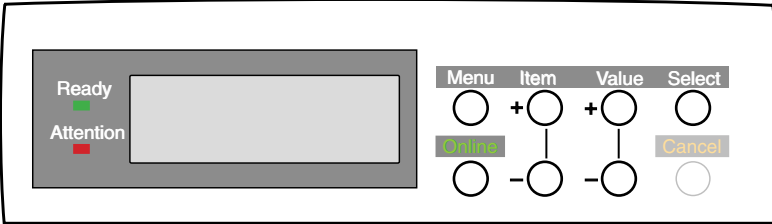


Print the menu to see the current settings for the printer.

1. Make sure paper is in the paper tray.
2. Press MENU until **INFORMATION MENU** displays.
3. Press SELECT. **PRINT MENU MAP** displays.
4. Press SELECT.
5. The Menu (MenuMap) prints.

# Printer Settings (Menu Settings)

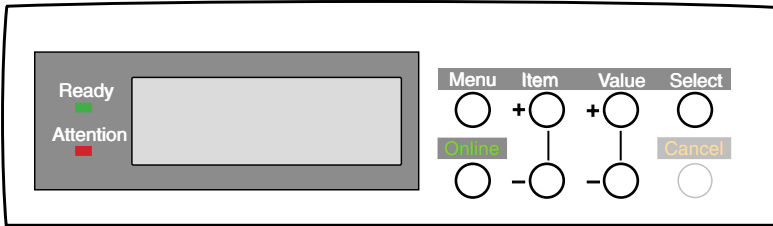
## Changing the Printer Settings



1. Press MENU until the required menu displays.
2. Press SELECT.
3. Press ITEM (either + or -) until the required item displays.
4. Press VALUE (either + or -) until the required value displays.
5. Press SELECT  
An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected value.
6. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Printer Settings (Menu Settings)

## Reset to Factory Defaults



### CAUTION

When you reset the printer (menu) settings to the factory defaults, *all* user defined (customized) menu settings are lost!

For lists of the default settings, refer to “Factory Default Settings” on page 579.

1. Press MENU until **MAINTENANCE MENU** displays.
2. Press SELECT.
3. Press ITEM (either + or –) until the **EEPROM RESET** displays.
4. Press SELECT

The EEPROM initializes. This resets *all* of the user menu settings to factory defaults.

When you reset the printer (menu) settings to the factory defaults, all user defined (customized) menu settings are lost!

5. When you are finished, press ONLINE. **ONLINE** displays.

# Menu (Printer) Settings

## Lists of Available Settings by Menu

The following tables list the available choices for the printer (Menu) settings. Each table is a separate menu.

The default settings for the printer are in **bold** text.

### Print Jobs Menu

This menu only appears if the hard disk drive is installed.  
The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
ENTER PASSWORD	****	Enter a password. Use a four-digit number (0~9).
SELECT JOB	No jobs; All jobs; File name 1 to nn	Selects the print job when using Secure Print or Proof and Print.

## Information Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PRINT MENU MAP	Execute	Prints list of current menu (printer) settings.
PRINT FILE LIST	Execute	Prints the job file list.
PRINT PCL FONT	Execute	Prints the PCL font list.
PRINT PS FONT	Execute	Prints the PostScript font list
PRINT IBM PPR FONT	Execute	Prints an IBM PPR font list.
PRINT EPSON FX FONT	Execute	Prints an Epson FX font list.
PRINT DEMO1	Execute	Prints the demonstration page
PRINT ERROR LOG	Execute	Prints the error log.

## Test Print Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PRINT ID CHECK PATTERN	Execute	Ordinarily, you should not use this. Only used by, or under the direction of, Authorized Service Technicians . Prints a test pattern used to check for problems with the image drum.

## Shutdown Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
SHUTDOWN START	Execute	Shut down sequence for the printer. When the hard disk is installed, use this sequence to prevent data loss.



## Print Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
COPIES	<b>1</b> to 999	Sets the number of copies.
DUPLEX	On; <b>Off</b>	Specifies double-sided (duplex) printing, if the optional duplex unit is installed.
BINDING	<b>Long edge</b> ; Short edge	Sets binding for duplex printing. Only displays if the optional duplex unit is installed.
PAPER FEED	<b>Tray 1</b> ; Tray 2; Tray 3; Tray 4; Tray 5; MP Tray	Selects source of paper feed. Trays 2 to 5 only display if installed
AUTO TRAY SWITCH	<b>On</b> ; Off	ON: When a paper tray empties, the printer automatically switches to the next available paper tray. See page 49
TRAY SEQUENCE	<b>Down</b> ; Up; Paper feed tray	If Auto Tray Select/Auto Tray Switch is enabled (ON) [see above], Tray Sequence specifies the order of use for the paper trays. See page 49
MP TRAY USAGE	Normal tray; High priority tray; <b>Feed when mismatching</b> ; Do not use	Specifies MP tray usage. <u>Normal tray</u> : (Tray select/switch) Use as a normal tray. <u>High priority tray</u> : (Valid with Tray select only). If there is paper in the MP tray and Duplex is not specified, the printer uses the MP tray. <u>Feed when mismatching</u> . When a paper mismatch occurs (i.e. the tray's paper size/media type does not match the print data), a paper request is issued to the MP Tray. If the data is for Duplex print, a specified tray is used instead of the MP tray. <u>Do not use</u> . Even if auto switching, MP Tray is not used. If MP Tray is designated in Paper Feed, printer behaves as though Normal Tray is selected.
MEDIA CHECK	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	ENABLE: the printer checks if the paper size specified in the print job matches the actual paper size in the tray. Only standard sizes are checked.

## Print Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
TRANSPARENCY DETECT	<b>Auto</b> ; Disable	Enable/Disable the transparency auto detect function.
RESOLUTION	<u>ES2426n</u> - <b>600 x 1200 dpi</b> ; 600 dpi <u>ES2426dn</u> - <b>600 x 1200 dpi</b> ; 600 dpi <u>ES2426e</u> - <b>1200 dpi</b> , Fast 1200 dpi, 600 dpi	Selects print resolution.
TONER SAVE MODE	ON; <b>OFF</b>	ON: Enables Toner Save mode. OFF: Disables Toner Save mode. See page 40.
MONO-PRINT SPEED	<b>Auto</b> ; Color speed; Normal speed	Selects monochrome printing speed. <u>Auto</u> : Prints at the most appropriate speed for the type of printing being done. <u>Color</u> : Always prints at the color print speed. <u>Normal</u> : Always prints at the monochrome print speed.
ORIENTATION	<b>Portrait</b> ; Landscape	Sets page orientation for printing.
LINE PER PAGE	5 to 128. Default = <b>60</b> .	Sets the number of lines that can be printed on a page (standard letter-size). Invalid in PostScript.
EDIT SIZE	<b>Cassette size</b> ; Letter; Executive; Legal 14; Legal 13.5; Legal 13; A4; A5; A6; B5; Custom; Com-9* envelope; Com-10* envelope; Monarch* envelope; DL* Envelope; C5* Envelope *Use short edge feed.	<i>Cassette size</i> is selected when using standard sized paper in the paper tray. <i>Edit size</i> is only used when printing one page size onto a different paper size. Example: To print A6 onto A4, set Edit Size to A6. The actual paper in paper tray is A4. Invalid in PostScript emulation. Page size = the size of the paper the document is formatted to use, Paper size = the size of the paper the document is printed on.

## Media Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
TRAY 1 MEDIATYPE	<b>Plain</b> ; Letterhead; Transparency; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Selects the paper (media) type for Tray 1.
TRAY 1 MEDIaweIGHT	<b>Auto</b> ; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Sets the paper (media) weight for Tray 1
TRAY 2 MEDIATYPE	<b>Plain</b> ; Letterhead; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Selects the paper (media) type for optional Tray 2. (Only displays if installed)
TRAY 2 MEDIaweIGHT	<b>Auto</b> ; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the paper (media) weight for optional Tray2. (Only displays if installed)
TRAY 3 MEDIATYPE	<b>Plain</b> ; Letterhead; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Selects the paper (media) type for optional Tray 3. (Only displays if installed)
TRAY 3 MEDIaweIGHT	<b>Auto</b> ; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the paper (media) weight for optional Tray 3. (Only displays if installed)

## Media Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
MP TRAY PAPER SIZE	A4; A5; A6; B5; Legal 14; Legal 13.5; Legal 13; <b>Letter</b> ; Executive; Custom; Com-9 envelope; Com-10 envelope; Monarch envelope; DL Envelope; C5 Envelope	Sets the paper (media) size for the multi purpose paper tray. LEF = Long Edge Feed
MP TRAY MEDIA TYPE	<b>Plain</b> ; Letterhead; Transparency; Labels; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Selects the paper (media) type for multi purpose paper tray.
MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT	<b>Auto</b> ; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Sets the paper (media) weight for the multi purpose (MP) paper tray.
UNIT OF MEASURE	<b>inches</b> ; Millimeter	Sets the units of measurement for custom paper (media) size.
X DIMENSION (INCH)	3 inches to 8.5 inches (127 mm to 1200 mm) Default = <b>8.5 inches (279.4 mm)</b>	Sets the width of custom paper (media). To use this setting, the MP Tray Paper Size setting must be set to Custom.
Y DIMENSION (INCH)	5 inches to 35.5 inches Default = <b>11 inches</b>	Sets the length of custom paper (media). To use this setting, the MP Tray Paper Size setting must be set to Custom.

## Color Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
AUTO DENSITY MODE	<b>Auto</b> ; Manual.	Select whether density adjustment and Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC) compensation is automatic. <u>Auto</u> : Density adjustment is automatically run under specified conditions, and reflected in the TRC compensation. <u>Manual</u> : Density adjustment is done manually (see "Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)" on page 77).
ADJUST DENSITY	Execute	If EXECUTE is selected, the printer immediately adjusts density and reflects it in the Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC) compensation. Perform when the printer is idle. May not work if the printer is not idle.
COLOR TUNING	Print pattern	Ordinarily, you do not use Color Tuning, because TRC is automatically adjusted. If you want to manually adjust the Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC), use Color Tuning to print the test pattern. Change the settings for the HIGHLIGHT, MID-TONE, and DARK for each color (CMYK). Keep changing the settings until you obtain your desired print quality. See "Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)" on page 77.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK HIGHLIGHT	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	Adjusts HIGHLIGHT (light area) of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC). Plus = darker Minus = lighter See "Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)" on page 77.

## Color Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK MID-TONE	<b>0+1+2+3-3-2-1</b>	Adjusts MID-TONE of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC). Plus = darker Minus = lighter See "Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)" on page 77.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK DARK	<b>0+1+2+3-3-2-1</b>	Adjusts DARK of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC). Plus = darker Minus = lighter See "Adjust the Color Intensity (Color Tuning)" on page 77.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK DARKNESS	<b>0+1+2+3-4-3-2-1</b>	Adjusts Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black engine density. The Darkness settings for each color are reflected as offset values (additions) to the corrections through the Adjust Density/Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC) Compensation function.
ADJUST REGISTRATION	Execute	Execute: the printer performs an Auto Adjust Registration. Perform when the printer is idle. May not work if the printer is not idle.

## Color Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
CYAN REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	-3, -2, -1, <b>0</b> , +1, +2, +3	Use this to correct color misalignment when printing. Adjusts the image registration of Cyan, Magenta or Yellow (CMY) relative to Black (K).
MAGENTA REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	-3, -2, -1, <b>0</b> , +1, +2, +3	Adjustments are made in increments of 1/1200th of an inch (21.17 microns).
YELLOW REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	-3, -2, -1, <b>0</b> , +1, +2, +3	If you change the current setting to a more <i>positive</i> value, the value <i>increases</i> . Color registration moves DOWN the page, in the opposite direction to the printing paper feed movement. If you change the current setting to a more <i>negative</i> value, the value <i>decreases</i> . Color registration moves UP the page, in the same direction to the printing paper feed movement. The adjustment is shown as an offset value for the color registration settings measured by the printer during Auto Color Registration.
INK SIMULATION	<b>Off</b> ; SWOP	The printer has its own process simulation generator, which simulates standard colors in the printer. PostScript only.
INK LIMIT	<b>Dark</b> ; Medium; Light	Sets the thickness of the toner layer. If paper curls when using DARK, select MEDIUM or LIGHT. This should help reduce the curling.

## Color Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
CMY 100% DENSITY	<b>Disable</b> ; enable	<p>Normally, you won't change this setting.</p> <p>In normal printing, Color Matching controls the TRC values. In turn, the TRC values control the print density</p> <p>ENABLE = 100% CMY density output [relative to the Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC)]</p> <p>CMY 100% Density is only used in very special instances. Example: Specify the color for CMYK color space in PS.</p>



## System Configuration Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME	5 min; 15 min; 30 min; <b>60 min</b> ; 240 min	Sets the time the printer “waits” before entering power save mode See page 57.
PERSONALITY	<b>Auto emulation</b> ; PCL; IBM PPR III XL; Epson FX; AdobePostScrip	Selects the printer emulation language. The <i>only</i> printer languages that can be selected are those enabled through the Personality item of the service-only Maintenance Menu. The Maintenance Menu is only accessed by Authorized Service Technicians.
USB PS-PROTOCOL	ASCII <b>RAW</b>	Specifies PostScript (PS) communication protocol mode of data from USB. In RAW mode, Ctrl-T is invalid.
NETWORK PS PROTOCOL	ASCII <b>RAW</b>	Specifies PostScript (PS) communication protocol mode of data from the network print server. In RAW mode, Ctrl-T is invalid.
CLEARABLE WARNING	<b>ON</b> ; Job	<b>PCL</b> : Controls how error messages are displayed. On = press SELECT to display the error. Job = the error remains displayed until the next print job is received. <b>PostScript (PS)</b> : Error messages are only shown during the print job, regardless of setting.
AUTO CONTINUE	On; <b>Off</b>	ON = printer recovers automatically after a memory overflow or print overrun.
MANUAL TIMEOUT	<b>60 sec</b> ; 30 sec; Off	This is the time the printer “waits” to cancel a print job when paper is <i>not</i> inserted after a request for paper is issued. PostScript (PS) only.

## System Configuration Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
WAIT TIMEOUT	Off; 5 sec to 300 sec; default = <b>40 sec</b>	PCL: Wait Timeout is the length of time the printer "waits" before automatically printing and ejecting received data when no end page code or data end code is received PostScript: The job is cancelled, regardless of the setting.
LOW TONER	<b>Continue</b> ; Stop	When LOW TONER displays, CONTINUE: printing continues STOP: printing stops. The printer goes offline.
JAM RECOVERY	<b>ON</b> ; OFF	Determines whether or not printing continues after a paper jam has been cleared. OFF: Cancels (after the paper jam is cleared) the print job being printed when the paper jam occurred. ON: Continues (after the paper jam is cleared) the print job being printed when the paper jam occurred.
ERROR REPORT	ON; <b>Off</b>	ON: Error Report prints when internal error occurs. PostScript only.
LANGUAGE	<b>English</b> ; German; French; Italian; Spanish; Swedish; Norwegian; Danish; Dutch; Turkish; Portuguese; Polish	Selects the language of the printer display.

## PCL Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
FONT SOURCE	<b>Resident</b> ; DIMM0; Downloaded	Selects the location of the PCL fonts. <u>DIMM0</u> Only displays if the font DIMM ROM is installed. <u>Downloaded</u> displays only if fonts have been downloaded to the printer.
FONT NO.	<b>I000</b> , C001, S001	Sets the PCL font number. I = internal (resident font); I000 = Courier. C = Font stored in the printer's Flash memory. S = downloaded soft font, stored on the printer's internal hard disk drive. Only applies if the printer has a hard disk drive installed.
FONT PITCH	0.44 cpi to 99.99 cpi in 0.01 cpi increments Default = <b>10.00 cpi</b>	Sets the font width in characters per inch. Only displays if the font is a fixed-space outline font.
FONT HEIGHT	4.00 to 999.75 point, in 0.25 point increments Default = <b>12.00 point</b>	Sets the font point size. Only applies only to fixed fonts Does not apply to proportional fonts.

## PCL Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
SYMBOL SET	<b>PC-8</b> , PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC-852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Bit, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, Wingdings, Dingbats MS, Symbol, OCR-A, OCR-B, HP ZIP, USPSFIM, USPSSTP, USPSZIP, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek-437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek-928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, IBM-437, IBM-850, IBM-860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO-17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO-84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US	Selects a PCL character symbol set

## PCL Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
A4 PRINT WIDTH	<b>78</b> column; 80 column	If you are printing a letter size document on an A4 size sheet, select 80 column. This condenses the print to fit on the slightly narrower A4 sheet, without changing the line breaks.
White page skip	<b>OFF</b> ; ON	PCL only ON: blank pages do not print
CR function	<b>CR</b> ; CR+LF	PCL only When the printer receives a CR code: CR: carriage return performed CR+FL carriage return with line feed performed.
LF function	<b>LF</b> ; LF+CR	PCL only When the printer receives a LF code: LF: line feed performed LF+CR: line feed with carriage return performed.
Print margin	<b>Normal</b> ; 1/5 inch; 1/6 inch	Sets unprintable paper area (margin). Normal: PCL emulation compatible 1/5 inch: domestic model emulation. 1/6 inch: HIPER-W emulation.
True Black	<b>OFF</b> ; ON	PCL only Determines whether to use Composite Black (CMYK mixed) or True Black (K only) for the black (100%) in image data. OFF = Composite (CMYK) Black. Provides best results when printing photographs. ON = Pure Black (black toner only). Provides best results when printing a combination of text and graphics. See page 41.

## PCL Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
Pen width adjust	<b>ON</b> ; OFF	PCL only ON: Emphasizes the pen width of very fine lines (minimum line width). This improves the appearance of the lines.

## PPR Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
Character pitch	<b>10 CPI</b> ; 12 CPI; 17 CPI; 20 CPI; PROPORTIONAL	Specifies character pitch in IBM PPR emulation.
Font condense.	<b>12 CPI TO 20 CPI</b> ; 12 CPI TO 12 CPI	Specifies 12 cpi pitch for Condense Mode
Character set	Set 1; <b>Set 2</b>	Specifies a character set.

## PPR Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
Symbol set	PC-8, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC-852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Blt, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO-17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO-84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek-437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek-928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, <b>IBM-437</b> , IBM-850, IBM-860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9	Specifies a symbol set.
LETTER 0 STYLE	<b>Disable</b> ; Enable	Enable: 9BH (Hex) = letter o 9DH (Hex) = zero (number).
ZERO CHARACTER	<b>Normal</b> ; Slashed	Normal: zero unslashed. Slashed: zero slashed



## PPR Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
LINE PITCH	<b>6 LPI</b> ; 8 LPI	Specifies the line spacing in lines per inch (lpi).
WHITE PAGE SKIP	<b>OFF</b> ; ON	ON: blank pages do not print Does not apply when duplexing.
CR FUNCTION	<b>CR</b> ; CR+LF	PPR only. When the printer receives a CR code: CR: carriage return performed CR+LF: carriage return with line feed performed.
LF FUNCTION	<b>LF</b> ; LF+CR	PPR only. When the printer receives a LF code: LF: line feed performed LF+CR: line feed with carriage return performed.
LINE LENGTH	<b>80 COLUMN</b> ; 136 COLUMN	Specifies the number of characters per line.
FORM LENGTH	<b>11 INCH</b> ; 11.7 INCH; 12 INCH	Specifies the paper length.
TOF POSITION	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 INCH, in 0.1-inch increments	The print start position is where printing begins on the page. It is also called Top of Form (TOF). TOF Position = the distance between the first line of print and the top edge of the paper.
LEFT MARGIN	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 INCH, in 0.1-inch increments	Left Margin = the distance between where printing begins and the left hand edge of the paper.
FIT TO LETTER	Disable; <b>Enable</b>	Enable: Print data is reduced to fit the LETTER-size (11 inches, 66 lines) print area.
TEXT HEIGHT	<b>Same</b> ; Diff	Sets the height of a character. SAME: Height constant, regardless of cpi. DIFF: Height varies, depending on cpi.

## FX Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
CHARACTER PITCH	<b>10 CPI</b> ; 12 CPI; 17 CPI; 20 CPI; PROPORTIONAL	Specifies character pitch.
CHARACTER SET	Set 1; <b>Set 2</b>	Specifies which Epson character set is used.
SYMBOL SET	PC-8, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC-852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Bit, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO-17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO-84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek-437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek-928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, <b>IBM-437</b> , IBM-850, IBM-860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9	Specifies a symbol set.

## FX Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
LETTER 0 STYLE	<b>Disable</b> ; Enable	Enable: 9BH (Hex) = letter o 9DH (Hex) = zero (number).
ZERO CHARACTER	<b>Normal</b> ; Slashed	Normal: zero unslashed. Slashed: zero slashed
LINE PITCH	<b>6 LPI</b> ; 8 LPI	Specifies the line spacing in lines per inch (lpi).
WHITE PAGE SKIP	<b>OFF</b> ; ON	ON: blank pages do not print Does not apply when duplexing.
CR FUNCTION	<b>CR</b> ; CR+LF	FX only. When the printer receives a CR code: CR: carriage return performed CR+LF carriage return with line feed performed.
LF FUNCTION	<b>LF</b> ; LF+CR	FX only. When the printer receives a LF code: LF: line feed performed LF+CR: line feed with carriage return performed.
LINE LENGTH	<b>80 COLUMN</b> ; 136 COLUMN	Specifies the number of characters per line.
FORM LENGTH	<b>11 inch</b> ; 11.7 inch; 12 inch	Specifies the paper length.
TOF POSITION	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 inch in 0.01-inch increments	The print start position is where printing begins on the page. It is also called Top of Form (TOF). TOF Position = the distance between the first line of print and the top edge of the paper.
LEFT MARGIN	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 inch in 0.01-inch increments	Left Margin = the distance between where printing begins and the left hand edge of the paper.
FIT TO LETTER	Disable; <b>Enable</b>	Enable: Print data is reduced to fit the LETTER-size (11 inches, 66 lines) print area.

## FX Emulation Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
TEXT HEIGHT	<b>Same</b> ; Diff	Sets the height of a character. SAME: Height constant, regardless of cpi. DIFF: Height varies, depending on cpi.

## Parallel Menu

The defaults are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PARALLEL	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Activates the parallel (Centronics) interface.
BI-DIRECTION	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Activates bi-directional communication.
ECP	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Activates ECP mode.
ACK WIDTH	<b>Narrow</b> ; MEDIUM; WIDE	Sets the ACK width for compatible reception: Narrow = 0.5 $\mu$ S Medium = 1.0 $\mu$ S Wide = 3.0 $\mu$ S
ACK/BUSY TIMING	<b>ACK-in-Busy</b> ; ACK-while-Busy	Sets the output order for ACK and BUSY during reception. ACK IN BUSY: BUSY=LOW to the end of the ACK pulse ACK WHILE BUSY: BUSY=LOW to the centre of the ACK pulse.
I-PRIME	3 micro-sec; 50 micro-sec; <b>Disable</b>	Sets or disables the i-Prime signal
OFFLINE RECEIVE	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	When set to Enable The printer receives data even if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an alarm/error occurs.</li> <li>• the online button is pressed.</li> </ul> The printer issues a BUSY signal <i>only</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• when the receive buffer is full.</li> <li>• when a service call occurs.</li> </ul>

## USB Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
USB	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Activates the USB interface.
SOFT RESET	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	Enable: With Soft Reset, a software string (not a hardware function) can be sent to the USB port to flush all USB buffers and reset all USB pipes to defaults. This reset DOES NOT change the USB addressing or USB configuration.
OFFLINE RECEIVE	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	When set to Enable The printer receives data even if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• an alarm/error occurs.</li><li>• the online button is pressed.</li></ul> The printer issues a BUSY signal <i>only</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• when the receive buffer is full.</li><li>• when a service call occurs.</li></ul>

## Network Menu

Only appears if the network card is installed.  
The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
TCP/IP	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Selects TCP/IP protocol.
NETWARE	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Selects Netware protocol.
ETHERTALK	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Selects EtherTalk protocol.
NETBEUI	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: Selects NetBEUI protocol.
FRAME TYPE	<b>Auto</b> ; 802.2; 802.3 Ether-II; Snap	Enable: Selects the Ethernet frame type.
DHCP/BOOTP	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	Enable: DHCP/BOOTP is selected automatically.
RARP	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	Enable: RARP is selected automatically.
IP ADDRESS	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Configures IP address. Uses 12 alphanumeric characters.
SUBNET MASK	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Configures subnet mask. Uses 12 alphanumeric characters.
GATEWAY ADDRESS	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Configures gateway address Uses 12 alphanumeric characters.
PRINT SETTINGS	ON; <b>OFF</b>	ON = When the printer exits Menu Mode, the Network MenuMap prints. The Network MenuMap shows the results of self-diagnosis tests and the current network printer settings.
INITIALIZE	ON; <b>OFF</b>	ON = When the printer exits Menu Mode, the network initializes.

## Memory Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE	<b>Auto</b> ; OFF; 0.5 MB; 1 MB; 2 MB; 4 MB; 8 MB; 16 MB; 32 MB	Sets the size of the receive buffer. Depends on the amount of memory installed in the printer.
RESOURCE SAVE	AUTO; <b>Off</b> ; 0.5 MB; 1 MB; 2 MB; 4 MB; 8 MB; 16 MB; 32 MB	Set the size of the font cache area. Depends on the amount of memory installed in the printer.
FLASH INITIALIZE	Execute	Ordinarily, you should not use this. Initializes flash memory (if installed)
PS FLASH RESIZE	0% [n.n MB] TO 90% [n.n MB], in 10% increments	Ordinarily, you should not use this. Changes the size of the flash memory area. "n.n" indicates the actual size in MB. You cannot specify 100%, because special data is stored in the Flash Memory.



## Disk Maintenance Menu

### CAUTION!

Unless you know what you are doing, do not use this Menu!

The System Administrator (or someone who is knowledgeable in this area) should use the Storage Device Manager software to perform disk maintenance.

Use the Disk Maintenance Menu to:

- initialize the printer's internal hard disk drive,
- reassign the partition contents, and
- reformat the partitions.

### Disk Maintenance Menu

Only appears if the hard disk drive is installed.

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
HDD INITIALIZE	EXECUTE	Partitions the hard disk and formats each partition.
PARTITION SIZE	nnn% / mmm% / xxx%	Sets usage of hard disk drive partitions: nnn = Common mmm = PCL xxx = PS Range for each partition: 1 to 98% in 1% increments. nnn + mmm + xxx = 100%.
HDD FORMATTING	<b>PCL</b> , COMMON, PS	Formats specified partition.

## System Adjust Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
X ADJUST	<b>0.00 MM;</b> Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and – 2.0 TO – 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments	Horizontal adjustment of the overall print position, in 0.25 mm increments.
Y ADJUST	<b>0.00 MM;</b> Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and – 2.0 TO – 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments	Vertical adjustment of the overall print position, in 0.25 mm increments.
DUPLEX X ADJUST	<b>0.00 MM;</b> Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and – 2.0 TO – 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments	Horizontal adjustment of the overall print position of the back (verso/second) page, in 0.25 mm increments.
DUPLEX Y ADJUST	<b>0.00 MM;</b> Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and – 2.0 TO – 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments	Vertical adjustment of the overall print position of the back (verso/ second) page, in 0.25 mm increments.
TRAY 1 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14;</b> Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 1 legal paper size.
TRAY 2 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14;</b> Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.
TRAY 3 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14;</b> Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.

## System Adjust Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PCL TRAY 2 ID#	1 to 59; default = <b>5</b>	Sets Tray 2 number for PCL emulation.
PCL TRAY 3 ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>20</b>	Sets Tray 3 number for PCL emulation.
PCL MP TRAY ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>4</b>	Sets MP Tray number for PCL emulation.
DRUM CLEANING	OFF; <b>ON</b>	ON: The printer cleans the drum before printing. Drum cleaning can help prevent unwanted horizontal white lines. Drum cleaning shortens image drum life.
HEX DUMP	Execute	Press SELECT to place the printer in Hexadecimal (Hex) Dump Mode. In Hex Dump Mode, all received data is printed in both Hexadecimal and ASCII format. This information is often used when troubleshooting printer problems. To return to normal print mode, turn off the printer, then turn it on.

## Maintenance Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
EEPROM RESET	Execute	Resets all User Menu settings to factory defaults. All user defined (customized) settings are lost.
SAVE MENU	Execute	Saves the current printer (menu) settings.
RESTORE MENU	Execute	Restore Menu is <i>not</i> the same as Reset to Factory defaults. Restore Menu resets the menu to the last <i>saved</i> set of customized (user defined) settings. If the settings have <i>not</i> been changed from the factory defaults, Restore Menu cannot be accessed.
POWER SAVE	<b>Enable</b> ; Disable	When no input is received for a specified time, the printer enters Power Save Mode. See "POWER SAVE Mode" on page 57. See also "Power Save Delay Time" under the System Configuration Menu on page 97.
PAPER BLACK SETTING	-2; -1; <b>0</b> ; +1; +2	Not normally used.
PAPER COLOR SETTING	-2; -1; <b>0</b> ; +1; +2	Not normally used.
TRANSPR BLACK SETTING	-2; -1; <b>0</b> ; +1; +2	Not normally used.
TRANSPR COLOR SETTING	-2; -1; <b>0</b> ; +1; +2	Not normally used.

## Usage Menu

Item	Value	Description
TOTAL PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows total number of pages printed.
TRAY 1 PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 1.
TRAY 2 PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 2. Displayed if optional Tray 2 is installed.
TRAY 3 PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 3. Displayed if optional Tray 3 is installed.
MP TRAY PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Multi purpose Paper Tray.
COLOR PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Number of pages printed in color.
MONOCHROME PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Number of pages printed in monochrome.

## Usage Menu

Item	Value	Description
BLACK DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the black image drum (as a percentage).
CYAN DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the cyan image drum (as a percentage).
MAGENTA DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the magenta image drum (as a percentage).
YELLOW DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the yellow image drum (as a percentage).
BELT LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the belt (as a percentage).
FUSER LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the fuser roller (as a percentage).
BLACK TONER	15K = xxx% 5K = yyy%	Displays the remaining life of the black toner (as a percentage).
CYAN TONER	15K = xxx%; 5K = yyy%	Displays the remaining life of the cyan toner (as a percentage).
MAGENTA TONER	15K = xxx% 5K = yyy%	Displays the remaining life of the magenta toner (as a percentage).
YELLOW TONER	15K = xxx% 5K = yyy%	Displays the remaining life of the yellow toner (as a percentage).

# Windows XP

## Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

You can also go to **<http://my.okidata.com>** to view and/or download a copy of the *Software Installation Guide* or for the latest information on drivers for your printer.

## Which Printer Driver to Use?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe® PostScript® (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including “.eps” files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This is more efficient and gives good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or print PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation, performance is faster and graphics are printed at their best quality.

### NOTE

**The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. If you plan to print parts of this manual, choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise, the line art graphics print at low resolution. The print quality may not be satisfactory.**

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers. Select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can use the alternative driver for printing whenever you need to.



# Memory: Enabling

## PostScript Only

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

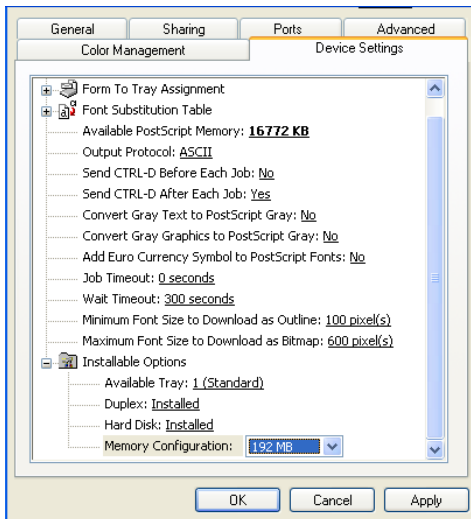
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, click **Memory Configuration**, then set the memory in the drop-down list to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the Menu Map.

To print the Menu Map, see “Printer Settings (Menu Settings)” on page 82.

5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



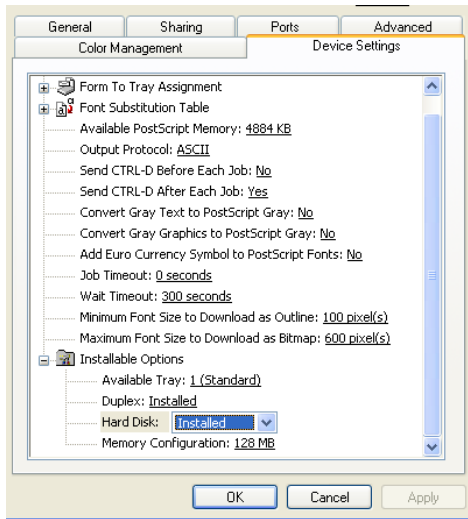
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, make sure the setting in the **Hard Disk** drop-down list is **Installed**.
5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



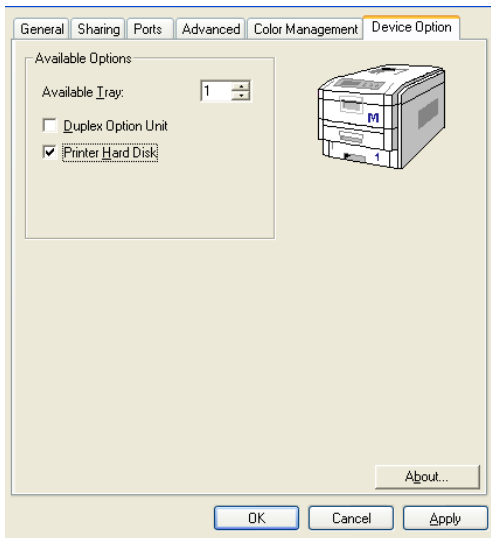
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, click **Printer Hard Disk**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



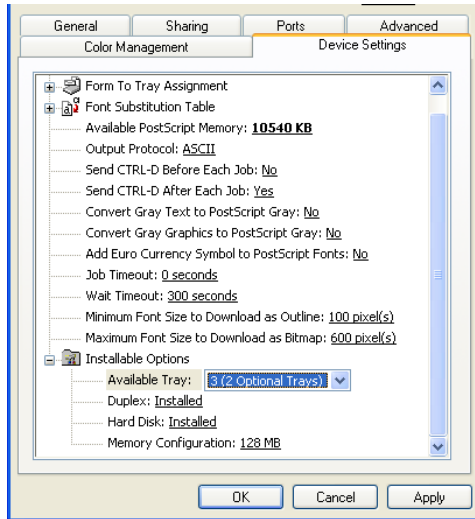
# Paper Trays: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab. Under **Installable Options**, click **Available Trays**, then select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) in the drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



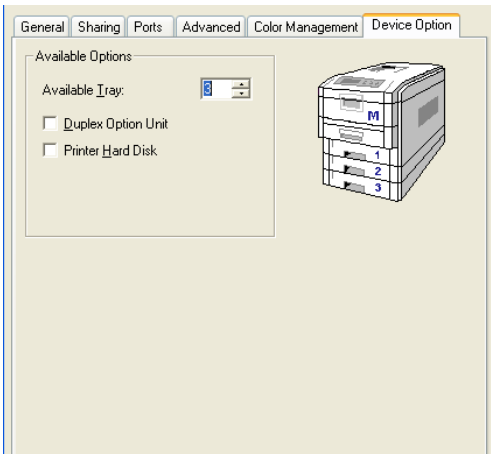
# Additional Paper Trays: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray).
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



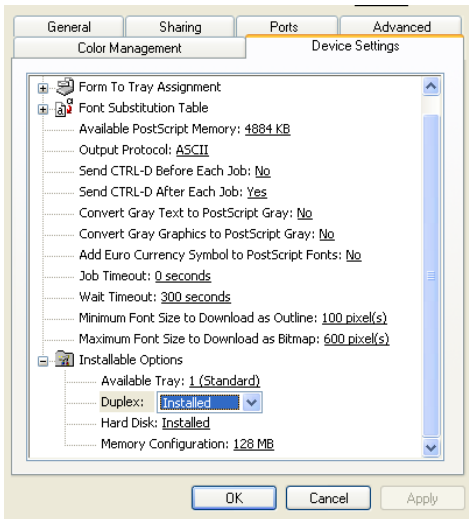
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab. Under **Installable Options**, click **Duplex** and select **Installed** in the drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



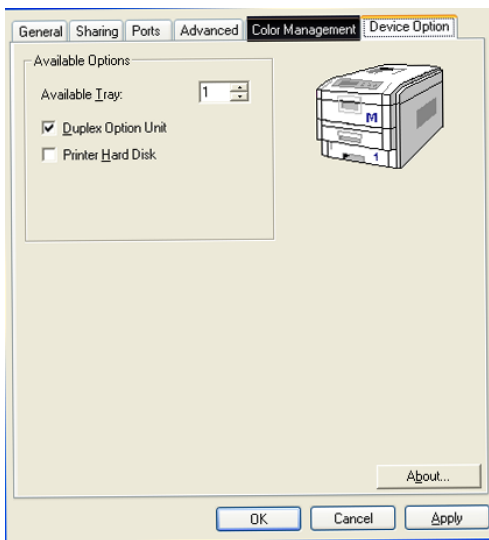
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Option** tab, click **Duplex Option Unit**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PostScript

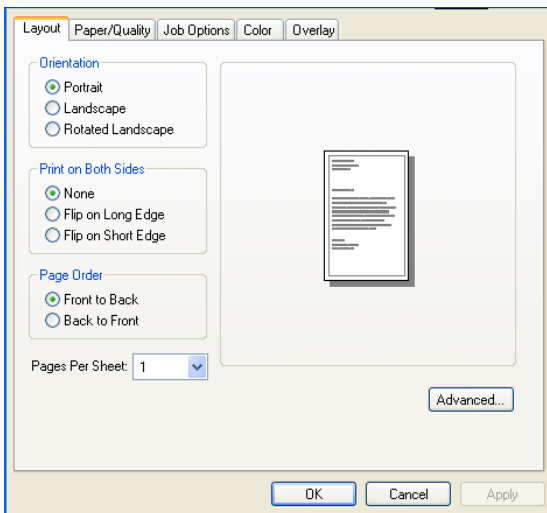
The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.



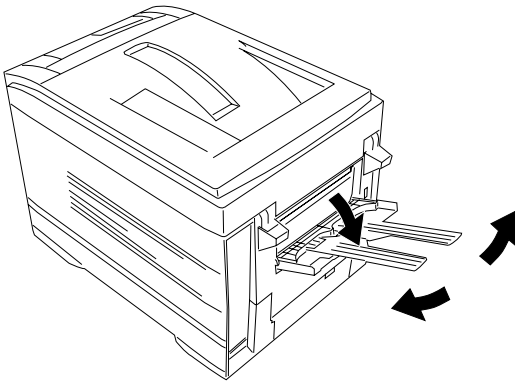


## Important!

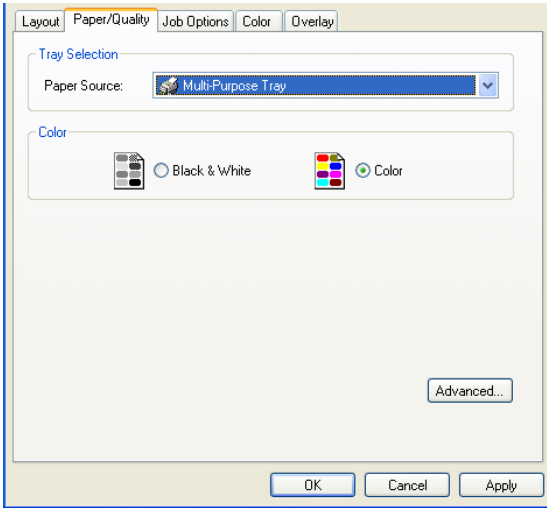
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

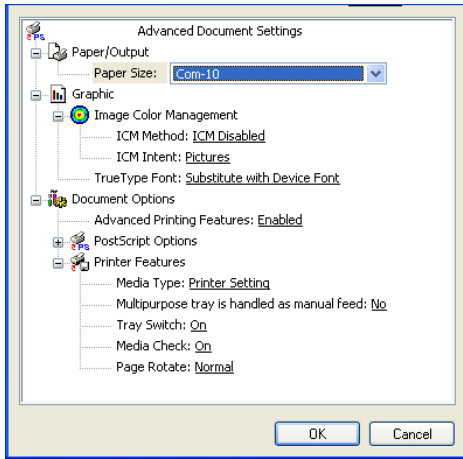
- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



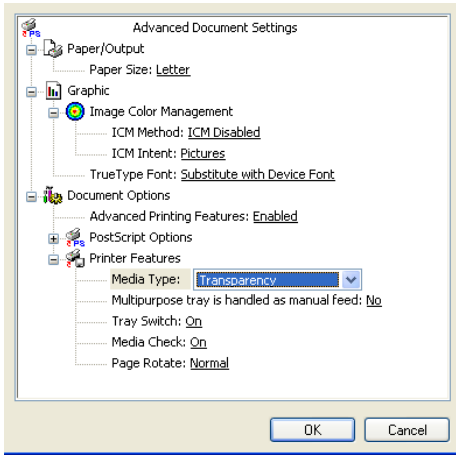
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab. Under **Tray Selection**, in the **Paper Source** drop-down list, select the paper feed.



4. Click the **Advanced** button.
5. Under **Paper/Output**, in the **Paper Size** drop-down list, select the media size.



- Under **Document Options** → **Printer Features**, click **Media Type** and select the media from the drop-down list.
- Click **OK** twice. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PCL

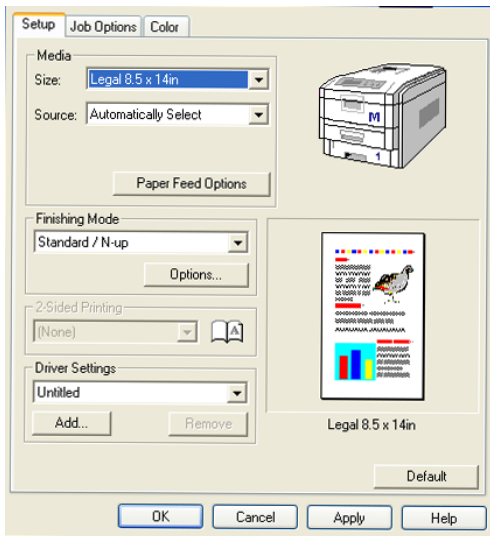
The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

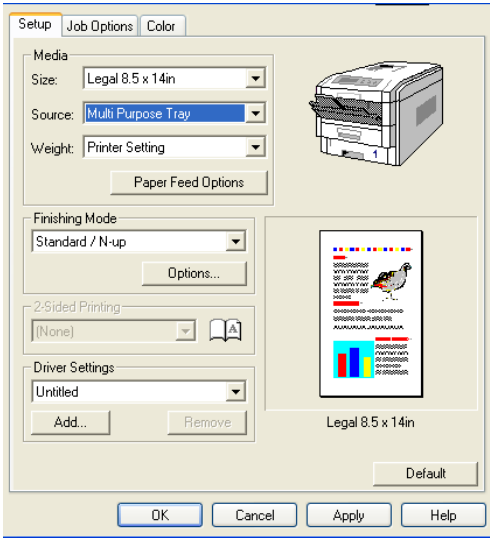
If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Media**, select the required paper size in the **Size** drop-down list.



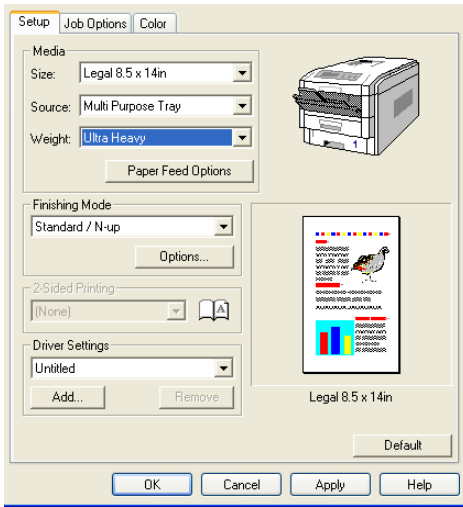
4. Select the required paper feed under **Source**.



## NOTE

If a paper tray is selected, the Weight field becomes visible.

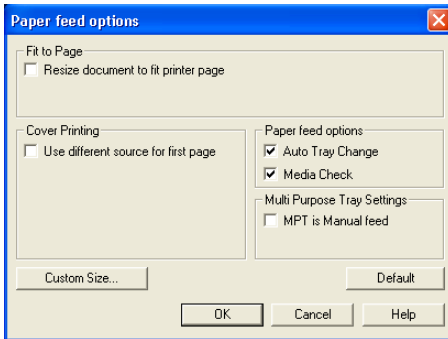
5. Select the required paper type under **Weight**.



## NOTE

If **Printer Setting** is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

6. Click the **Paper Feed Options** button and make any other selections. Click **OK**.





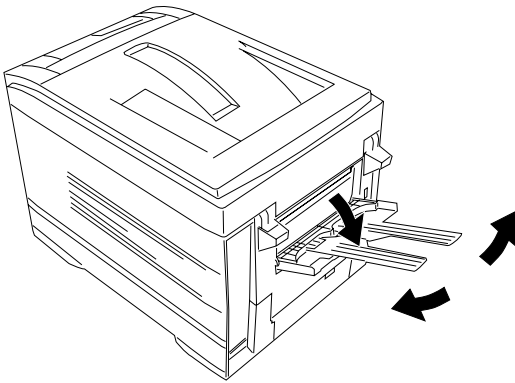
7. Click **OK** twice. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.

### **Important!**

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



# Network Printer Status Utility

- Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it.

If the utility is installed, the printer driver **Properties** dialog box changes.

- a new **Status** tab is added.
- an **Option** button is added to the **Device Option** tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

## Important!

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver automatically pings the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box.

This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens.

To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows XP

## Operation

### NOTE

**Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.**

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features.

Printer's features covered in this section include:

- N-up printing (see page 163)
- Custom page sizes (see page 166)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 174)
- Duplex printing (see page 175)
- Printing Booklets (see page 179)
- Watermarks (see page 184)
- Collating (see page 186)
- Proof and Print (see page 187)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 191)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 195)
- Using overlays (see page 199)
- Printing posters (see page 212)

## Factors that Affect Color Printing

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration.*

Some of the most important factors are

- the differences between the range of colors a monitor can reproduce versus the range of colors that a printer can reproduce
- viewing conditions
- printer driver color settings
- monitor settings
- how your software application displays color
- paper type

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors

### (Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce)

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Yellow, Magenta and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues. These cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

## Viewing Conditions

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

## Printer Driver Color Settings

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Settings

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

### NOTE

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many monitors allow you to adjust the color temperature through their control panels.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

- **5000k\***  
Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.
- **6500k\***  
Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.
- **9300k\***  
Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# **Factors that Affect Color Printing**

## **How your Software Application Displays Color**

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

## **Paper Type**

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### NOTE

**These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications override, without warning, any color matching settings in the printer driver.**

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer.

There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

- most common [RGB] (see page 145)
- professional desktop publishing and graphics [CMYK] (see page 145)
- photographic images (see page 146)
- specific colors (i.e., a company logo) (see page 147)
- printing vivid colors (see page 148)



# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **RGB or CMYK?**

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method make distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print are in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically, CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Matching Photographs**

#### **RGB only**

Oki Color Matching (see page 155) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### **RGB or CMYK**

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 162). Print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### Matching Specific Colors

#### (Example: Company logo)

#### RGB only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 155), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 157).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 152).

#### RGB or CMYK

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 162). Print, using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric Setting (see page 157).

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Printing Vivid Colors**

#### **RGB only**

Use Oki Color Matching (see page 155), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 157) with the Saturation option.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### PCL Driver

The Color Matching Options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

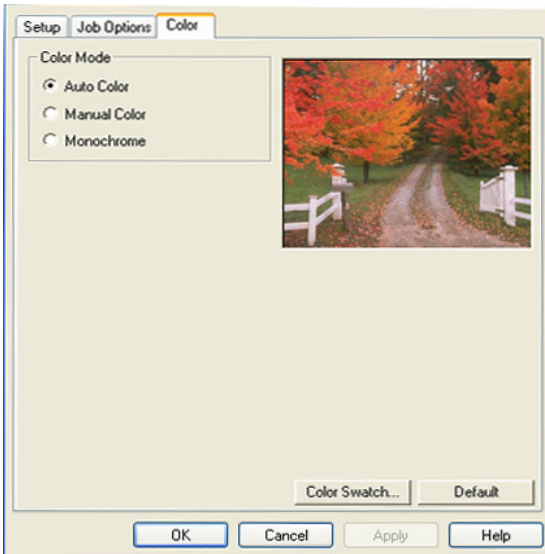
#### NOTE

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

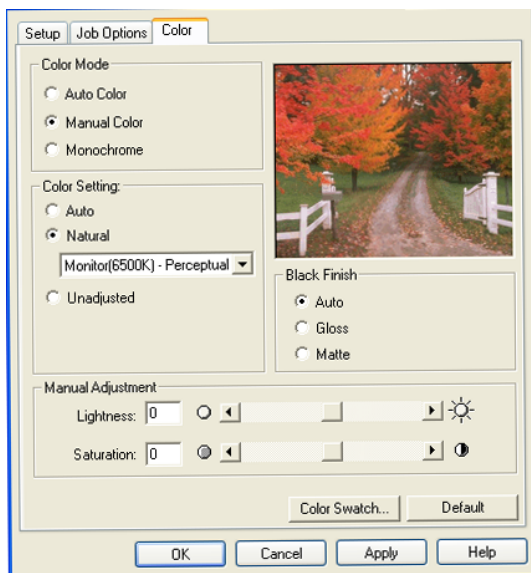
If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

#### Manually set the options in the PCL driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the appropriate printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, click **Manual Color**.
5. Under **Color Setting**, click **Natural**.



6. Select the method you wish to use:

***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

7. Set any other required parameters. Use the on-line Help for guidance.
8. When you are done, click **OK**. Close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

### An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
5. Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
6. Use your program's color picker to enter the same RGB values (from step 5). Change the logo to that color.

### NOTE

**The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.**



# Color Matching

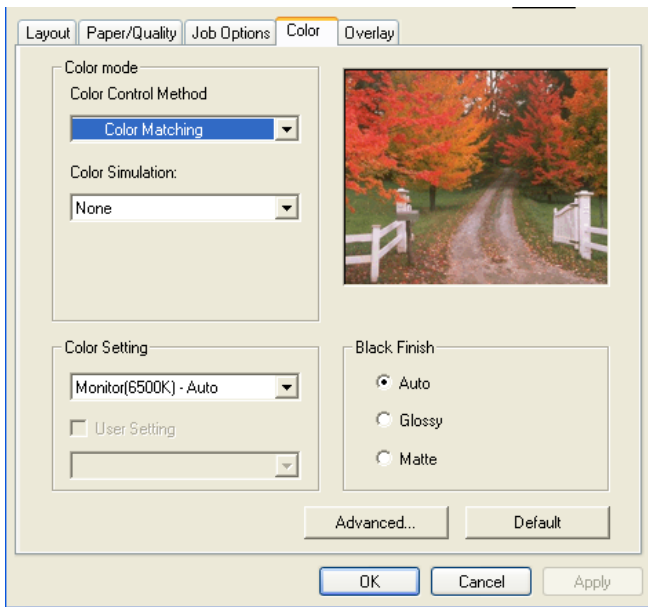
## Color Matching Options

### PostScript Driver

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

### Setting Options Manually

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, use the drop-down list to select one of the following **Color Control Methods**:
  - a. **OKI Color Matching**

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB data only*. See "OKI Color Matching" on page 155.
  - b. **PostScript Color Matching**

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. See "PostScript Color Matching" on page 157.
  - c. **Using ICC Profiles**

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "Using ICC Profiles" on page 159.
  - d. **No Color Matching**

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching. No color correction occurs when selected. This option is beneficial when other matching regimens are used, specifically if you select a Color Simulation option.
  - e. **Print in Grayscale**

This option prints all documents as monochrome. No color prints. The printer interprets all colors as a variation of grays.

# Color Matching

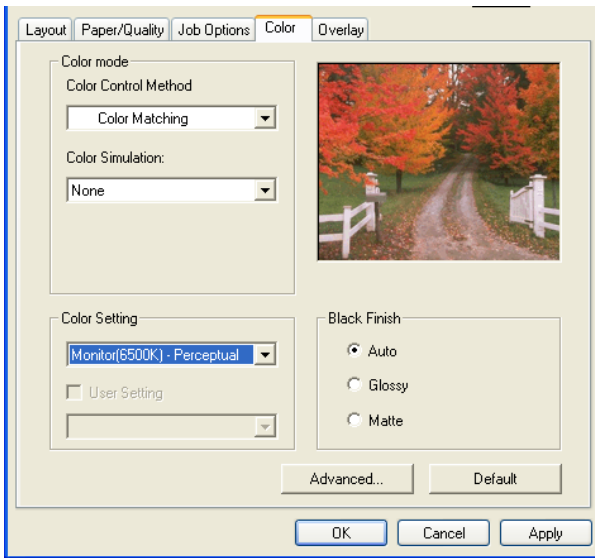
## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system. It affects *RGB data only*. This is the default setting. It provides the fastest, best color matching for your printer.

Under **Color Setting**, use the drop-down list to select the type to be used:



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

#### Color Settings

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Auto***

Optimized for printing general documents when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. This is best for printing photographic images.

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

##### ***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

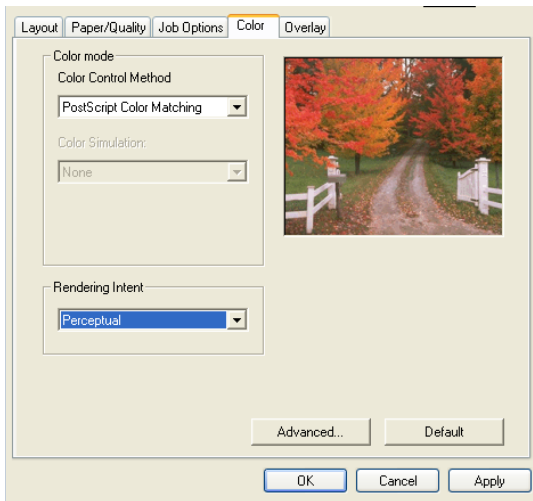
# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer. It affects both RGB and CMYK data.

From the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list, select the rendering type.



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

#### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The printer driver provides the rendering intents listed below:

- *Auto*  
Best choice for printing general documents.
- *Perceptual*  
Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.
- *Saturation*  
Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.
- *Relative Colorimetric*  
Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white. Unlike Absolute Colorimetric, Relative Colorimetric attempts to take the paper white into account.
- *Absolute Colorimetric*  
Best for printing solid colors and tints (such as Company logos). Matches colors common to both devices exactly. Clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### Using ICC Profiles

#### PostScript Only

- Affects **RGB data only**.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

### NOTE

**This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space.**

# Color Matching

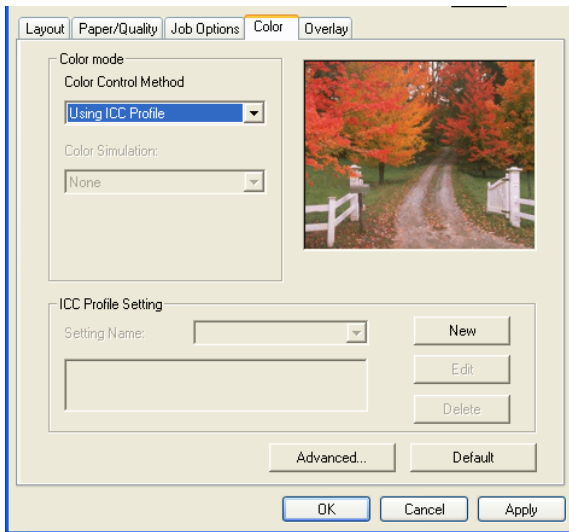
## Color Control Method

### Using ICC Profiles

#### PostScript Only

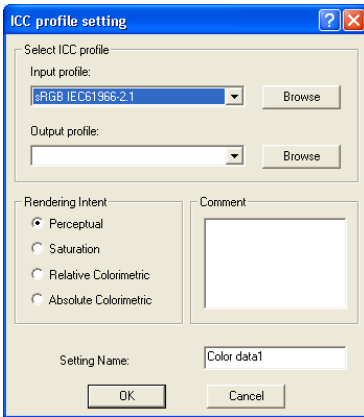
#### Setting Up

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Under **Color mode**, in the **Color Control Method** drop-down list, select **Using ICC Profile**.





5. Click the **New** button.



6. Under **Select ICC profile**, use the drop-down lists to select the **Input profile** and **Output profile**.
7. Select the desired **Rendering Intent** (see "Rendering Intents" on page 158). Type in a name for the profile. Click **OK**.  
The new name appears in the **Setting Name** drop-down list under **ICC Profile Setting**.
8. Repeat steps 5-7 for each ICC profile you wish to define.
9. Click **OK**. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.

# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### Windows ICM Color Matching

#### PCL or PostScript

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects **RGB data only**.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer. These profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**, then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Color Management** tab.
4. Under “**Color Profiles currently associated with this printer**”, you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click “**Add...**” and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver.

#### NOTE

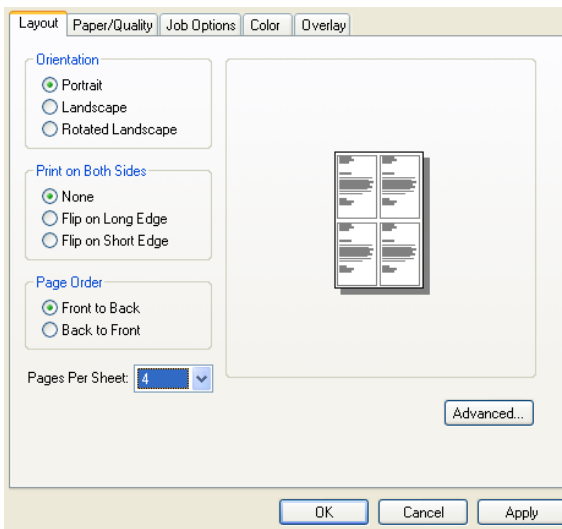
**The Color Match “Using ICC Profiles” feature provides an alternative to Windows ICM. It is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.**

# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

## (N-Up Printing)

### PostScript

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Layout** tab, under **Pages Per Sheet**, select the required number of pages.
4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.

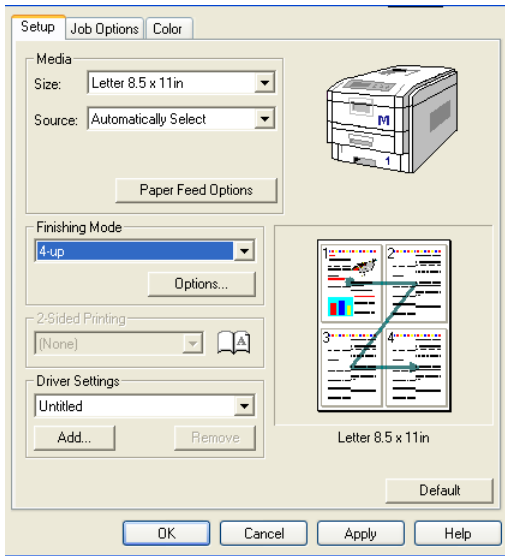


# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

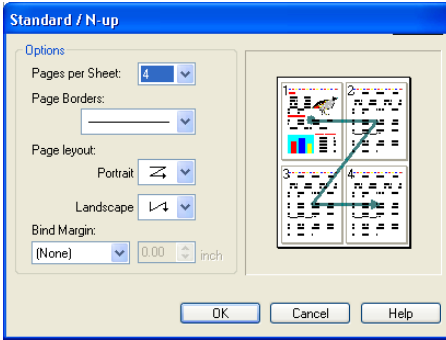
## (N-Up Printing)

### PCL

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



4. Click the **Options** button. Select the **Page Borders**, **Page Layout** and **Bind Margin**. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PostScript

### NOTE

One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

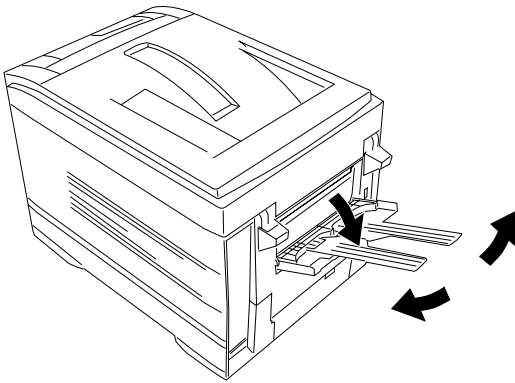
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Preferences** button.

### **Important!**

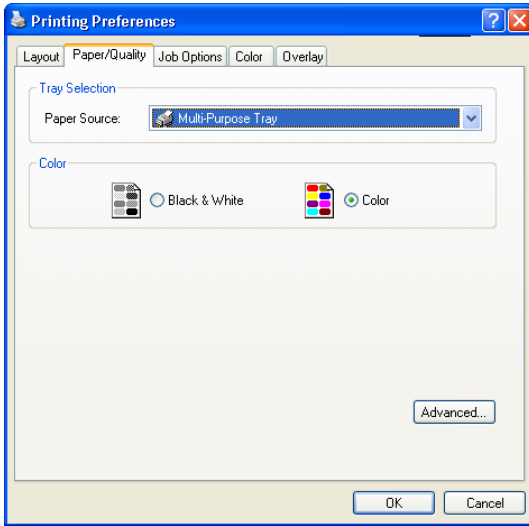
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

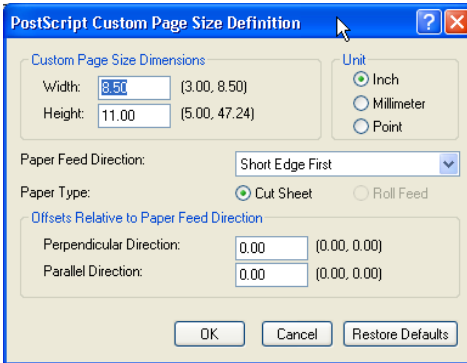
- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab. Under **Tray Selection**, in the **Paper Source** drop-down list, select **Multi Purpose Tray**.



4. Click the **Advanced** button. Under **Paper/Output**, in the **Paper Size** drop-down list, select **Postscript Custom Page Size**.





5. Enter the **Width** and **Height** for the custom paper.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

6. Select the **Paper Feed Direction**.

### **NOTE**

- **Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first**
- **Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first**
- **Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**
- **Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**

7. Click **OK** three times.

8. Click **Print**.

# Custom Page Sizes

## PCL

### NOTE

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

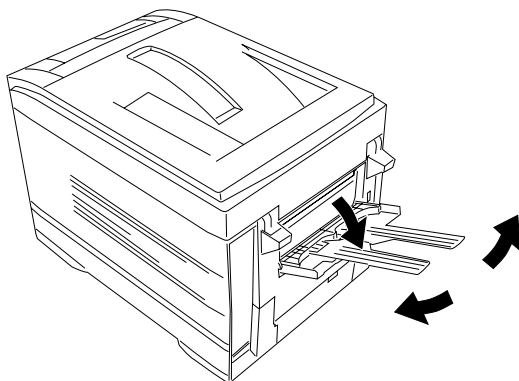
- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

## Important!

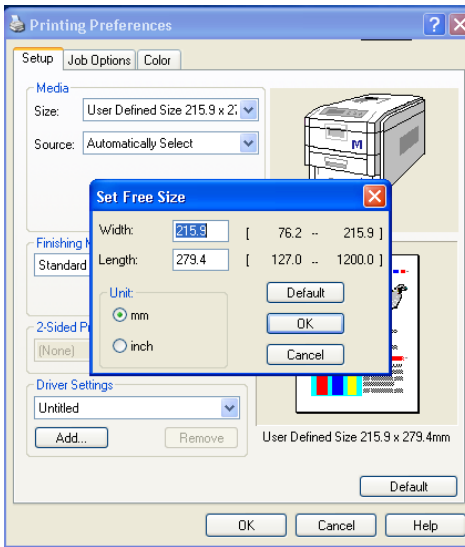
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select **User Defined Size**.



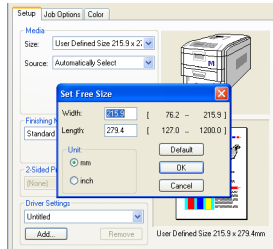
## NOTE

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK.

The driver automatically makes the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

4. Select the unit. Enter the width and length measurements.  
Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]



5. Click **OK**.
6. Check that **User Defined** now appears in the **Size** list on the **Setup** tab.

## NOTE

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options.
- Click Custom Size.
- Select the unit.
- Enter the relevant information for Width and Height.
- Give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.
- Click OK.

*The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.*

7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Print**.

# Print Resolution

## PCL or PostScript

### Changing for a Print Job

#### NOTE

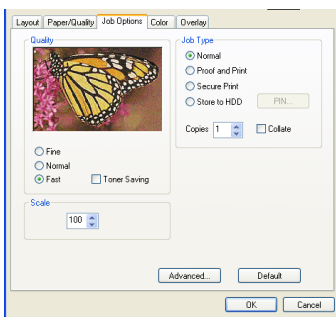
To change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
- **Right click** the appropriate printer name.
- **Select Properties**.
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

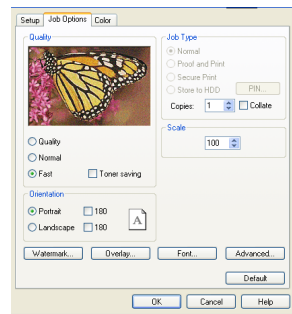
**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Select the required printing resolution under **Quality**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



5. Select **Toner Saving** (if appropriate).
6. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.

# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

Before you can perform duplex printing, unit must be

- installed in the printer  
and
- enabled in the driver.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.
- Duplexing cannot be used if Paper Weight is set to Ultra Heavy.  
See Paper (Media), “Weight and Type” on page 70.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- Right click the appropriate printer name.
- Select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below.  
More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.

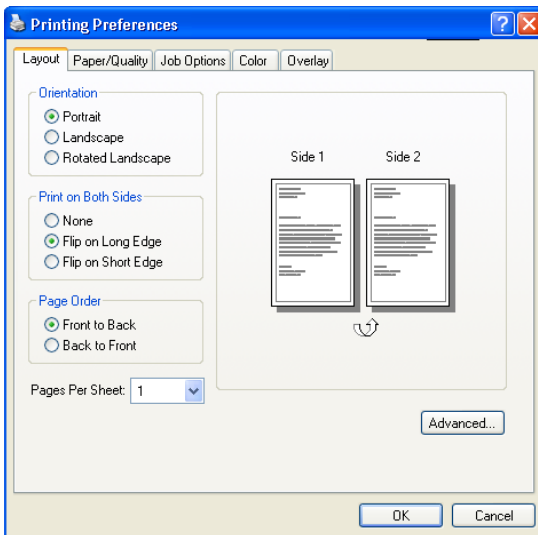
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Layout** tab, under **Print on Both Sides**, select **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge**.
4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.





# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- **Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.**
- **Right click the appropriate printer name.**
- **Select Properties.**
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

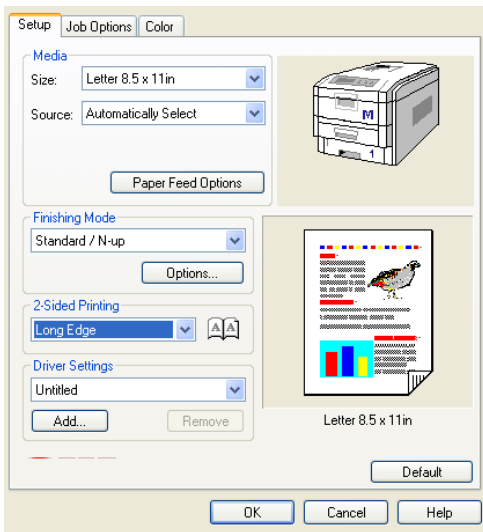
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **2-Sided Printing**, select **Long Edge** or **Short Edge**.
4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



# Printing Booklets

## PostScript

### NOTES

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections. See the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

### Important!

Booklet printing with the PostScript driver is restricted to two (2) pages per sheet

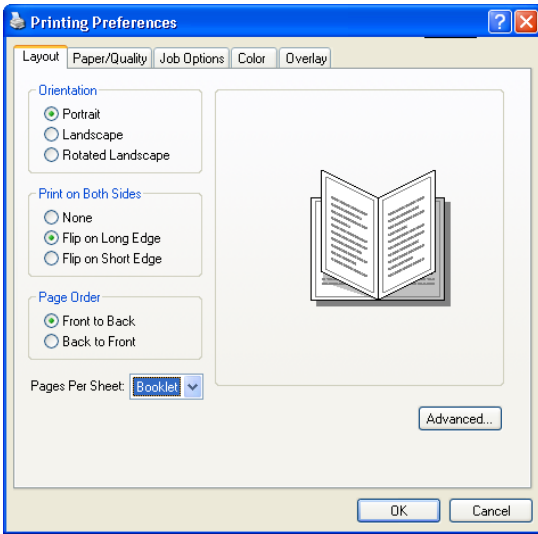
Examples:

- print a 5½ x 8½ inch booklet on 8½ x 11 inch paper
- print an 8½ x 11 inch booklet on 11 x 17 inch paper

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Preferences** button.

3. On the **Layout** tab, under **Pages Per Sheet**, select **Booklet** in the drop-down list.

4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



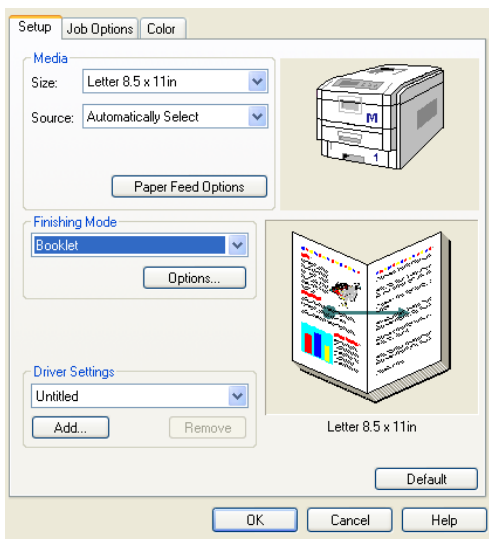
# Printing Booklets

## PCL

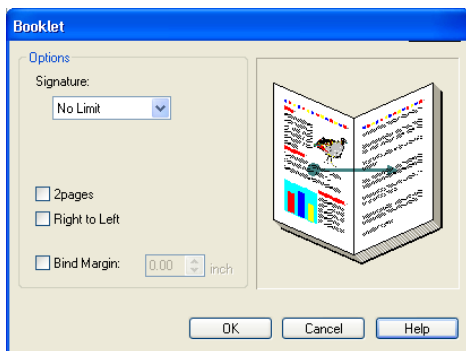
### NOTES

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, in the drop-down list, select **Booklet**.



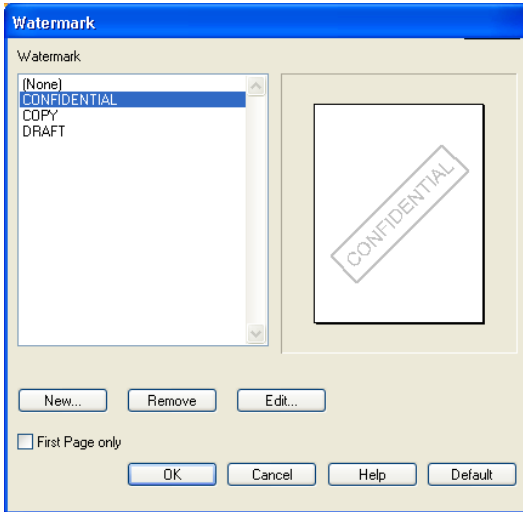
4. Click the **Options** button. Set the **Signature**, **2pages**, **Right to Left**, and **Bind Margin**, as required. See the online Help for information. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



# Printing Watermarks

## PCL Only

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Job Options** tab, click **Watermark**.
4. Select a name from the **Watermark** list.

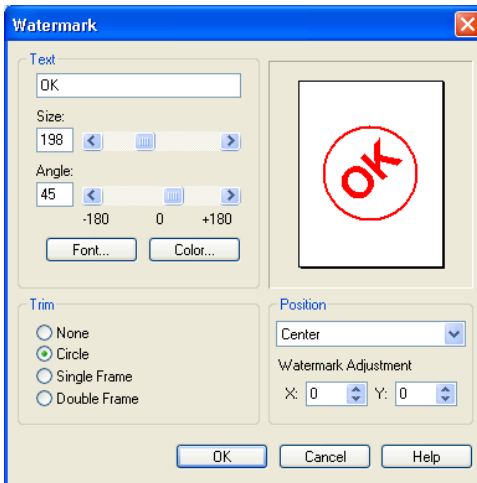




## NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

- Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark. Select the attributes (font, size, angle) to be used.
- Click OK.

*The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.*

5. If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
6. Click **OK** twice.
7. Click **Print**.

# Collating

## PCL or PostScript

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. A printer with a hard disk drive performs better.

### Important

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

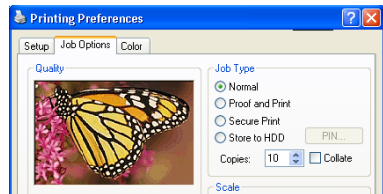
To use the printer driver to select collating:

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Job Options** tab, under **Job Type**, enter the number of copies required. *Only if the application has no collate option—* select **Collate**.
4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Proof and Print

## PCL or PostScript

### Using

Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

### NOTES

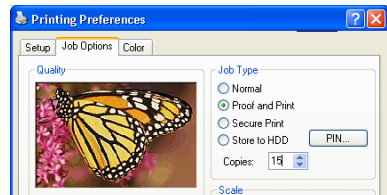
- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



- a. Under **Job Type**, select **Proof and Print**.
- b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

The screenshot shows the 'JOB PIN' dialog box with the 'Job Name Setting' section. It contains a text input field for 'Job Name', a checkbox labeled 'Request Job Name for each print job', and a 'Setting of PIN' section with a text input field and the instruction 'Enter 4 digits.' There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

The screenshot shows the 'JOB PIN' dialog box with the 'Personal ID Number' section. It contains a text input field and the instruction 'Enter 4 digits. Use number 0-9.' There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

- c. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk drive. One copy is printed for checking.
5. After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document. Use the procedures given below.

## Proof and Print

### Printing Copies

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

## Proof and Print

### Deleting Copies

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### PCL or PostScript

#### Using Secure Printing

Secure printing (printing with passwords) allows you to print confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users in a network environment.

#### NOTE

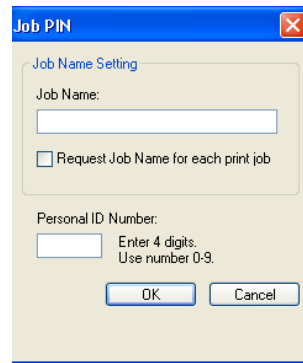
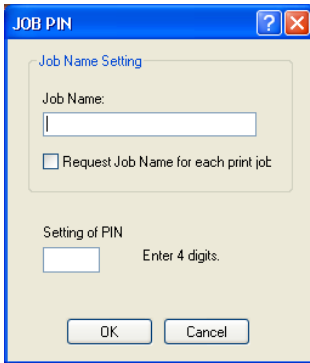
- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. Under **Job Type**, select **Secure Print**.

#### NOTE

If you've already used **Secure Print** to place a document on the hard disk drive, but have not yet printed it out, click the **PIN** button and enter a new job name.

- a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

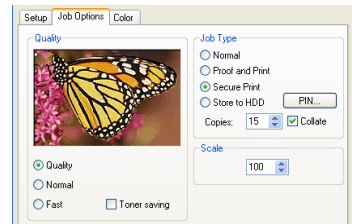


- b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
4. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the printer's hard disk.
6. Go to the printer. Use the front panel to print the document. See below.



# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Printing at the Printer

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**.  
Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button.

*The document prints and is deleted from the hard disk drive.*

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Deleting the confidential document before printing it

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**.  
Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.

# Hard Disk Drive

## PCL or PostScript

### Storing a Document

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead, stationery, etc.

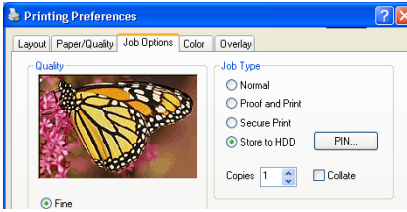
#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned **OFF** for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.

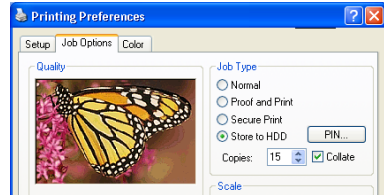
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Preferences** button.

3. On the **Job Options** tab, select **Store to HDD**.

### PostScript Driver



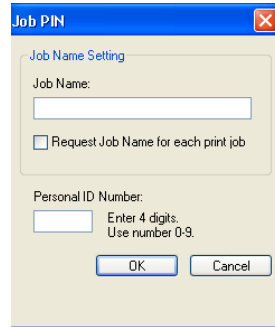
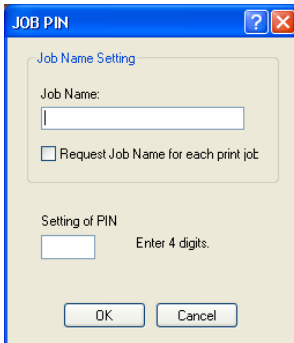
### PCL Driver



## NOTE

If you've already stored a document on the printer's hard disk drive, and want to store another one, click the **PIN** button and enter a new Job Name.

- a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name** for each print job.



- b. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
4. Select the number of copies. Click **Collate**, if applicable.
5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk. It can then be printed on demand, or deleted. Use the procedures given below.

# Hard Disk Drive

## Printing a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the document.

### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.

## Hard Disk Drive

### Deleting a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Overlays

## What are Overlays?

An overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (optional), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

## Example of Using Overlays

Suppose that you used the Storage Device Manager to create and store three files in the printer:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

## Creating Overlays

1. Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead).
2. Use the printer driver to generate a PRN file (print file).
3. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format.
4. Download the storable file to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

### NOTE

- **The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.**
- **If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.**
- **If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.**
- **An overlay may consist of more than one component file.**



## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PCL

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

To create a print (PRN) file:

1. Open your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the "**Print To File**" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model. Click the **Preferences** button. This should open the printer driver settings.

### Important

You must use the Oki PCL driver to do this.

4. Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
5. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
6. Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.
7. Click **Print**.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PostScript

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

1. Open your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the **Print To File** option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model. Then click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.
4. Select the **Job Options** tab. Click the **Overlays...** button.
5. Choose **Create Form** from the menu.
6. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
7. Click **OK** to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

### Important

You must use the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

## Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how to use the Storage Device Manager to download this file to the printer.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

1. Launch Storage Device Manager. Allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
2. Click **Project**, then **New Project**.
3. From the **Project** menu, select **Add File to Project**.
4. Select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.
  - PCL**: This automatically generates a BIN file.
  - PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file.

### Important!

The BIN file is automatically assigned an ID number.

To change the ID number

- double-click the number
- enter a new one in the ID field.

5. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive.*

### NOTE

**The assigned file name is very important! You must use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. You should change the ID number or name from the default value. *Note the new name for later use.***

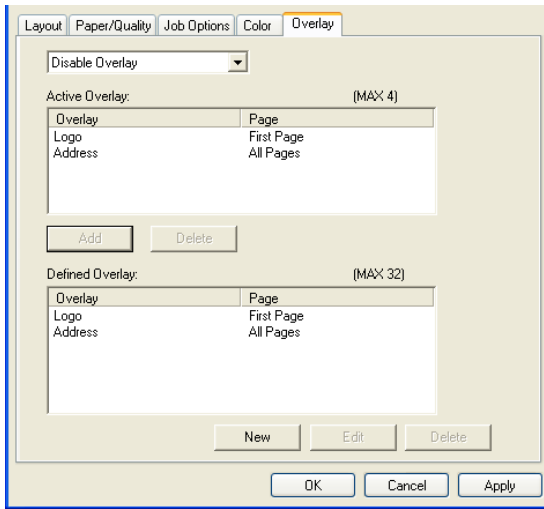
6. Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.

7. Select the **Project** menu. Choose **Send Project Files to Printer**.  
This downloads the file to the printer.  
If the file was downloaded successfully, "Command Issued" displays.
8. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# Defining Overlays

## PostScript

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay** button.



5. Click the **New** button.

Define Overlays

Overlay Name:

Print on Pages:

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas.  
For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting

Form Name:

Defined Forms:

6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay.  
Select the pages where you want the overlay to print.

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

7. Under **Form setting**, in the drop-down list, enter or select a form name. Click **Add**.

Define Overlays

Overlay Name:

Print on Pages:

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas.  
For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting

Form Name:

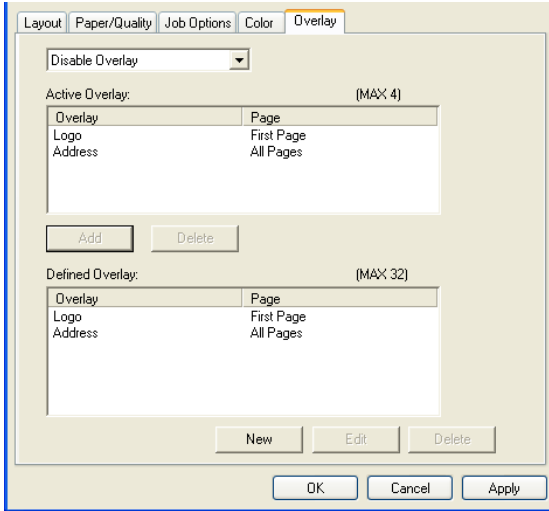
Defined Forms:

## NOTE

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

8. Click **OK**.
9. To continue to add files to the overlay (if required), repeat steps 5 through 8.

- Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name(s).  
Click **Add** to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay.  
To select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name.



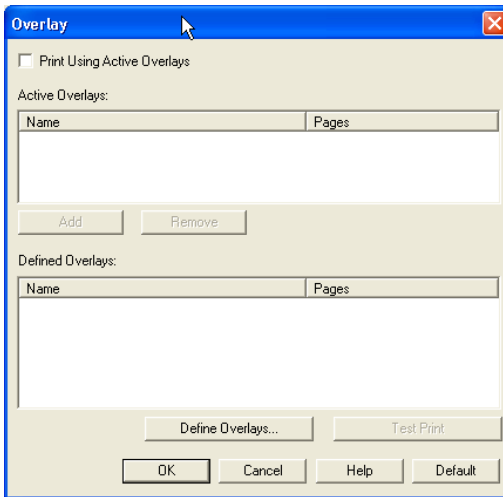
- At the top of the dialog box, use the drop-down list to select **Use Overlay**. Click **OK**.
- Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.



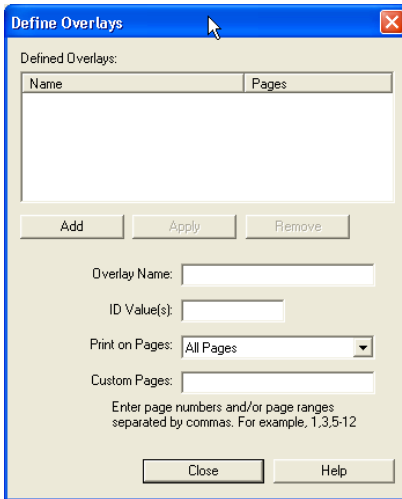
## Defining Overlays

### PCL

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay...** button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



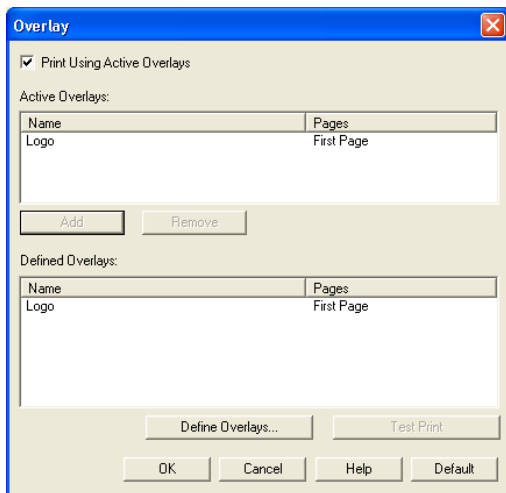
6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is **case sensitive**.

7. In **ID Values**, enter the ID of the file. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
8. Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from **Print on Pages** or use **Custom Pages** to select specific page numbers in the document. Click **Add**.
9. Click **Close**.
10. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name. Click the **Add** button to add the overlay to the list in **Active Overlays**.

**11. Select Print Using Active Overlays.**



**12. Click **OK**.**

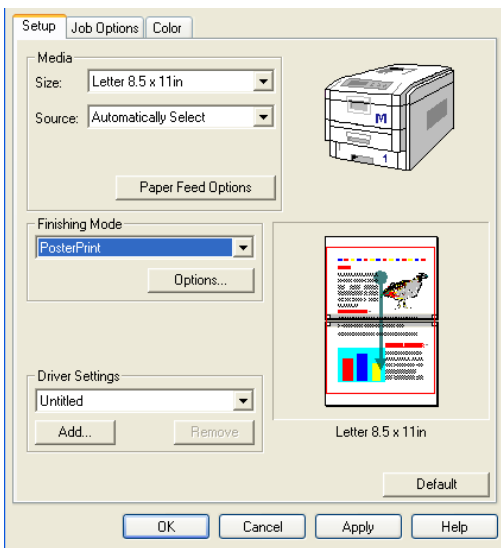
**13. Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.**

# Printing Posters

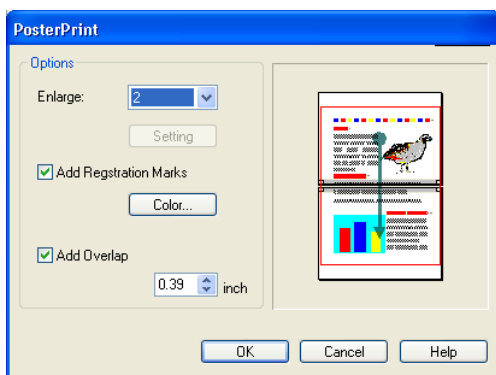
## PCL Only

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces. Each piece prints, enlarged, on a separate sheet. Then, the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Preferences** button.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select **Poster Print**.



4. Click **Options...** and enter the configuration details.



5. Click **OK** twice.

6. Click **Print**.

# Windows 2000

## Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

You can also go to **<http://my.okidata.com>** to view and/or download a copy of the *Software Installation Guide* or for the latest information on drivers for your printer.

## Which Printer Driver to Use?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe® PostScript® (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including “.eps” files) graphics, choose the PCL driver.  
This is more efficient and gives good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or print PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation, performance is faster and graphics print at their best quality.

### NOTE

**The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. If you plan to print parts of this manual, choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise, the line art graphics print at low resolution. The print quality may not be satisfactory.**

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers. Select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can use the alternative driver for printing whenever you need to.

# Memory: Enabling

## PostScript Only

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

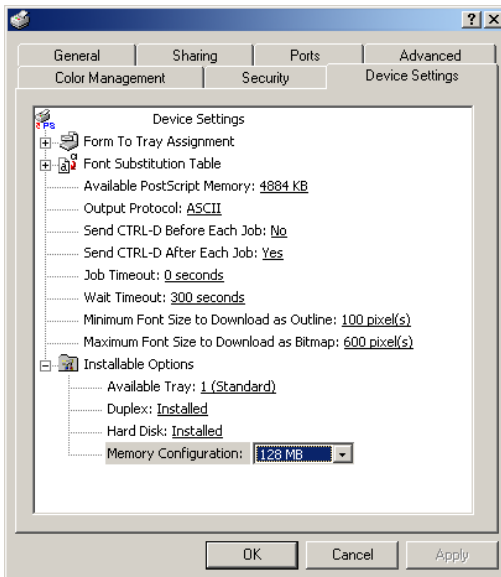
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, click **Memory Configuration**, then set the memory in the drop-down list to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the Menu Map.

To print the Menu Map, see “Printer Settings (Menu Settings)” on page 82.

5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.





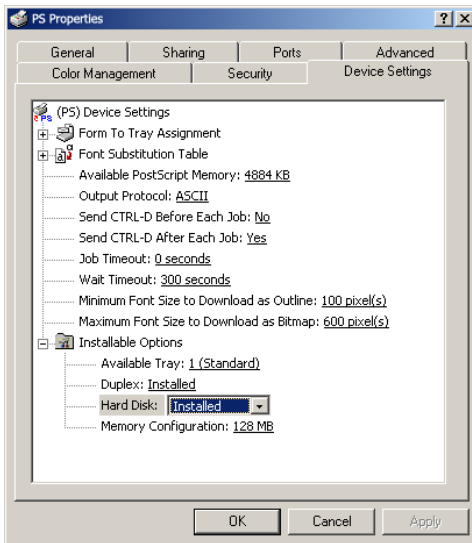
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, make sure **Hard Disk** is set to **Installed**.
5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



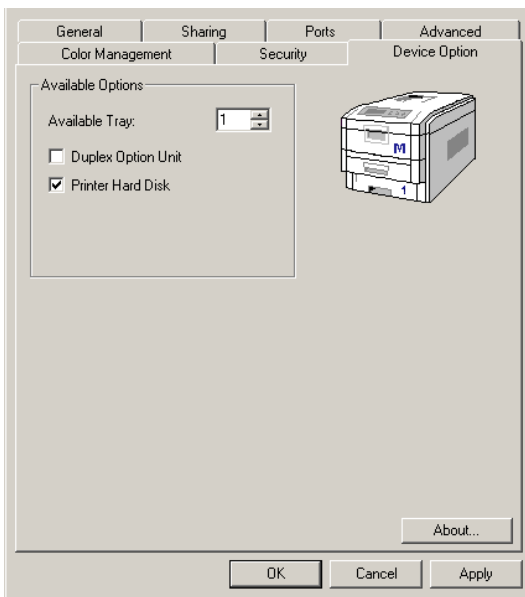
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, click **Printer Hard Disk**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



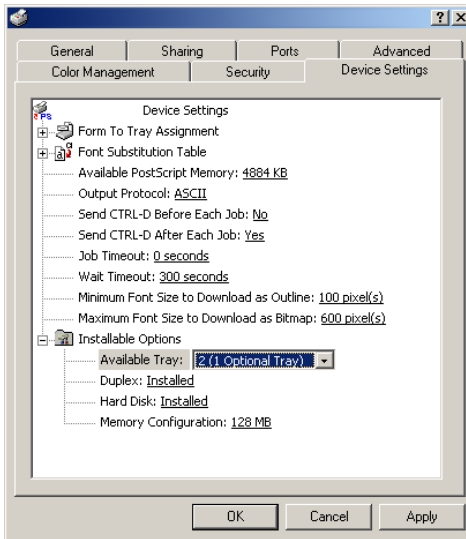
# Paper Trays: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab. Under **Installable Options**, click **Available Trays**, then select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) in the drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



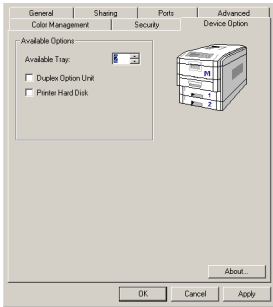
# Additional Paper Trays: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray).
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



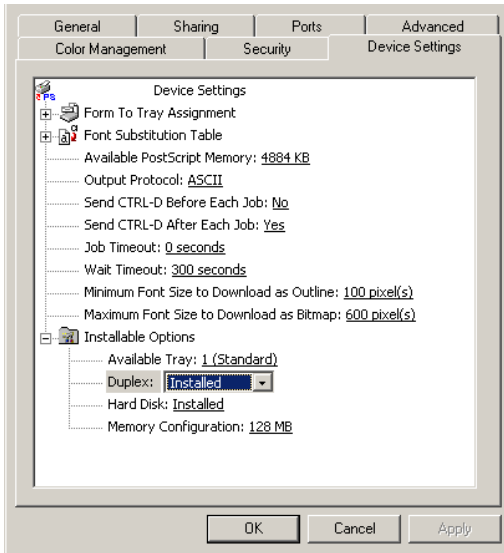
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab. Under **Installable Options**, click **Duplex**. In the drop-down list, select **Installed**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



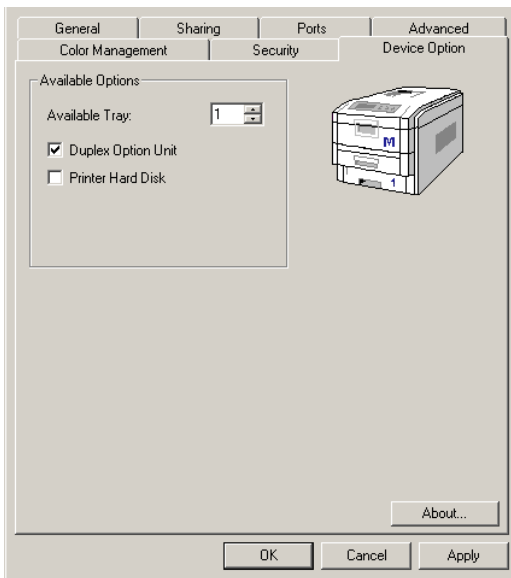
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Option** tab. Click **Duplex Option Unit**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PostScript

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

**If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.**

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

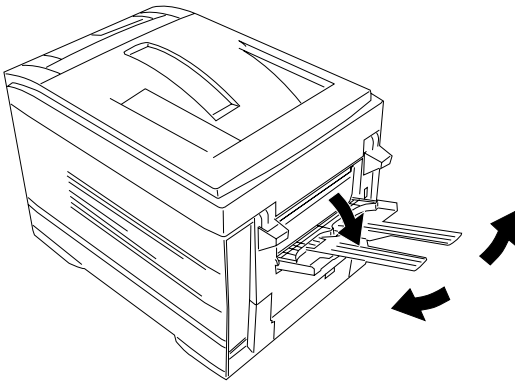
1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.

## Important!

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

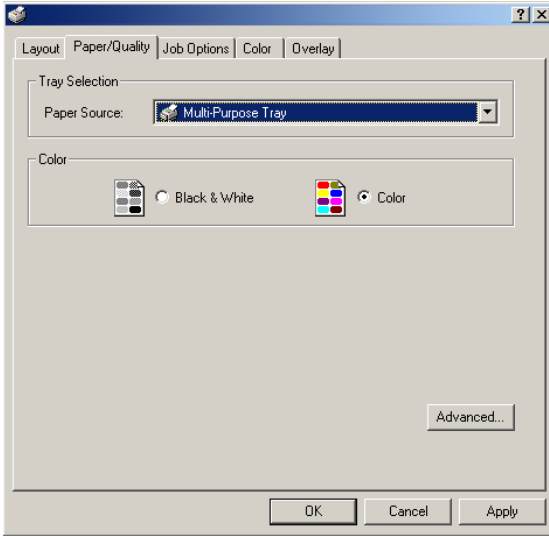
For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.

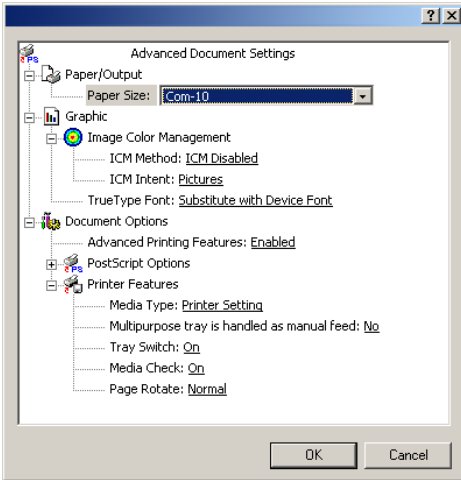




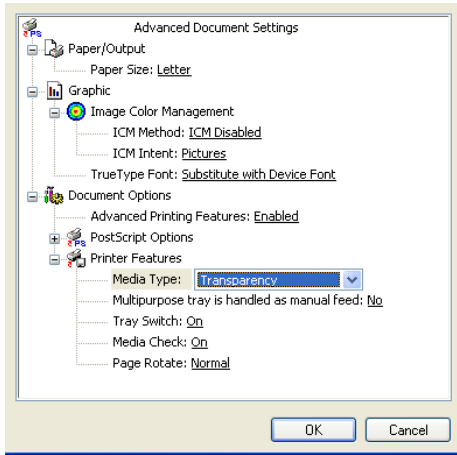
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab. Under **Tray Selection**, in the **Paper Source** drop-down list, select the paper feed.



4. Click the **Advanced** button.
5. Under **Paper/Output**, in the **Paper Size** drop-down list, select the media size.



6. Under **Document Options** → **Printer Features**, click **Media Type** and select the media from the drop-down list.
7. Click **OK** twice. Close the Printers dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PCL

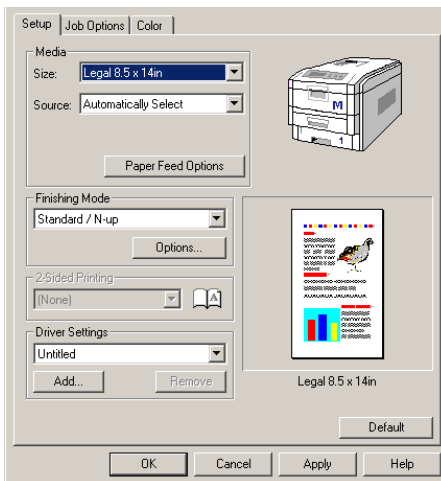
The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

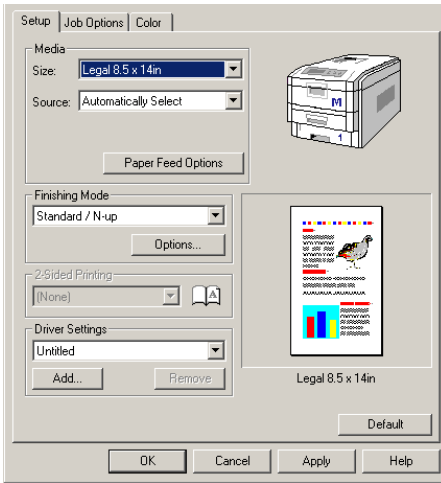
If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select the required paper size.



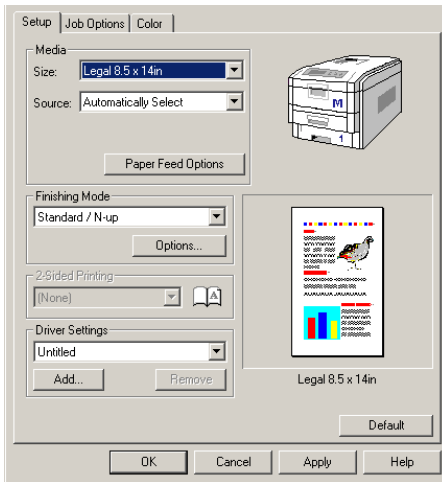
4. Select the required paper feed under **Source**.



## NOTE

If a paper tray is selected, the Weight field becomes visible.

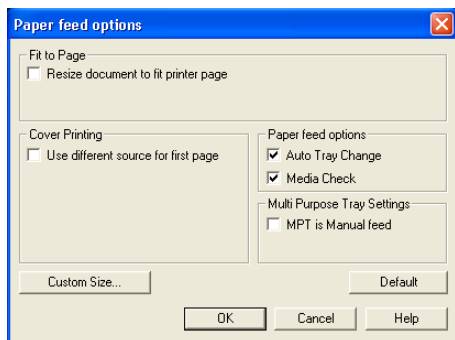
5. Select the required paper type under **Weight**.



## NOTE

If **Printer Setting** is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

6. Click the **Paper Feed Options** button. Make any other selections. Click **OK**.



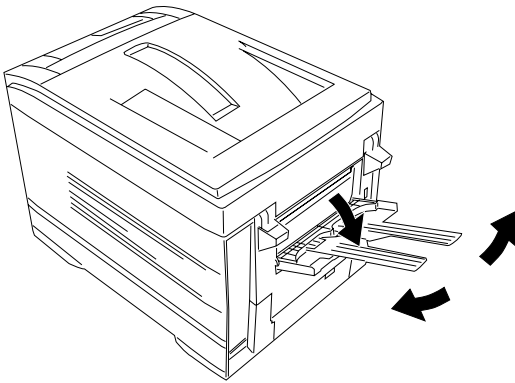
7. Click **OK** twice. Close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

### **Important!**

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.





# Network Printer Status Utility

- Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it.

If the utility is installed, the printer driver **Properties** dialog box changes:

- a new **Status** tab is added.
- an **Option** button is added to the **Device Option** tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

## Important!

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver automatically pings the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box.

This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens.

To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows 2000 Operation

## NOTE

**Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.**

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features.

Printer's features covered in this section include:

- N-up printing (see page 258)
- Custom page sizes (see page 261)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 270)
- Duplex printing (see page 271)
- Printing Booklets (see page 275)
- Watermarks (see page 280)
- Collating (see page 282)
- Proof and Print (see page 283)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 287)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 292)
- Using overlays (see page 296)
- Printing posters (see page 309)

## Factors that Affect Color Printing

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration.*

Some of the most important factors are

- the differences between the range of colors a monitor can reproduce versus the range of colors that a printer can reproduce
- viewing conditions
- printer driver color settings
- monitor settings
- how your software application displays color
- paper type

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors

### (Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce)

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Yellow, Magenta and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues. These cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

## Viewing Conditions

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

## Printer Driver Color Settings

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Settings

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

### NOTE

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many monitors allow the color temperature to be adjusted through the monitor's control panel.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

- **5000k\***  
Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.
- **6500k\***  
Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.
- **9300k\***  
Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## How your Software Application Displays Color

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

## Paper Type

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### NOTE

These suggestions are for guidance only.

Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing.

Some applications override (without warning) any color matching settings in the printer driver.

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer.

There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

- most common [RGB] (see page 240)
- professional desktop publishing and graphics [CMYK] (see page 240)
- photographic images (see page 241)
- specific colors (i.e., a company logo) (see page 242)
- printing vivid colors (see page 243)

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **RGB or CMYK?**

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method make distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print are in RGB format. This is the most common format. If you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically, CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.



# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Matching Photographs**

#### **RGB only**

Oki Color Matching (see page 250) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### **RGB or CMYK**

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 257). Print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### Matching Specific Colors

#### (Example: Company logo)

#### RGB only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 250), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 252).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 247).

#### RGB or CMYK

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 257). Print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric Setting (see page 252).

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Printing Vivid Colors**

#### **RGB only**

Use Oki Color Matching (see page 250), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 252) with the Saturation option.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### PCL Driver

The Color Matching Options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

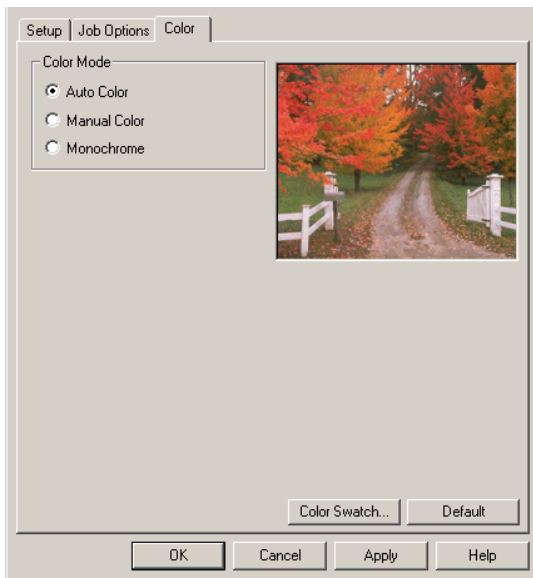
#### NOTE

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

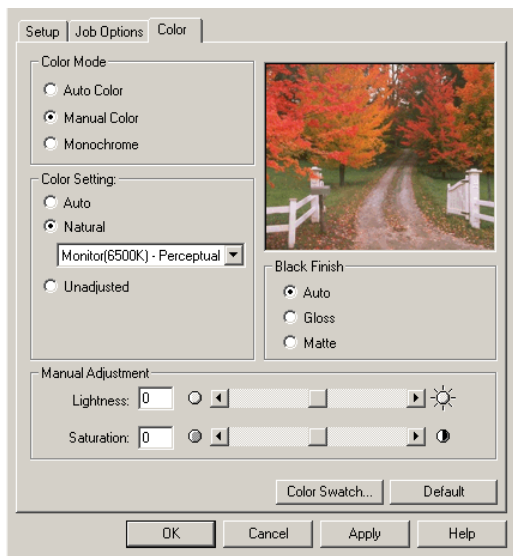
If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

#### Manually set the options in the PCL driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the appropriate printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, click **Manual Color**.
5. Under **Color Setting**, click **Natural**.



6. Select the method you wish to use:

***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

7. Set any other required parameters. Use the on-line Help for guidance.
8. When you are done, click **OK**. Close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

### An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
5. Select the shade of red that best suits your needs. Make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
6. Use your program's color picker to enter the same RGB values (from step 5). Change the logo to that color.

### NOTE

**The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.**

# Color Matching

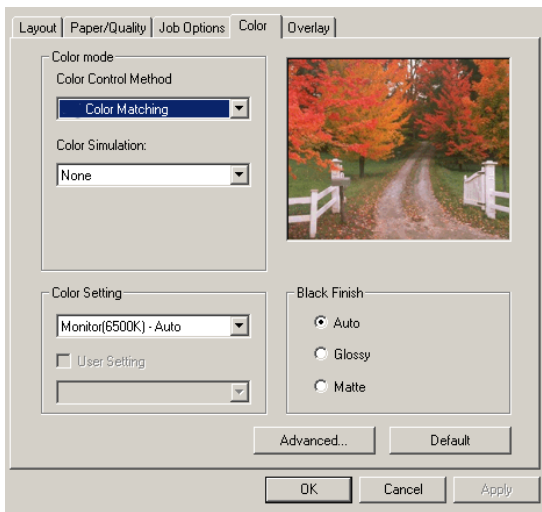
## Color Matching Options

### PostScript Driver

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

### Setting Options Manually

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.





4. Under **Color Mode**, use the drop-down list to select one of the following **Color Control Methods**:
  - a. **OKI Color Matching**

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system. It affects *RGB data only*. See "OKI Color Matching" on page 250.
  - b. **PostScript Color Matching**

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer. It affects both RGB and CMYK data. See "PostScript Color Matching" on page 252.
  - c. **Using ICC Profiles**

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "Using ICC Profiles" on page 254.
  - d. **No Color Matching**

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching. No color correction occurs when selected. This option is good when other matching regimens are used, specifically if you select a Color Simulation option.
  - e. **Print in Grayscale**

This option prints all documents as monochrome. No color prints. The printer interprets all colors as a variation of grays.

# Color Matching

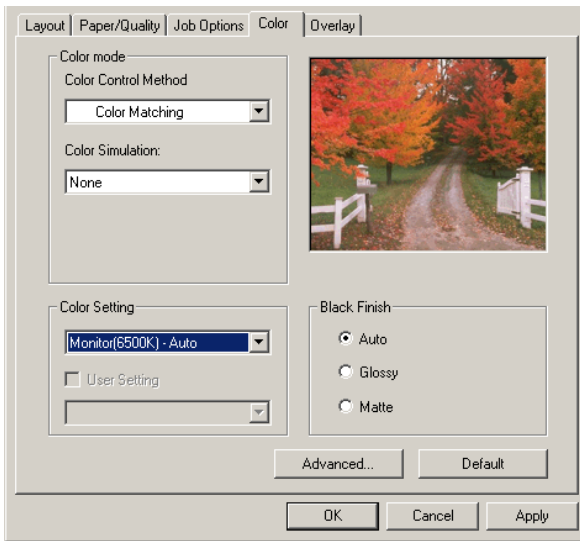
## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB data only*. This is the default setting. It provides the fastest, best color matching for your printer.

Under **Color Setting**, use the drop-down list to select the type to be used



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

#### Color Settings

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Auto***

Optimized for printing general documents when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. This is best for printing photographic images.

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

##### ***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

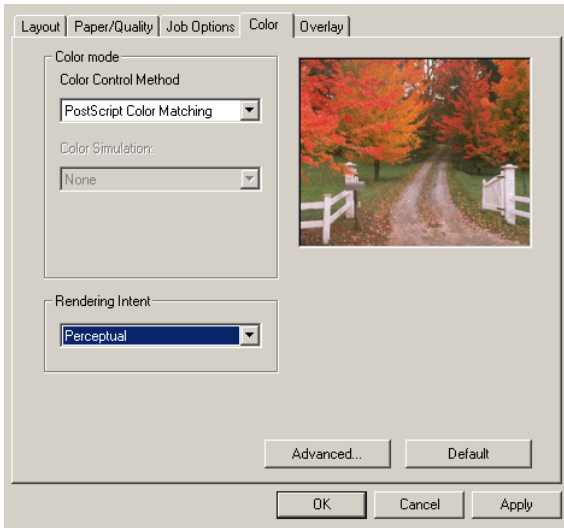
# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer. It affects both RGB and CMYK data.

From the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list, select the rendering type.



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

#### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The printer driver provides the rendering intents listed below:

- *Auto*  
Best choice for printing general documents.
- *Perceptual*  
Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.
- *Saturation*  
Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.
- *Relative Colorimetric*  
Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white. Unlike Absolute Colorimetric, Relative Colorimetric attempts to take the paper white into account.
- *Absolute Colorimetric*  
Best for printing solid colors and tints (such as Company logos). Matches colors common to both devices exactly. Clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### Using ICC Profiles

#### PostScript Only

- Affects **RGB data only**.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

### NOTE

**This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space.**

# Color Matching

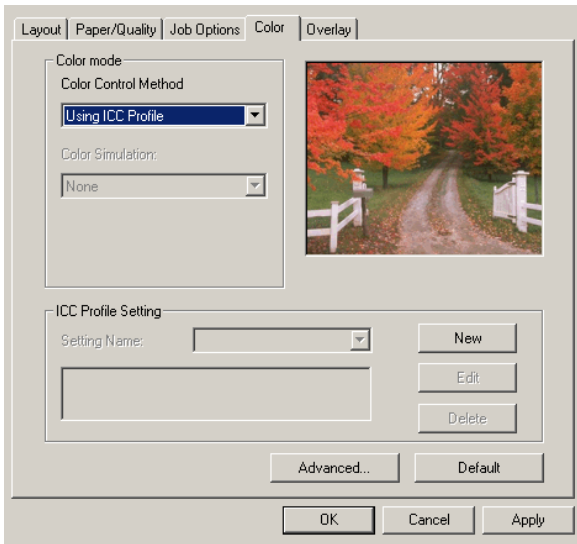
## Color Control Method

### Using ICC Profiles

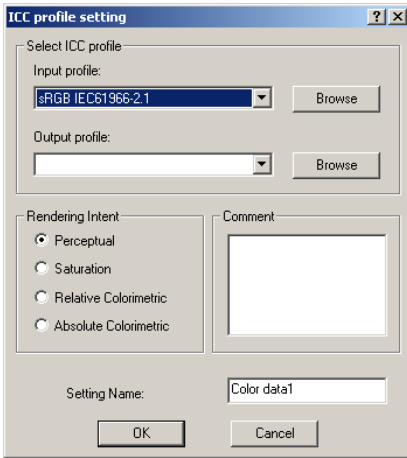
#### PostScript Only

#### Setting Up

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Under **Color mode**, in the **Color Control Method** drop-down list, select **Using ICC Profile**.



5. Click the **New** button.



6. Under **Select ICC profile**, use the drop-down lists to select the **Input profile** and **Output profile**.
7. Select the desired **Rendering Intent** (see "Rendering Intents" on page 253). Type in a name for the profile. Click **OK**.  
The new name appears in the **Setting Name** drop-down list under **ICC Profile Setting**.
8. Repeat steps 5-7 for each ICC profile you wish to define.
9. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### Windows ICM Color Matching

#### PCL or PostScript

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects **RGB data only**.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer. These profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**, then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Color Management** tab.
4. Under “**Color Profiles currently associated with this printer**”, you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click “**Add...**” and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver.

#### NOTE

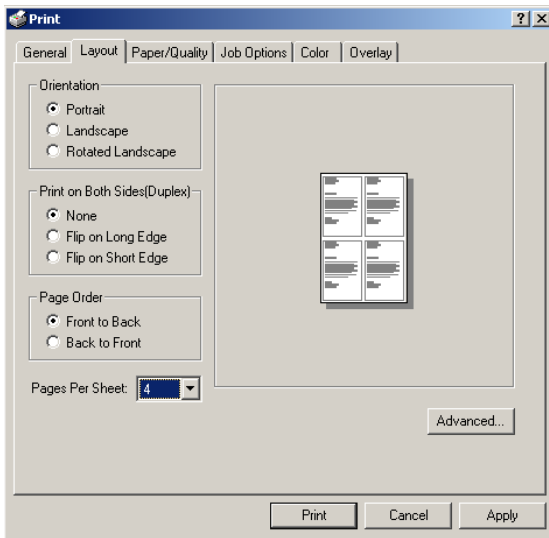
**The Color Match “Using ICC Profiles” feature provides an alternative to Windows ICM. It is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.**

# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

## (N-Up Printing)

### PostScript

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Layout** tab
3. Under **Pages Per Sheet**, select the required number of pages.
4. Click **Print**.

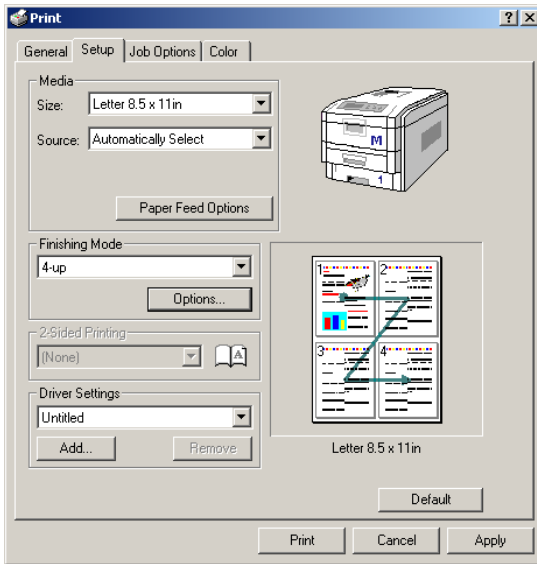


# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

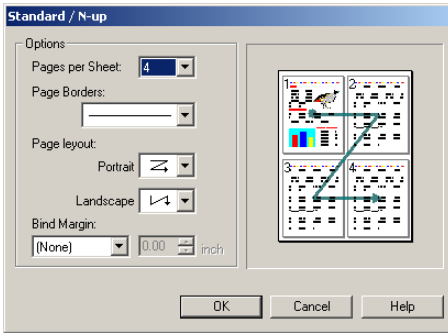
## (N-Up Printing)

### PCL

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Setup** tab.
3. Under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



4. Click the **Options** button. Select the **Page Borders**, **Page Layout** and **Bind Margin**. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PostScript

### NOTE

One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

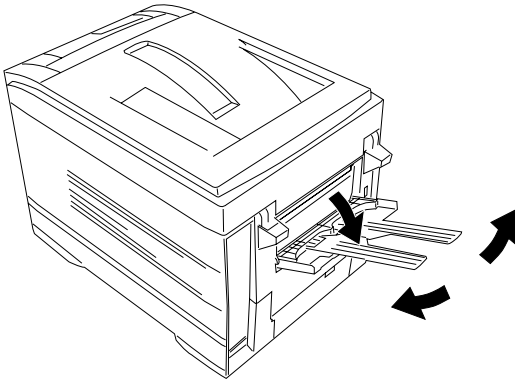
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.

### **Important!**

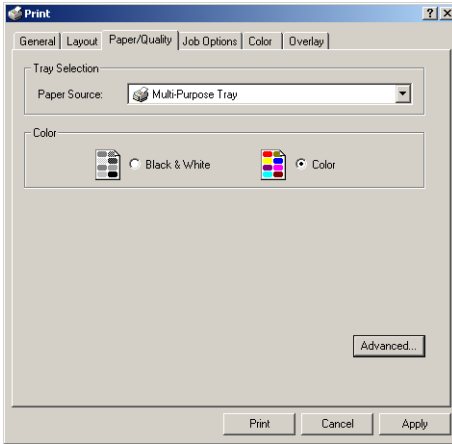
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

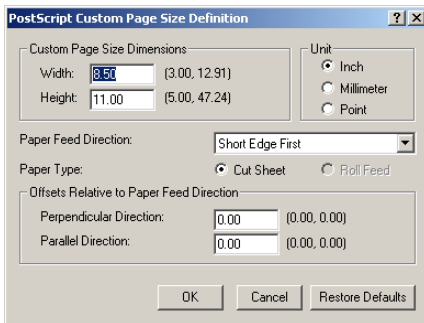
- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



3. Under **Tray Selection**, in the **Paper Source** drop-down list, select **Multi Purpose (MP) Tray**.



4. Click the **Advanced** button. Under **Paper/Output**, in the **Paper Size** drop-down list, select **Postscript Custom Page Size**.



5. Enter the **Width** and **Height** for the custom paper.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

6. Select the **Paper Feed Direction**. Click **OK**.

### **NOTE**

- **Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first**
- **Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first**
- **Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**
- **Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**

7. Click **OK**.

8. Click **Print**.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PCL

### NOTE

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

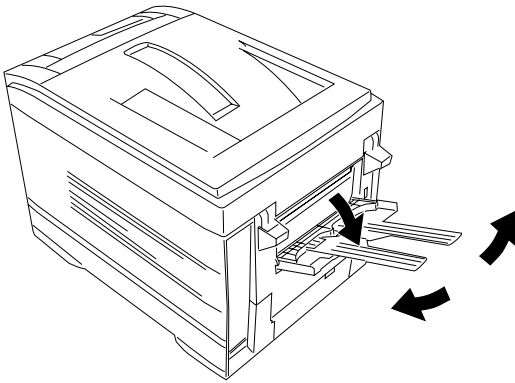
- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

## Important!

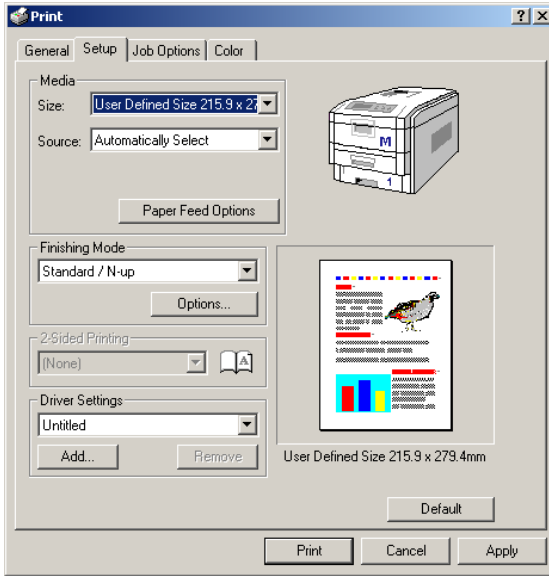
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Setup** tab.
3. Under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select **User Defined Size**. The Set Free Size dialog box appears.

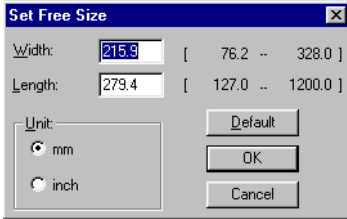


## NOTE

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK. The driver automatically makes the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

4. Select the unit. Enter the width and length measurements.  
Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

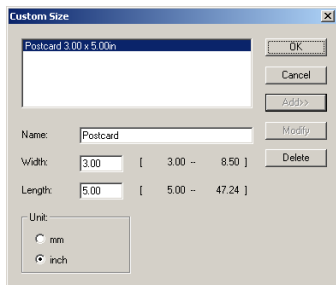


5. Click **OK**.
6. Make sure that **User Defined** now appears in the **Size** list on the **Setup** tab.

## NOTE

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options. Click Custom Size.
- Select the unit. Enter the relevant information for Width and Height. Give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.



- Click OK.

*The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.*

7. Click OK.
8. Click Print.

# Print Resolution

## PCL or PostScript

### Changing for a Print Job

#### NOTE

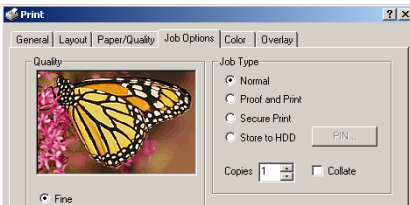
To change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
- **Right click** the appropriate printer name.
- **Select Properties**.
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

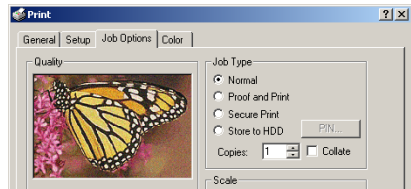
**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Under **Quality**, select the required printing resolution

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



5. Select **Toner Saving** (if appropriate).
6. Click **Print**.

# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name. Select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below.  
More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.

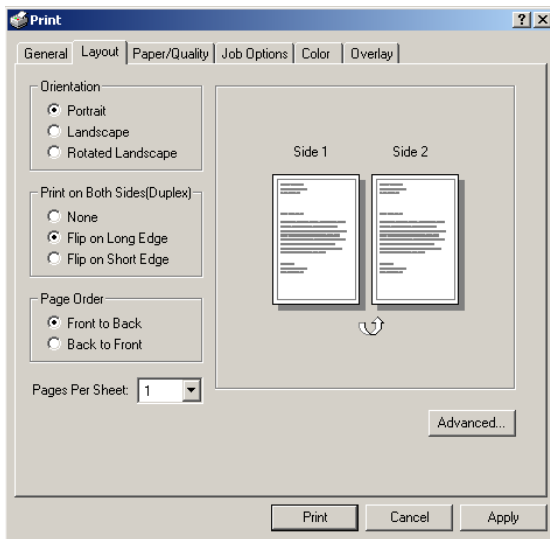
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Layout** tab.
3. Under **Print on Both Sides**, select **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge**.
4. Click **Print**.





# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- **Click Start → Settings → Printers.**
- **Right click the appropriate printer name.**
- **Select Properties.**
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

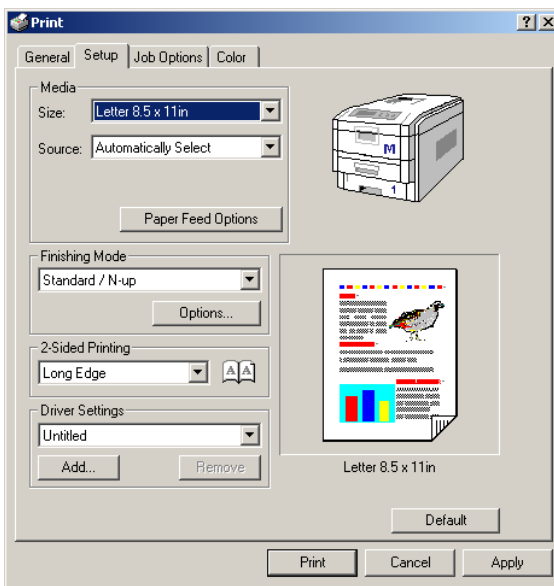
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Setup** button.
3. Under **2-Sided Printing**, select **Long Edge** or **Short Edge**.
4. Click **Print**.



# Printing Booklets

## PostScript

### NOTES

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections. See the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

### Important!

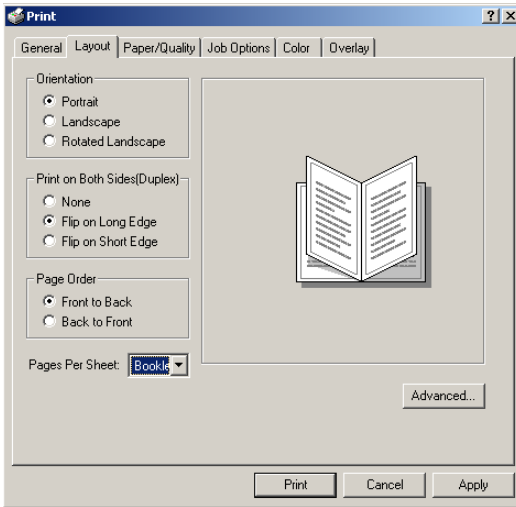
Booklet printing with the PostScript driver is restricted to two (2) pages per sheet

Examples:

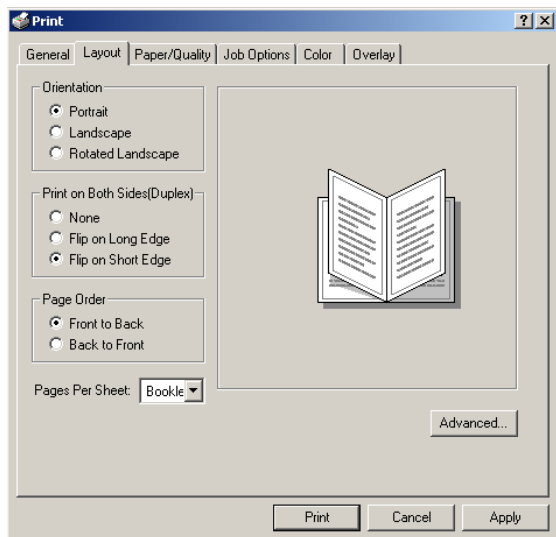
- print a 5½ x 8½ inch booklet on 8½ x 11 inch paper
- print an 8½ x 11 inch booklet on 11 x 17 inch paper

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PS driver. Click the **Layout** tab.

3. Under **Pages Per Sheet**, in the drop-down list, select **Booklet**.



4. Under **Print on Both Sides (Duplex)**, select **Flip on Short edge**.
5. Click **Print**.



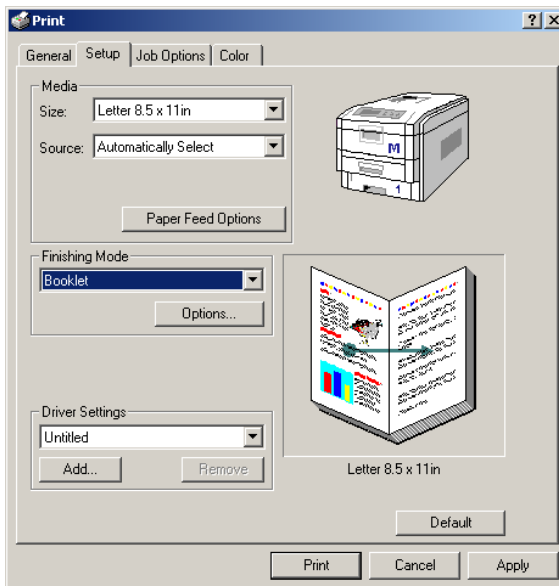
# Printing Booklets

## PCL

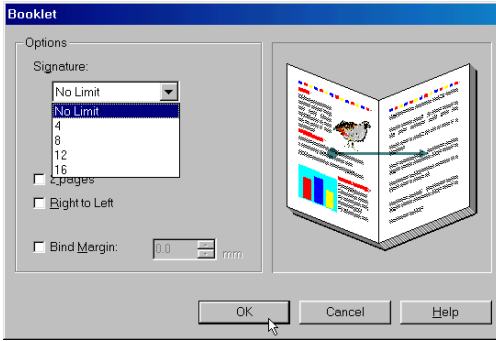
### NOTES

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Setup** tab.
3. Under **Finishing Mode**, in the drop-down list, select **Booklet**.



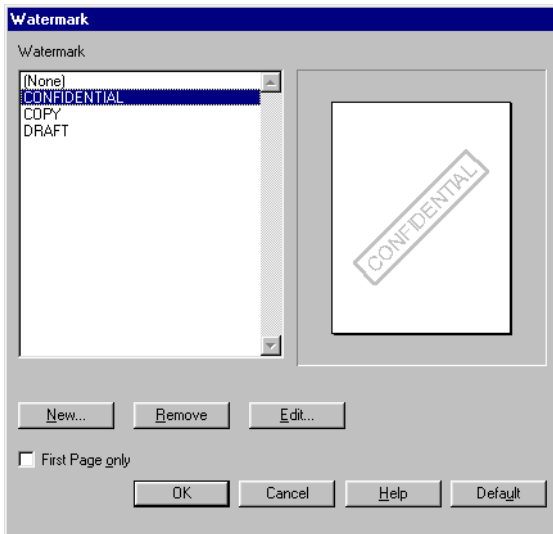
4. Click the **Options** button. Set the **Signature**, **2pages**, **Right to Left**, and **Bind Margin**, as required. See the online Help for information. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Print**.



# Printing Watermarks

## PCL Only

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Job Options** tab.
3. Click **Watermark**.
4. Select a name from the **Watermark** list.

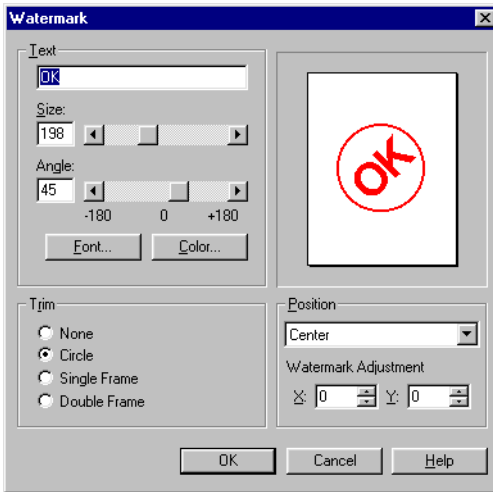




## NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

- Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark. Select the attributes (font, size, angle) to be used.
- Click **OK**.

*The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.*

5. If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **Print**.

# Collating

## PCL or PostScript

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. A printers with a hard disk drive performs better.

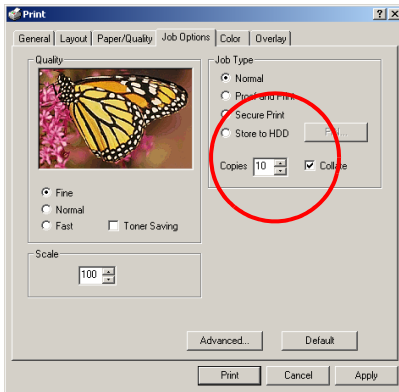
### Important

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

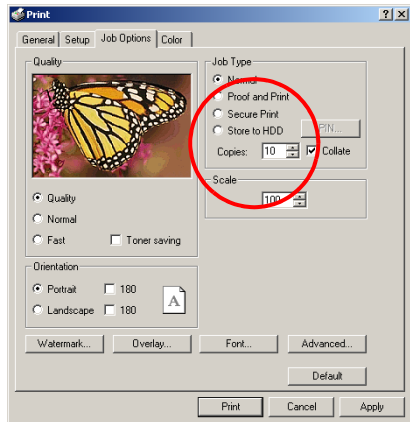
To use the printer driver to select collating:

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Job Options** tab.
3. Under **Job Type**, enter the number of copies required. *Only if the application has no collate option*—select **Collate**.
4. Click **Print**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Proof and Print

## PCL or PostScript

### Using

Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

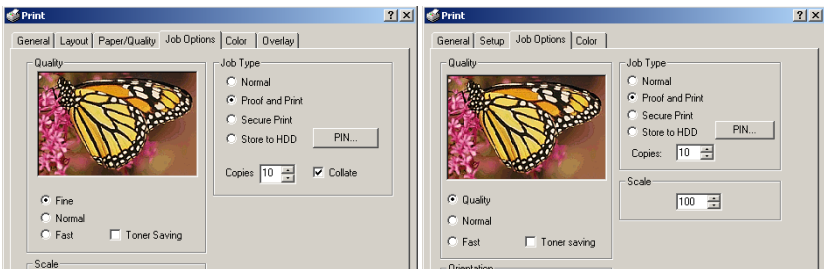
### NOTES

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed. Only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Job Options** tab.
3. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

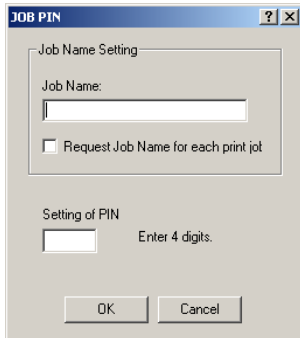
PostScript Driver

PCL Driver



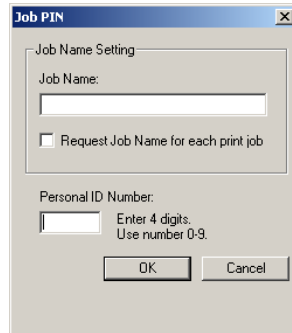
- a. Under **Job Type**, select **Proof and Print**.
- b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.
- c. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.

### PostScript Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "JOB PIN" with a question mark icon and a close button. It contains two sections: "Job Name Setting" and "Setting of PIN". The "Job Name Setting" section has a text input field for "Job Name:" and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". The "Setting of PIN" section has a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits.". At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

### PCL Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job PIN" with a close button. It contains two sections: "Job Name Setting" and "Personal ID Number:". The "Job Name Setting" section has a text input field for "Job Name:" and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". The "Personal ID Number:" section has a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits. Use number 0-9.". At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

4. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk drive. One copy is printed for checking.
5. After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document. Use the procedures given below.

## Proof and Print

### Printing Copies

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

## Proof and Print

### Deleting Copies

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. The deletion confirmation message appears. Press the SELECT button to delete the remaining copies.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### PCL or PostScript

#### Using Secure Printing

Secure printing (printing with passwords) allows you to print confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users in a network environment.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Job Options** tab.
3. Under **Job Type**, select **Secure Print**.

#### NOTE

If you've already used **Secure Print** to place a document on the hard disk drive, but have not yet printed it out, click the **PIN** button and enter a new job name.

- a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.
- b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.

### PostScript Driver

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "JOB PIN" with a help icon and a close button. It contains two main sections: "Job Name Setting" and "Setting of PIN". The "Job Name Setting" section has a text input field for "Job Name:" and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". The "Setting of PIN" section has a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits.". At the bottom, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

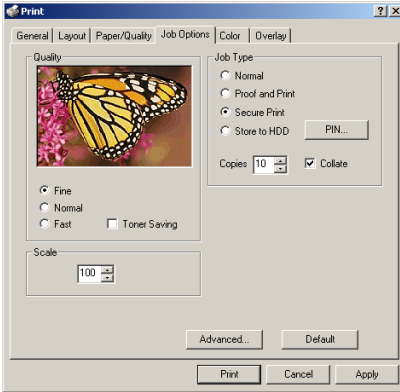
### PCL Driver

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job PIN" with a close button. It contains two main sections: "Job Name Setting" and "Personal ID Number:". The "Job Name Setting" section has a text input field for "Job Name:" and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". The "Personal ID Number:" section has a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits. Use number 0-9.". At the bottom, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

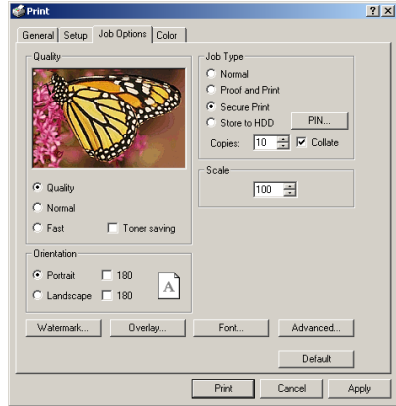


4. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



5. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the printer's hard disk.
6. Go to the printer. Use the front panel to print out the document. See below.

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Printing at the Printer

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button.

*The document prints. It is deleted from the hard disk drive.*

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Deleting the confidential document before printing it

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.

# Hard Disk Drive

## PCL or PostScript

### Storing a Document

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead, stationery, etc.

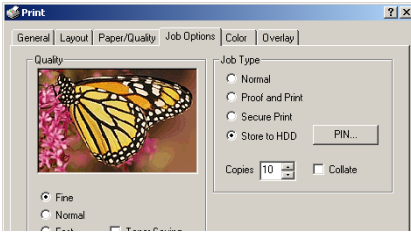
#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned **OFF** for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.

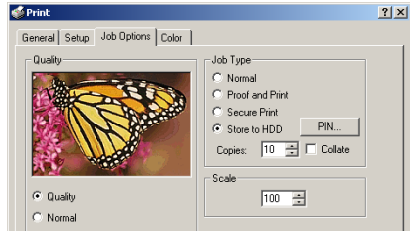
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate driver. Click the **Job Options** tab.
3. Select **Store to HDD**.

4. Select the number of copies. Click **Collate**, if applicable.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver

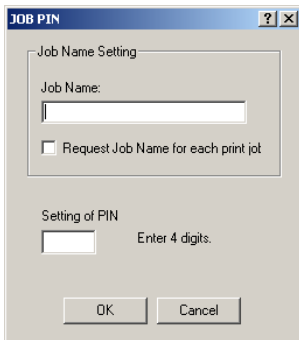


## NOTE

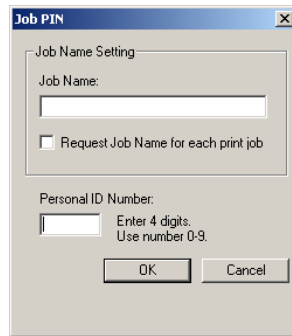
If you've already stored a document on the printer's hard disk drive, and want to store another one, click the **PIN** button and enter a new Job Name.

- Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.
- Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Then, click **OK**.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



5. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk. It can then be printed on demand, or deleted. Use the procedures given below.

## Hard Disk Drive

### Printing a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the document.

### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.

## Hard Disk Drive

### Deleting a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Overlays

## What are Overlays?

An overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (optional), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

## Example of Using Overlays

Suppose that you have created and stored three files in the printer using the Storage Device Manager:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.



## Creating Overlays

1. Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead).
2. Use the printer driver to generate a PRN file (print file).
3. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format.
4. Download the storable file to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

### NOTE

- **The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.**
- **If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.**
- **If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.**
- **An overlay may consist of more than one component file.**

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PCL

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

To create a print (PRN) file:

1. Open in your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the "**Print To File**" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model. Click the **Properties** dialog box. This should open the printer driver settings.

### Important

You must use the Oki PCL driver to do this.

4. Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
5. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
6. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
7. Click **Print**.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PostScript

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

1. Open in your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the **Print To File** option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model. Then click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.

### Important

You must use the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

4. Select the **Job Options** tab. Click the **Overlays...** button.
5. Choose **Create Form** from the menu.
6. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
7. Click **OK** to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

## Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how to use the Storage Device Manager to download this file to the printer.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

1. Launch Storage Device Manager.  
Allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
2. Click **Project**. Click **New Project**.
3. From the **Project** menu, select **Add File to Project**.
4. Select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.  
**PCL**: This automatically generates a BIN file.  
**PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file.

### Important!

At this step, look in the project window.

The BIN file is assigned an ID number.

You can change this ID number by double-clicking it. Enter a new one in the ID field.

5. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive.*

### NOTE

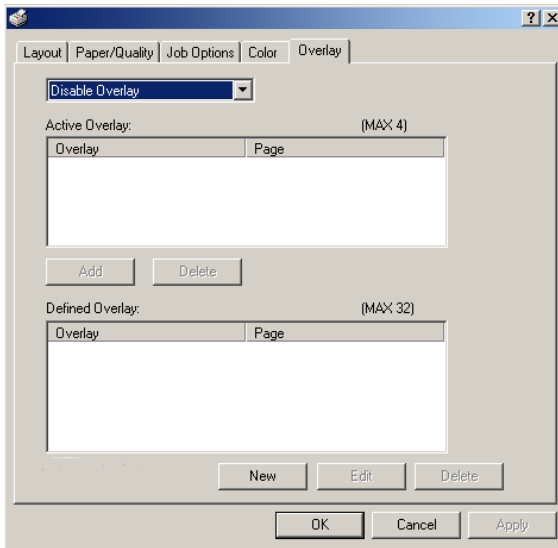
**The assigned file name is very important! You must use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. You should change the ID number or name from the default value. *Note the new name for later use.***

6. Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.
7. Select the **Project** menu.
8. Choose **Send Project Files to Printer**.  
This downloads the file to the printer.  
  
If the file was downloaded successfully, "Command Issued" displays.
9. Close the Storage Device Manager.

## Defining Overlays

### PostScript

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay** button.



5. Click the **New** button.

Define Overlays

Overlay Name:

Print on Pages:

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting:

Form Name:

Defined Forms:

6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay. Select the pages where you want the overlay to print.

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. The file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive under this name. The name is case sensitive.

7. Under **Form setting**, in the Form Name drop-down list, enter or select a form name. Click **Add**.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Define Overlays". It has several input fields and buttons. The "Overlay Name" field contains the text "Logo". The "Print on Pages" dropdown menu is set to "First Page". Below that is an empty "Custom Pages" field. A note reads: "Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12". The "Form setting" section contains a "Form Name" dropdown menu set to "Stationery", with "Add" and "Rename" buttons below it. A "Defined Forms" list contains "Stationery" with a "Delete" button to its right. At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

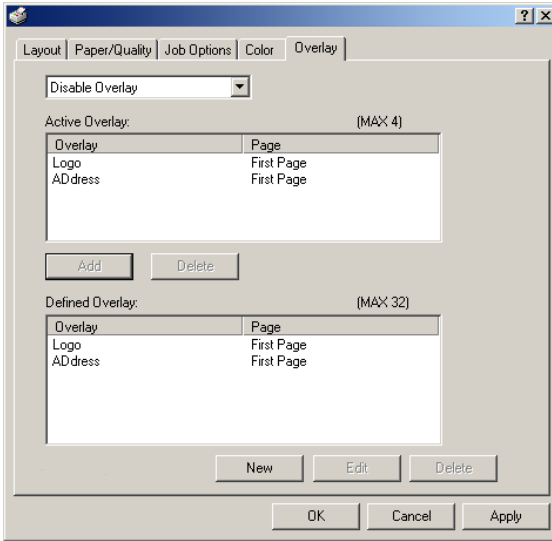
## NOTE

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

8. Click **OK**.
9. To continue to add files to the overlay (if required), repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name(s).



11. Click **Add** to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay.  
To select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name.

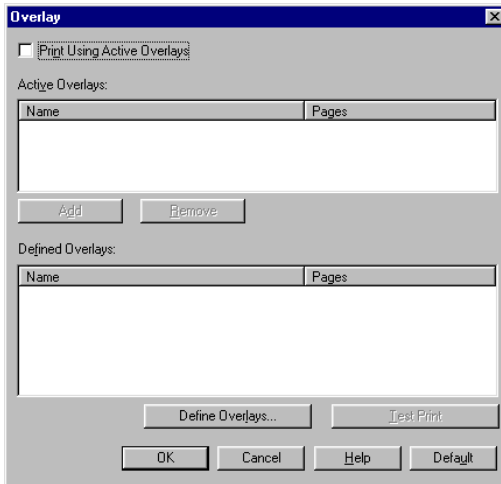


12. At the top of the dialog box, use the drop-down list to select **Use Overlay**. Click **OK**.
13. Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

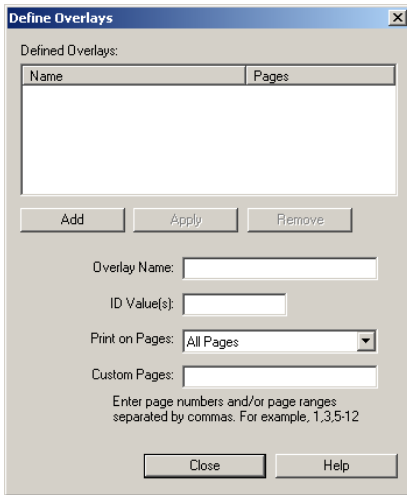
## Defining Overlays

### PCL

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **Printing Preferences**.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay...** button.



- To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



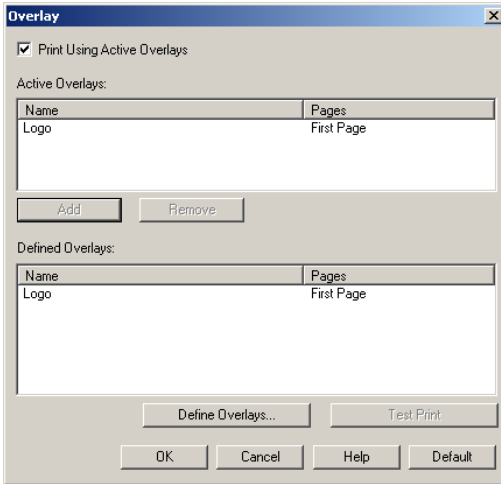
- In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay.

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. The file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive under this name. The name is case sensitive.

- In **ID Values**, enter the ID of the file. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
- To select the pages where the overlay prints, use:  
**Print on Pages**  
or  
**Custom Pages** (to select specific page numbers in the document).
- Click **Add**.
- Click **Close**.
- Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name. Click the **Add** button to add the overlay to the list in **Active Overlays**.

**12. Select Print Using Active Overlays.**



**13. Click **OK**.**

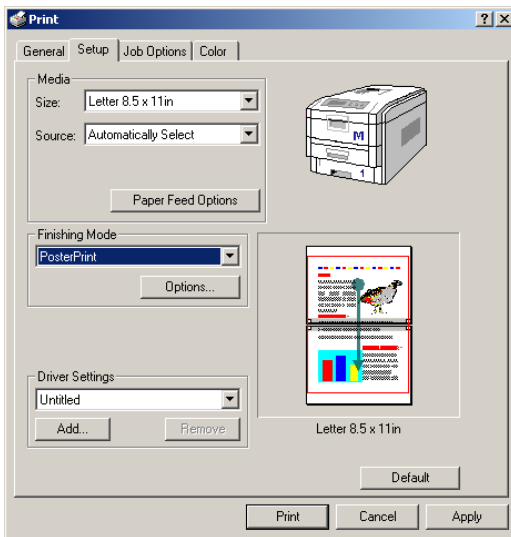
**14. Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.**

# Printing Posters

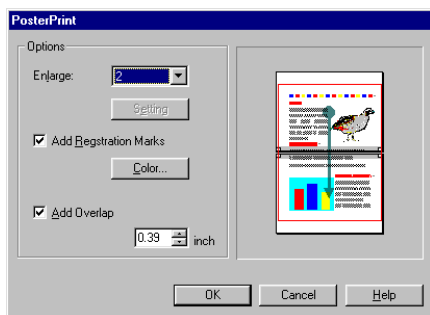
## PCL Only

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces. Each piece prints, enlarged, on a separate sheet. Then, the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, on the **General** tab, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click the **Setup** tab.
3. Under **Finishing Mode**, select **Poster Print**.



4. Click **Options...** Enter the configuration details.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Print**.



# Windows Me/98/95

## Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

You can also go to <http://my.okidata.com> to view and/or download a copy of the *Software Installation Guide* or for the latest information on drivers for your printer.

### Which Printer Driver to Use?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe® PostScript® (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including “.eps” files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This is more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or print PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation, performance is faster and graphics are printed at their best quality.

#### NOTE

**The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. If you plan to print parts of this manual, choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise, the line art graphics print at low resolution. The print quality may not be satisfactory.**

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers. Select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can use the alternative driver for printing whenever you need to.

# Memory: Enabling

## PostScript Only

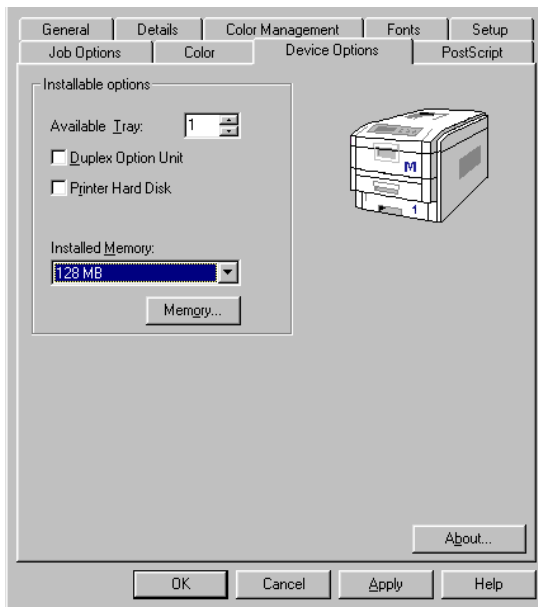
Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

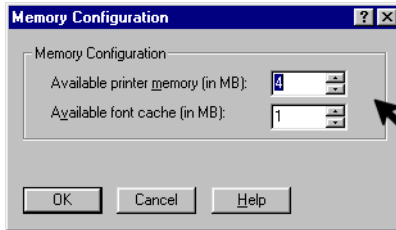
1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Options** tab.
4. Under **Installed Memory**, set the memory in the drop-down list to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the Menu Map.

To print the Menu Map, see “Printer Settings (Menu Settings)” on page 82.





5. To specify usable printer memory size, click the **Memory...** button. The driver automatically adjusts font cache size according to the memory option selected under **Installed**.
6. Click **OK** twice.



# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

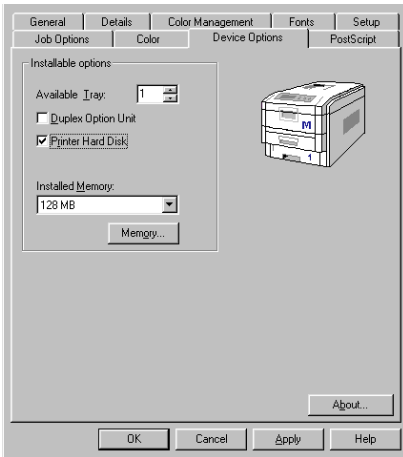
## PostScript or PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

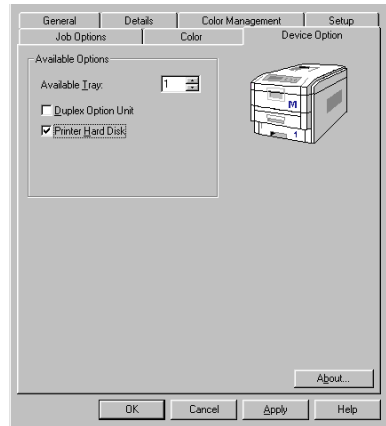
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Options** tab.
4. Select **Printer Hard Disk**. A checkmark appears in the box.
5. Click **OK**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Paper Trays: Enabling

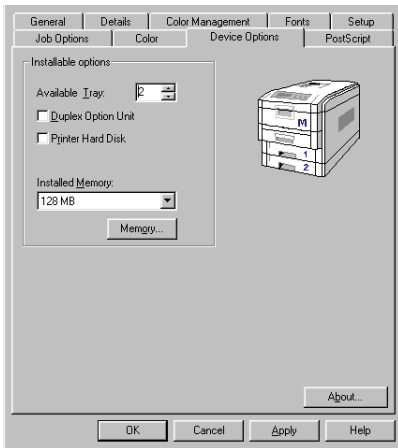
## PostScript or PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

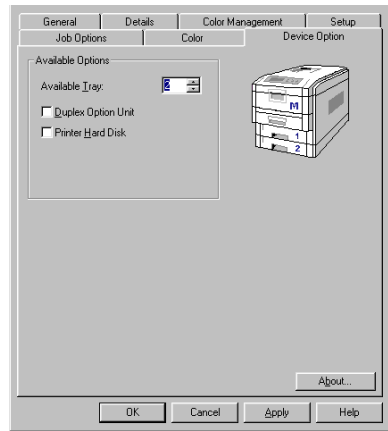
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Options** tab.
4. Next to **Available Trays**, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) in the list.
5. Click **OK**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Duplex Unit: Enabling

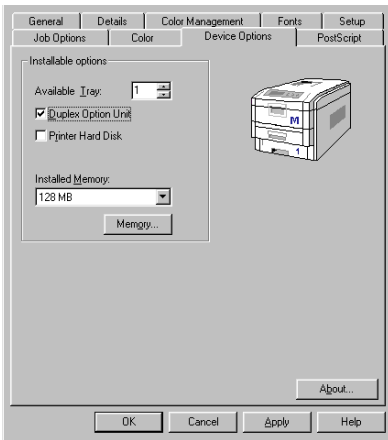
## PostScript or PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

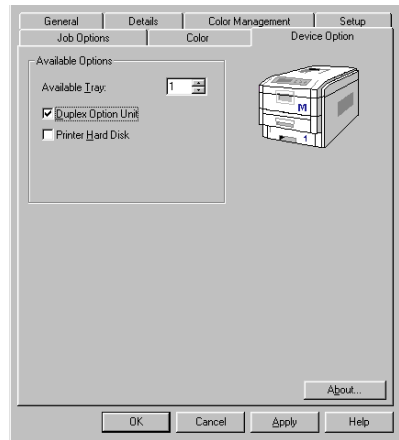
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Options** tab.
4. Select **Duplex Option Unit**. A checkmark appears in the box.
5. Click **OK**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PostScript or PCL

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

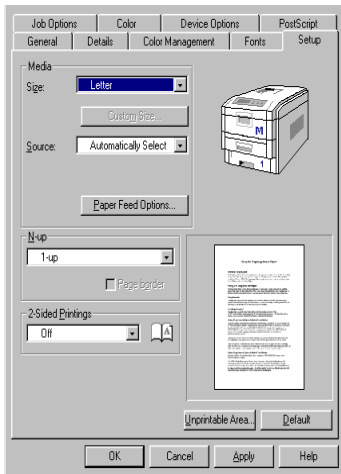
If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print.

An error message displays.

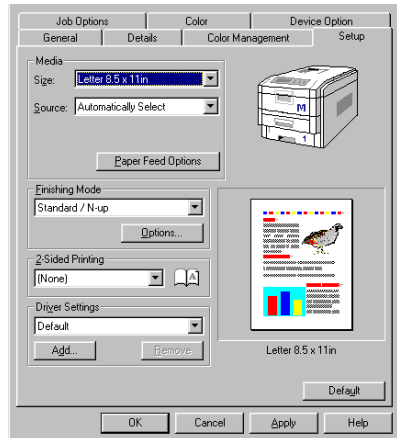
The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Setup** tab.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



4. Select the required paper size under **Size**.
5. Select the required paper feed under **Source**.

**NOTE**

**When a paper tray is selected, the Type or Weight field becomes visible.**

6. PostScript: Select the required paper type under **Type**.  
PCL: Select the required paper type under **Weight (PCL)**.

**NOTE**

**If Printer Setting is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.**

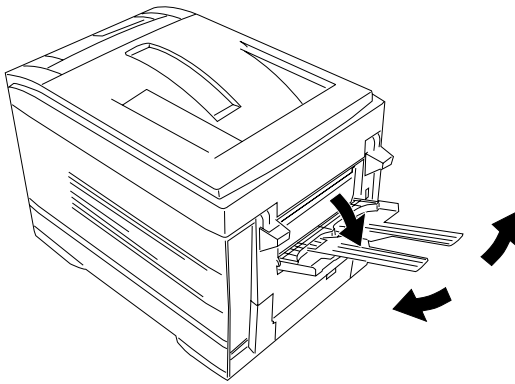
## 7. Click **Paper Feed Options**.

### **Important!**

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.

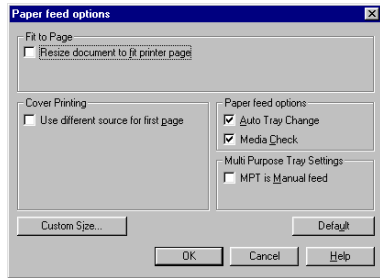


8. Make any other selections,
9. Click **OK**.
10. Click **OK** to close the printer dialog box.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver





# Network Printer Status Utility

- Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. If the utility is installed, the printer driver **Properties** dialog box changes:

- a new **Status** tab is added.
- an **Option** button is added to the **Device Option** tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

## Important!

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver automatically pings the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box.

This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens.

To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows Me/98/95 Operation

## NOTE

**Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.**

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features.

Printer's features covered in this section include:

- N-up printing (see page 347)
- Custom page sizes (see page 351)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 360)
- Duplex printing (see page 362)
- Printing Booklets (see page 365)
- Watermarks (see page 369)
- Collating (see page 371)
- Proof and Print (see page 373)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 377)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 381)
- Using overlays (see page 386)
- Printing posters (see page 399)

## Factors that Affect Color Printing

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration.*

Some of the most important factors are

- the differences between the range of colors a monitor can reproduce versus the range of colors that a printer can reproduce
- viewing conditions
- printer driver color settings
- monitor settings
- how your software application displays color
- paper type

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors

### (Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce)

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Yellow, Magenta and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues. These cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

# **Factors that Affect Color Printing**

## **Viewing Conditions**

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

## **Printer Driver Color Settings**

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Settings

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

### NOTE

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many monitors allow you to adjust the color temperature through their control panels.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

- **5000k\***

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

- **6500k\***

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

- **9300k\***

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# **Factors that Affect Color Printing**

## **How your Software Application Displays Color**

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

## **Paper Type**

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### General Information

#### NOTE

**These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications override, without warning, any color matching settings in the printer driver.**

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer.

There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

- most common [RGB] (see page 329)
- professional desktop publishing and graphics [CMYK] (see page 329)
- photographic images (see page 330)
- specific colors (i.e., a company logo) (see page 331)
- printing vivid colors (see page 332)



# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **RGB or CMYK?**

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method make distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print are in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically, CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Matching Photographs**

#### **RGB only**

Oki Color Matching (see page 339) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### **RGB or CMYK**

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 346). Print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### Matching Specific Colors (Example: Company logo)

#### RGB only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 339), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 341).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 336).

#### RGB or CMYK

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC profiles provided (see “Windows ICM Color Matching” on page 346). Print, using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric Setting (see page 341).

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Printing Vivid Colors**

#### **RGB only**

Use Oki Color Matching (see page 339), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 341) with the Saturation option.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### PCL Driver

The Color Matching Options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

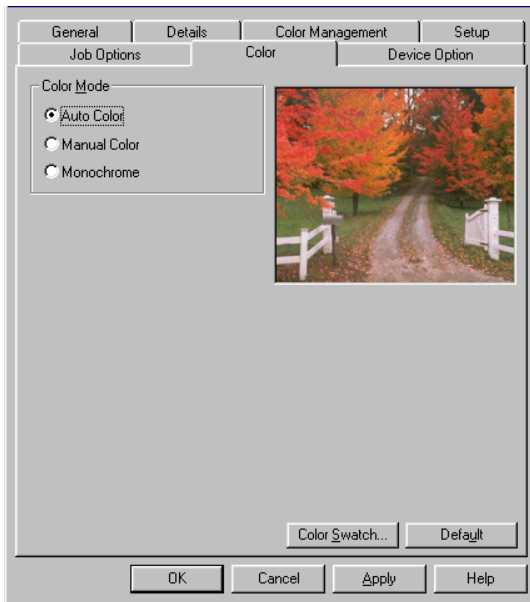
#### NOTE

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

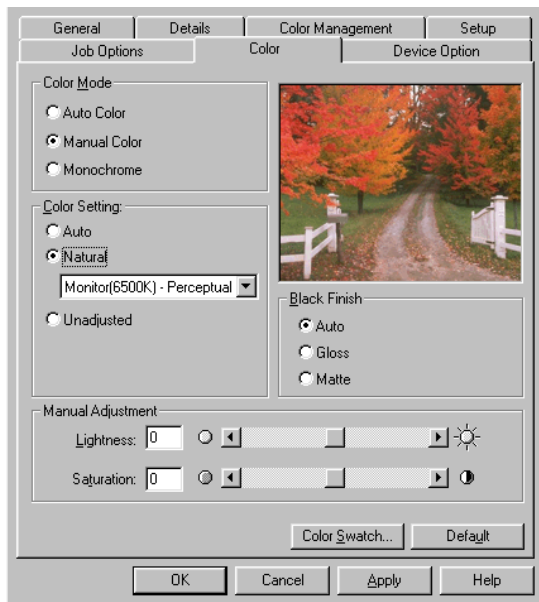
If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

#### Manually set the options in the PCL driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the appropriate printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties..**
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, click **Manual Color**.
5. Under **Color Setting**, click **Natural**.



6. Select the method you wish to use:

***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

7. Set any other required parameters. Use the on-line Help for guidance.
8. When you are done, click **OK**. Close the Properties dialog box.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

### An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
5. Select the shade of red that best suits your needs.  
Note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
6. Use your program's color picker to enter the same RGB values (from step 5). Change the logo to that color.

### NOTE

The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.



# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### PostScript Driver

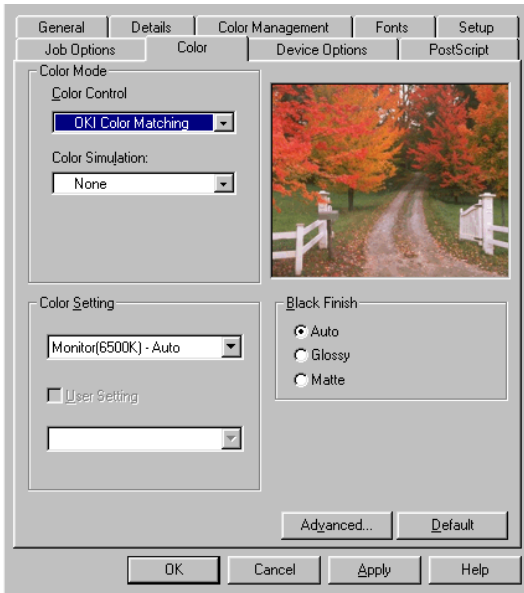
The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

Color Matching Option	RGB data	CMYK data
Oki Color Matching	Yes	No
PostScript Color Matching	Yes	Yes
Windows ICM Matching <sup>a</sup>	Yes	No
Using ICC Profiles	Yes	No

a. Not Windows NT 4.0

### Setting Options Manually

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties..**
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, use the Color Control drop-down list to select one of the following **Color Control Methods**:
  - a. OKI Color Matching

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB data only*. See "OKI Color Matching" on page 339.
  - b. PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. See "PostScript Color Matching" on page 341.
  - c. Using ICC Profiles

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "Using ICC Profiles" on page 344.
  - d. Windows ICM

This is the color management system built into Windows.  
See "Windows ICM Color Matching" on page 346.
  - e. No Color Matching

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching. No color correction occurs when selected. This option is beneficial when other matching regimens are used, specifically if you select a Color Simulation option.
  - f. Print in Grayscale

This option prints all documents as monochrome. No color prints. The printer interprets all colors as a variation of grays.

# Color Matching

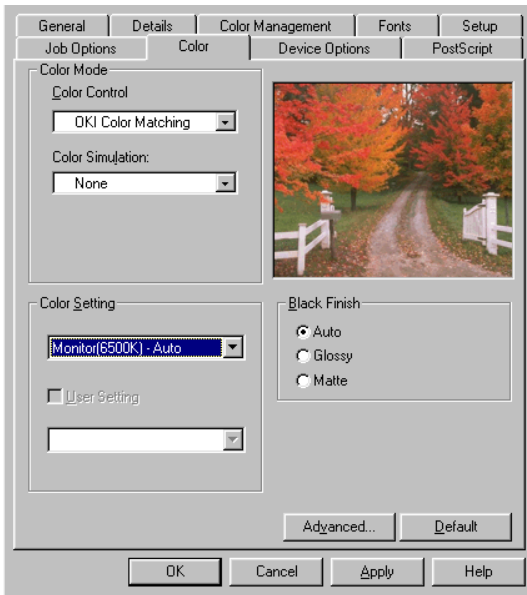
## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### OKI Color Matching

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system. It affects *RGB data only*. This is the default setting. It provides the fastest, best color matching for your printer.

Under **Color Setting**, use the drop-down list to select the type to be used:



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### OKI Color Matching

##### Color Settings

###### ***Monitor (6500k) Auto***

Optimized for printing general documents when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

###### ***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. This is best for printing photographic images.

###### ***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

###### ***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

###### ***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

###### ***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

# Color Matching

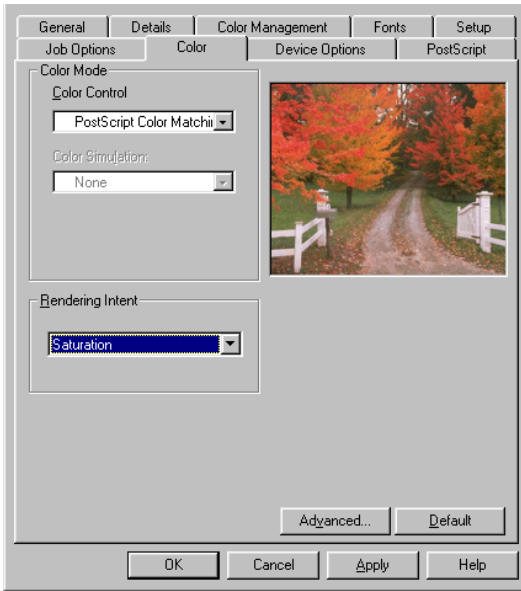
## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer. It affects both RGB and CMYK data.

From the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list, select the rendering type.



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### PostScript Color Matching

##### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The printer driver provides the rendering intents listed below:

- *Auto*  
Best choice for printing general documents.
- *Perceptual*  
Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.
- *Saturation*  
Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.
- *Relative Colorimetric*  
Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white. Unlike Absolute Colorimetric, Relative Colorimetric attempts to take the paper white into account.
- *Absolute Colorimetric*  
Best for printing solid colors and tints (such as company logos). Matches colors common to both devices exactly. Clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white,

so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### Using ICC Profiles

- Affects **RGB data only**.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

### NOTE

**This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space.**



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

### Using ICC Profiles

#### Setting Up

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties..**
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Under **Color mode**, in the **Color Control Method** drop-down list, select **Using ICC Profile**.
5. Click the **New** button.
6. Under **Select ICC profile**, use the drop-down lists to select the **Input profile** and **Output profile**.
7. Select the desired **Rendering Intent** (see “Rendering Intents” on page 342). Type in a name for the profile. Click **OK**.  
The new name appears in the **Setting Name** drop-down list under **ICC Profile Setting**.
8. Repeat steps 5-7 for each ICC profile you wish to define.
9. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.

# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Driver

#### Windows ICM Color Matching

##### PCL or PostScript

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects **RGB data only**.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer. These profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties**.
3. Click the **Color Management** tab.
4. Under “**Color Profiles currently associated with this printer**”, you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click “**Add...**” and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver.

### NOTE

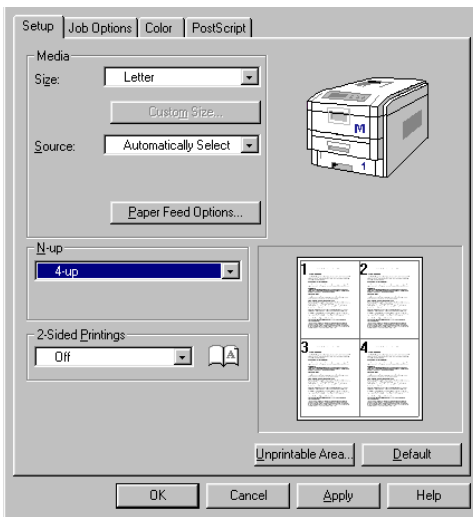
**The Color Match “Using ICC Profiles” feature provides an alternative to Windows ICM. It is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.**

# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

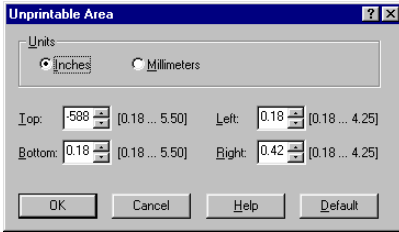
## (N-Up Printing)

### PostScript

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. On the **Setup** tab, under **N-up**, select the required number of pages per sheet.
5. Click **OK**. Click **Print**.



6. Click the **Unprintable Area** button. Set the margin parameters. Click **OK**.



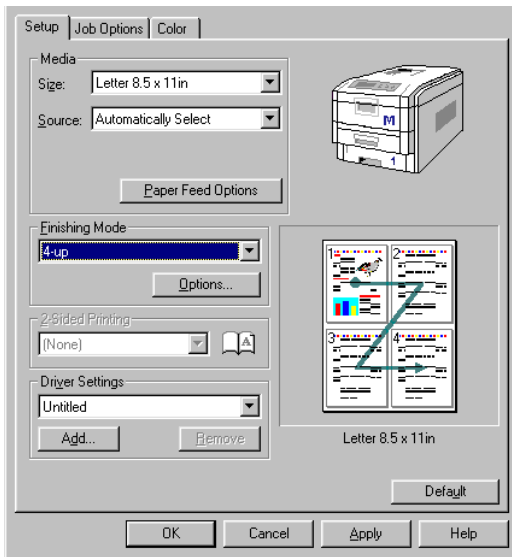
7. Click **OK**. Print the document.

# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

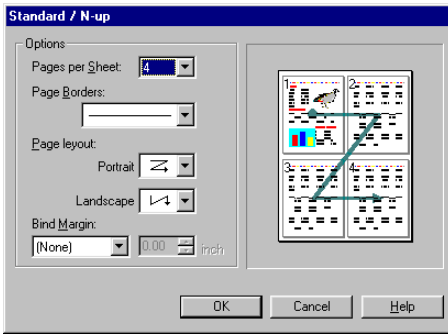
## (N-Up Printing)

### PCL

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



5. Click the **Options** button. Select the **Page Borders**, **Page Layout** and **Bind Margin**. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**. Print the document.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PostScript

### NOTE

Three custom paper sizes can be defined in the PostScript driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

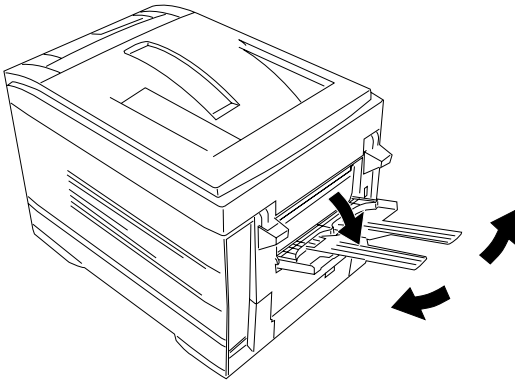
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

### Important!

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

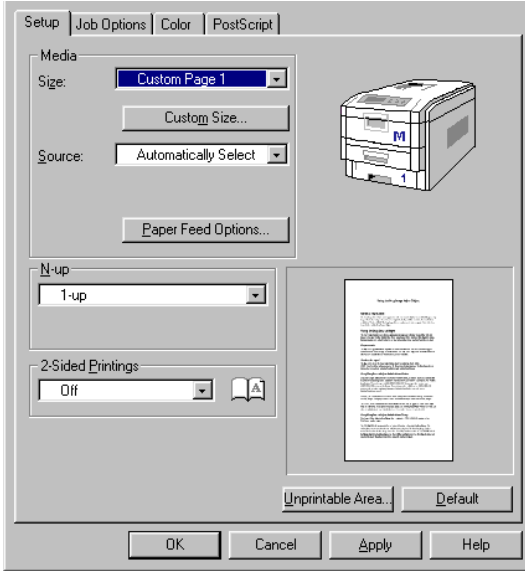
For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.

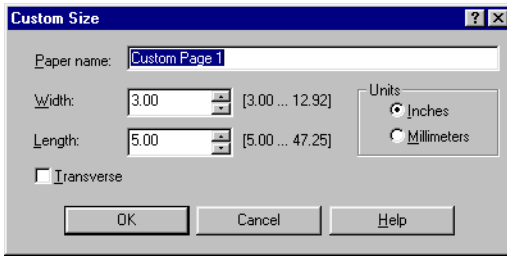




4. Click the **Setup** tab. Under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select **Custom Page 1**, **Custom Page 2**, or **Custom Page 3**.



5. Click the **Custom Size** button.



6. In the **Paper name** box, type in the name you wish to use for the custom paper size.
7. Enter the **Width** and **Length** for the custom paper.  
Custom page sizes range:
  - Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
  - Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]
8. Select **Transverse** if you wish to rotate the image by 90 degrees.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Check that the name of the custom paper size appears in the **Size** box.
11. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
12. Print the document

# Custom Page Sizes

## PCL

### NOTE

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

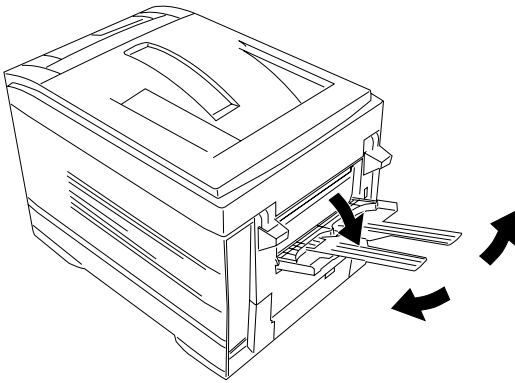
- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

## Important!

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Setup** tab. Under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select **User Defined Size**.

*The Set Free Size dialog box appears.*

### **NOTE**

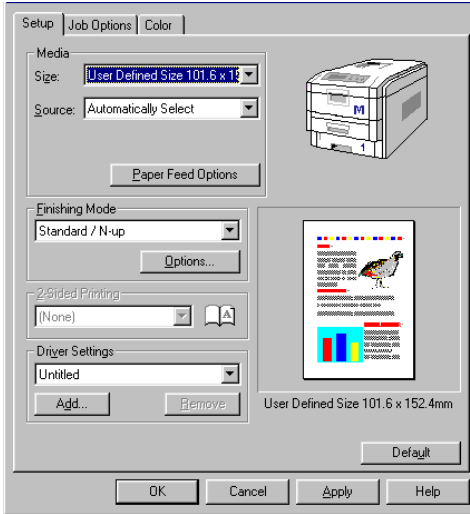
**You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict.**

**If you do, click OK.**

**The driver automatically corrects for the conflict.**

5. Select the unit.
6. Enter the **Width** and **Length** measurements.
7. Click **OK**.

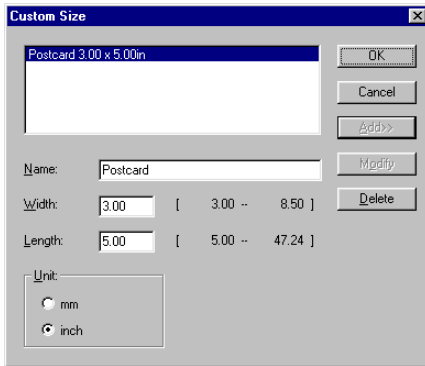
**User Defined Size** should appear in the **Size** box on the **Setup** tab.



## NOTE

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options.
- Click Custom Size.
- Enter the relevant information for Width and Height.
- Give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.



- Click OK twice.

*The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.*

8. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
9. Print the document.

# Print Resolution

## PCL or PostScript

### Changing for a Print Job

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
- Highlight the appropriate printer name.
- Select **Properties**.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below.

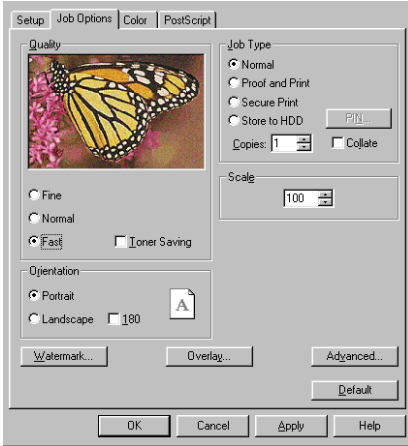
More tabs appear in the **Properties** screen for setting defaults.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Job Options** tab.

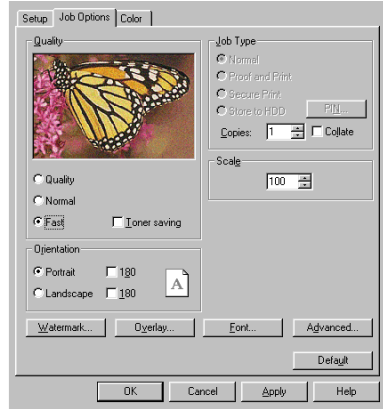


5. Select the required printing resolution under **Quality**.
6. Select **Toner Saving** (if appropriate).
7. Click **OK**. Print the document.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript or PCL

### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

Before you can perform duplex printing, unit must be

- installed in the printer  
and
- enabled in the driver.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.
- Duplexing cannot be used if Paper Weight is set to Ultra Heavy.  
See Paper (Media), “Weight and Type” on page 70.
- Duplexing cannot be used if White Page Skip is set to ON.  
See “White page skip” on page 101 (PCR Emulation), page 105 (PPR Emulation), and page 107 (FX Emulation).

## **NOTE**

**To change the settings to apply to all jobs:**

- **Click Start → Settings → Printers.**
- **Highlight the appropriate printer name.**
- **Select Properties.**
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

# Duplex Printing

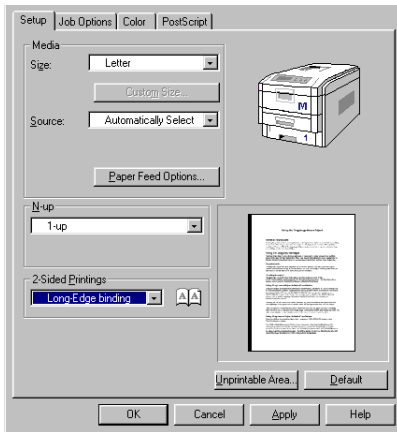
## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript or PCL

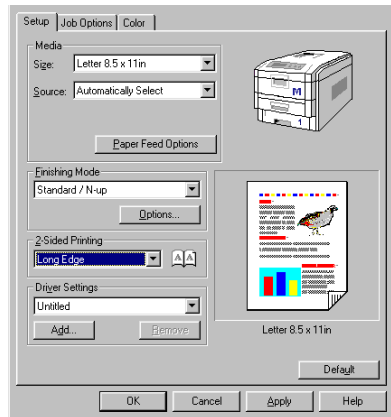
#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. On the **Setup** tab, under **2-Sided printing**, select **Long Edge Binding** or **Short Edge Binding**.
5. Click **OK**. Print the document.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



# Printing Booklets

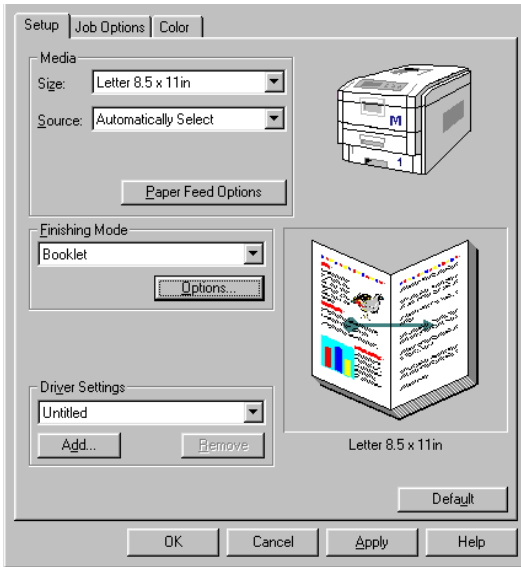
## PCL and Windows Me

### NOTES

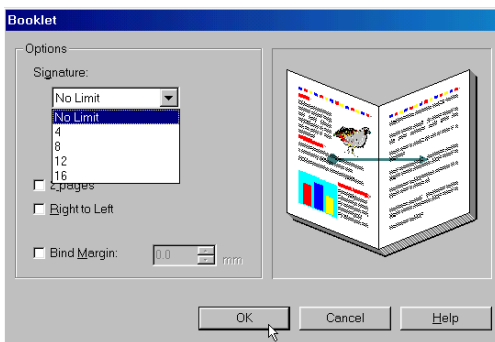
- Available only in the Windows Me Operating System (not available for Windows 98 or 95).
- Available in the PCL printer driver only.
- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

4. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, in the drop-down list, select **Booklet**.



5. Click the **Options** button.
6. Set the **Signature**, **2pages**, **Right to Left**, and **Bind Margin**, as required. See the online Help for information.
7. Click **OK**.

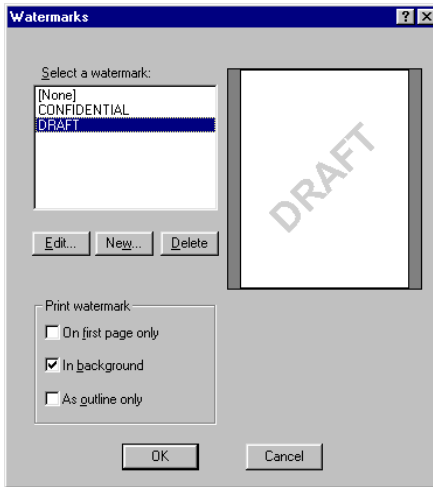


8. Click **OK**. Print the document.

# Printing Watermarks

## PostScript

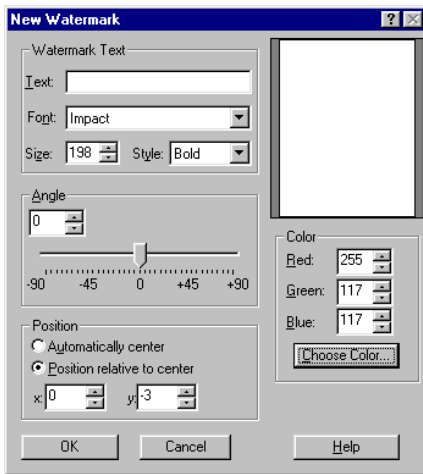
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. In the **Select a watermark** list, click the name of the watermark you wish to use.



## NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

- Click the **New** or **Edit** button.
- Enter the text for the watermark. Select the font, size, angle, etc., to be used.



- Click **OK**.

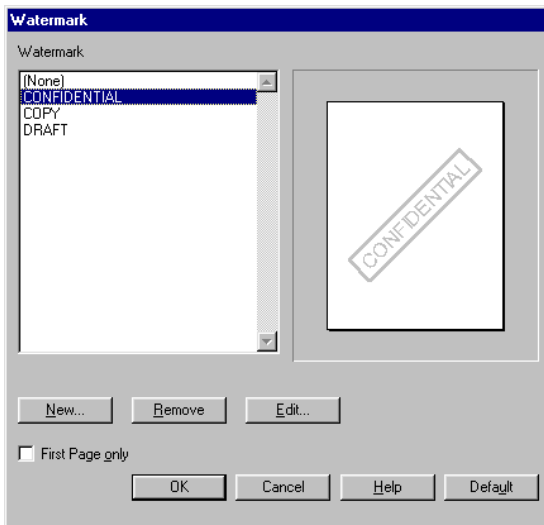
5. Under **Print watermark**, make your selections for how the watermark prints.
6. Click **OK** twice.
7. Print the document.



# Printing Watermarks

## PCL

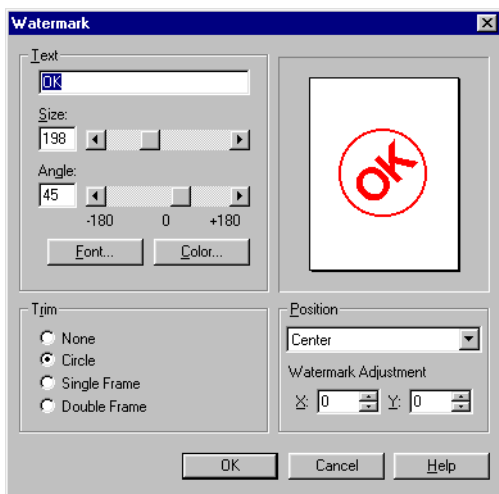
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Job Options** tab. Click **Watermark**.  
The Watermark dialog box appears.
5. Select a name from the **Watermark** list.



## NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

- Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark. Select the attributes (font, size, angle) to be used.
- Click OK.  
*The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.*

6. If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
7. Click **OK** twice.
8. Print the document.

# Collating

## PCL or PostScript

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. A printer with a hard disk drive performs better.

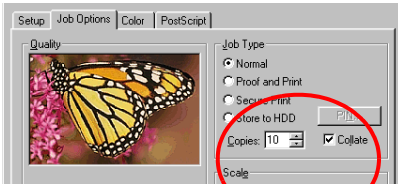
### Important

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

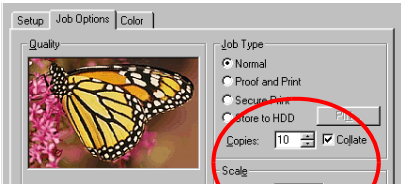
To use the printer driver to select collating:

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Job Options** tab. Under **Job Type**, enter the number of copies required. *Only if the application has no collate option—* select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



5. Click **OK**.
6. Print the document.

# Font Substitution

## PostScript Only

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printer**.
2. Right click the appropriate PS driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Fonts** tab.
5. Select the type of font substitution from the various options given. Use the on-line Help screen for information.



6. Click **OK** to engage the new settings and close the Properties dialog box.

# Proof and Print

## PCL or PostScript

### Using

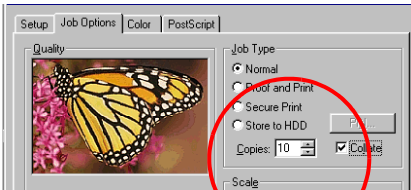
Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

### NOTES

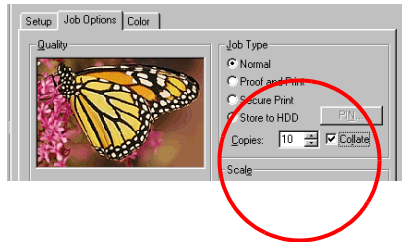
- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Job Options** tab.
5. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



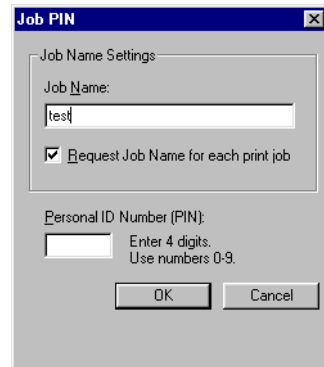
- a. Under **Job Type**, select **Proof and Print**.
- b. Under **Job Name Setting**, enter a job name of up to 16 characters. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

PostScript Driver



The screenshot shows the 'Job Name Setting' dialog box for the PostScript driver. It has a title bar 'Job Name Setting' and a close button. Inside, there is a 'Job Name:' label above a text input field. Below the input field is a checkbox labeled 'Request Job Name for each print job' which is currently unchecked. Underneath is a 'Setting of PIN' section with a small text input field and the instruction 'Enter 4 digits.'. At the bottom are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

PCL Driver



The screenshot shows the 'Job PIN' dialog box for the PCL driver. It has a title bar 'Job PIN' and a close button. Inside, there is a 'Job Name Settings:' label above a 'Job Name:' label and a text input field containing the word 'test'. Below the input field is a checkbox labeled 'Request Job Name for each print job' which is checked. Underneath is a 'Personal ID Number (PIN):' section with a small text input field and the instruction 'Enter 4 digits. Use numbers 0-9.'. At the bottom are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

- c. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
  7. Print the document. The document is stored on the hard disk drive. One copy is printed for checking.
  8. After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document. Use the procedures given below.

## Proof and Print

### Printing Copies

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

## Proof and Print

### Deleting Copies

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**



# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### PCL or PostScript

#### Using Secure Printing

Secure printing (printing with passwords) allows you to print confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users in a network environment.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.

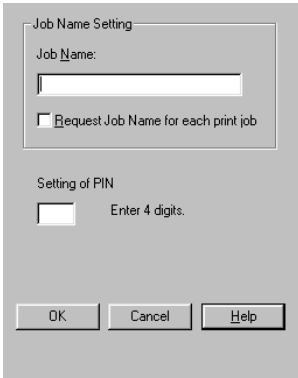
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. On the **Job Options** tab, enter the number of copies.  
If required, check the **Collate** box.
5. Under **Job Type**, select **Secure Print**.

#### NOTE

If you've already used **Secure Print** to place a document on the hard disk drive, but have not yet printed it out, click the **PIN** button and enter a new job name.

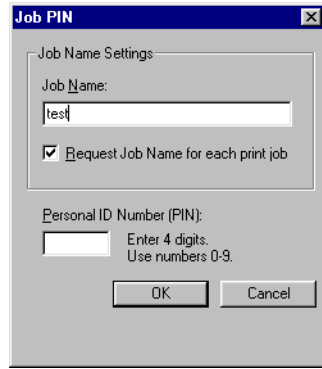
- Under **Job Name**, enter a job name of up to 16 characters.  
If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

### PostScript Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job Name Setting". It has a "Job Name:" label above a text input field. Below the field is a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". Underneath is a "Setting of PIN" section with a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits.". At the bottom are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

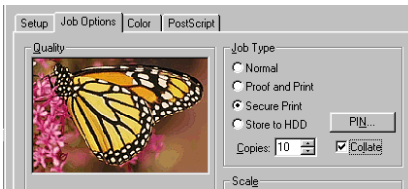
### PCL Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job PIN". It has a "Job Name Settings" section with a "Job Name:" label above a text input field containing the word "test". Below the field is a checked checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job". Underneath is a "Personal ID Number (PIN):" section with a text input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits. Use numbers 0-9.". At the bottom are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

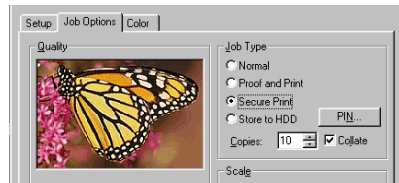
- Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777.
- Click **OK**.
- Enter the number of copies.
- If required, select **Collate**.

### PostScript Driver



The screenshot shows the "Job Options" tab of the printer's Properties dialog box. It features a "Quality" preview of a monarch butterfly. The "Job Type" section has radio buttons for "Normal", "Proof and Print", "Secure Print", and "Store to HDD". The "Secure Print" option is selected. Below it is a "Copies:" spinner set to 10 and a checked "Collate" checkbox. A "PIN..." button is visible next to the "Store to HDD" option.

### PCL Driver



The screenshot shows the "Job Options" tab of the printer's Properties dialog box. It features a "Quality" preview of a monarch butterfly. The "Job Type" section has radio buttons for "Normal", "Proof and Print", "Secure Print", and "Store to HDD". The "Secure Print" option is selected. Below it is a "Copies:" spinner set to 10 and a checked "Collate" checkbox. A "PIN..." button is visible next to the "Store to HDD" option.

- Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- Print the document. The document is stored on the printer's hard disk.
- Go to the printer. Use the front panel to print the document. See below.

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Printing at the Printer

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**.  
Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button.

*The document prints and is deleted from the hard disk drive.*

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

## Secure Printing

### (Printing Confidential Documents)

#### Deleting the confidential document before printing it

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.

# Hard Disk Drive

## PCL or PostScript

### Storing a Document

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead, stationery, etc.

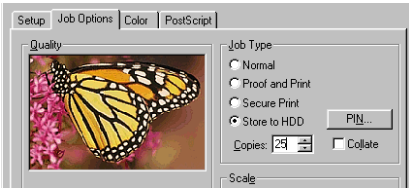
#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned **OFF** for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.

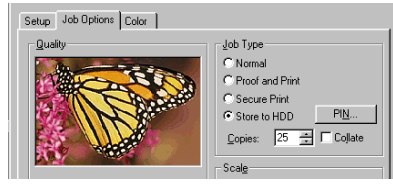
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

4. Click the **Job Options** tab. Under **Job Type**, select **Store to HDD**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



### NOTE

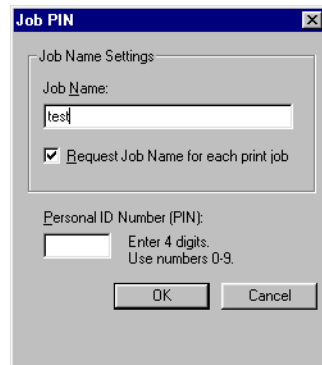
If you've already stored a document on the printer's hard disk drive, and want to store another one, click the **PIN** button and enter a new **Job Name**.

5. Under **Job Name Setting**, enter a job name of up to 16 characters.  
If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



6. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Select the number of copies. Click **Collate**, if applicable.
9. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk. It can then be printed on demand, or deleted. Use the procedures given below.

## Hard Disk Drive

### Printing a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the document.

### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.



## Hard Disk Drive

### Deleting a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Overlays

## What are Overlays?

An overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (optional), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

## Example of Using Overlays

Suppose that you used the Storage Device Manager to create and store three files in the printer:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

## Creating Overlays

1. Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead).
2. Use the printer driver to generate a PRN file (print file).
3. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format.
4. Download the storable file to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

### NOTE

- **The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.**
- **If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.**
- **If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.**
- **An overlay may consist of more than one component file.**

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PCL

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

To create a print (PRN) file:

1. Open your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the "**Print To File**" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model.
4. Click **Properties**. This should open the printer driver settings.

### Important

You must use the Oki PCL driver to do this.

5. Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
6. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
7. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
8. Click **Print**.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PostScript

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

1. Open your application program. Open the file to be stored as an overlay. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
2. Make sure that the **Print To File** option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
3. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model. Then click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.
4. Select the **Job Options** tab. Click the **Overlays...** button.
5. Choose **Create Form** from the menu.
6. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
7. Click **OK** to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

### Important

You must use the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

## Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how to use the Storage Device Manager to download this file to the printer.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

1. Launch Storage Device Manager. Allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
2. Click **Project**, then **New Project**.
3. From the **Project** menu, select **Add File to Project**.
4. Select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.
  - PCL**: This automatically generates a BIN file.
  - PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file.

### Important!

The BIN file is automatically assigned an ID number.

To change the ID number

- double-click the number
- enter a new one in the ID field.

5. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive.*

### NOTE

**The assigned file name is very important! You must use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. You should change the ID number or name from the default value. *Note the new name for later use.***

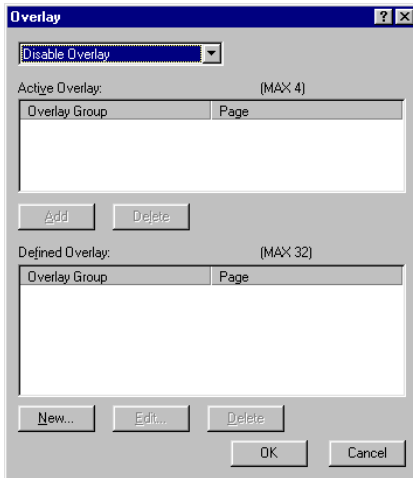
6. Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.

7. Select the **Project** menu. Choose **Send Project Files to Printer**.  
This downloads the file to the printer.  
If the file was downloaded successfully, "Command Issued" displays.
8. Close the Storage Device Manager.

## Defining Overlays

### PostScript

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties..**
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay** button.





5. Click the **New** button.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Define Overlays". It has a blue title bar with a close button. The main area contains several input fields and buttons. The "Overlay Name" field is highlighted with a blue selection bar and contains the text "New Overlay". Below it is a "Print on Pages" dropdown menu currently showing "All Pages". Underneath that is a "Custom Pages" text box. A small instruction text reads: "Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12". Below this is a "Form setting" section which includes a "Form Name" dropdown menu, and "Add" and "Rename" buttons. At the bottom of the dialog box are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons. A "Delete" button is also visible at the bottom right of the "Defined Forms" section.

6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay. Select the pages where you want the overlay to print.

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

- Under **Form setting**, in the drop-down list, enter or select a form name. Click **Add**.

**Define Overlays**

Overlay Name: Logo

Print on Pages: First Page

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting

Form Name: Stationery

Add Rename

Defined Forms:

Stationery

Delete

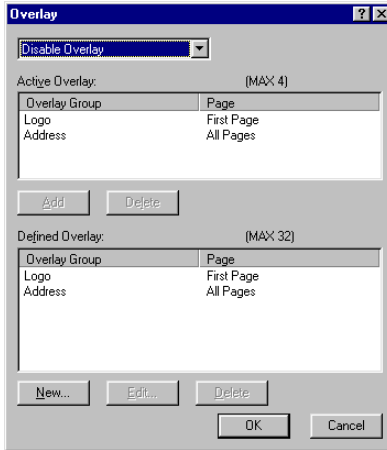
OK Cancel

## NOTE

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- Click **OK**.
- To continue to add files to the overlay (if required), repeat steps 5 through 8.

- Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name(s).  
Click **Add** to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay.  
To select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name.

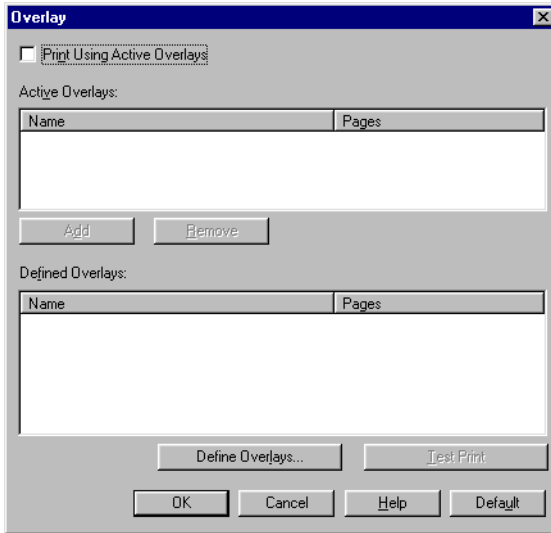


- At the top of the dialog box, use the drop-down list to select **Use Overlay**. Click **OK**.
- Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.

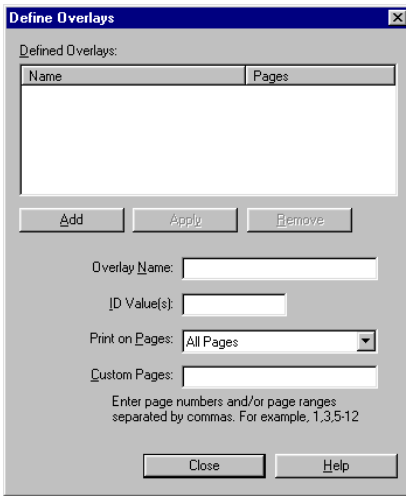
## Defining Overlays

### PCL

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File**. Click **Properties..**
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay...** button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



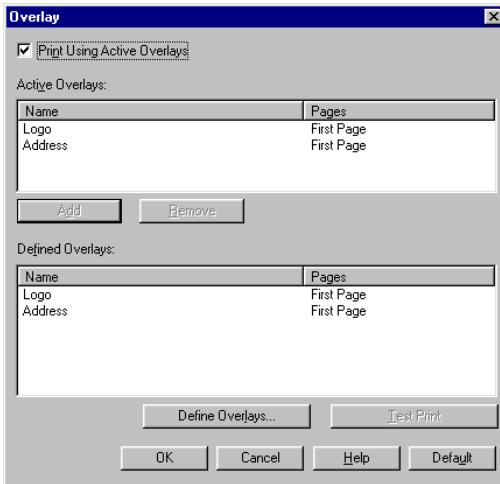
6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

7. In **ID Values**, enter the ID of the file. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
8. Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from **Print on Pages** or use **Custom Pages** to select specific page numbers in the document. Click **Add**.
9. Click **Close**.
10. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name. Click the **Add** button to add the overlay to the list in **Active Overlays**.

**11. Select Print Using Active Overlays.**



**12. Click **OK**.**

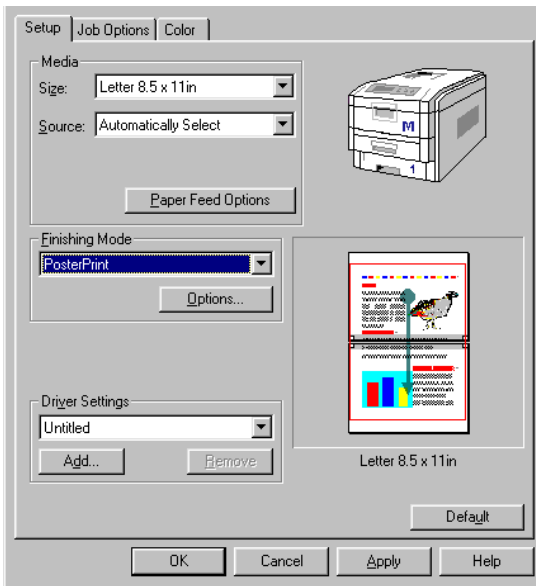
**13. Click **OK** to Close the Properties dialog box.**

# Printing Posters

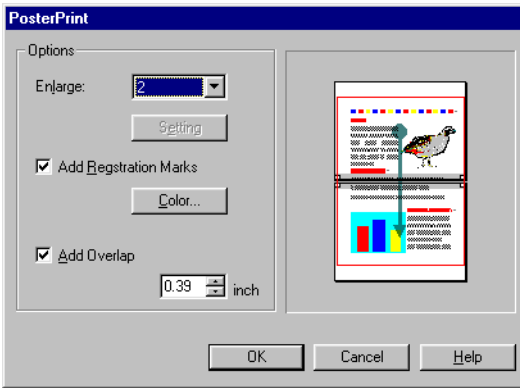
## PCL Only

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces. Each piece prints, enlarged, on a separate sheet. Then, the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver.
3. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
4. Click the **Setup** tab. Under **Finishing Mode**, select **Poster Print**.



5. Click **Options...** and enter the configuration details.



6. Click **OK** twice.
7. Click **OK**. Print the document.



# Windows NT

## Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

You can also go to **<http://my.okidata.com>** to view and/or download a copy of the *Software Installation Guide* or for the latest information on drivers for your printer.

## Which Printer Driver to Use?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe® PostScript® (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including “.eps” files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This is more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or print PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation, performance is faster and graphics are printed at their best quality.

### NOTE

**The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. If you plan to print parts of this manual, choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise, the line art graphics print at low resolution. The print quality may not be satisfactory.**

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers. Select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can use the alternative driver for printing whenever you need to.

# Memory: Enabling

## PostScript Only

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

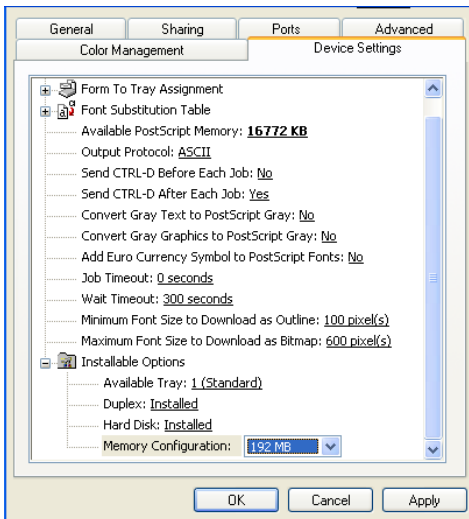
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, click **Memory Configuration**.
5. Set the memory in the **Change 'Memory Configuration' Setting** list to match what is now installed in the printer, as shown in the Menu Map.

To print the Menu Map, see “Printer Settings (Menu Settings)” on page 82.

6. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



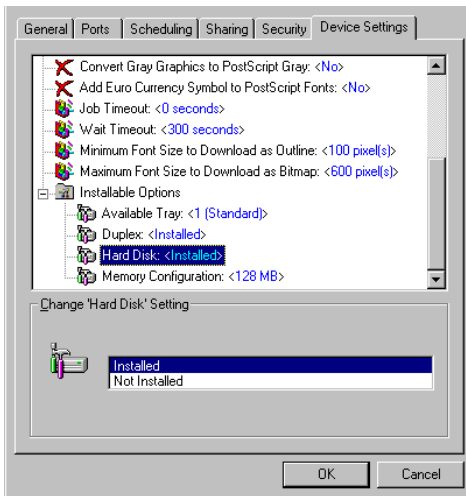
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, make sure the **Hard Disk** is **Installed**.
5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



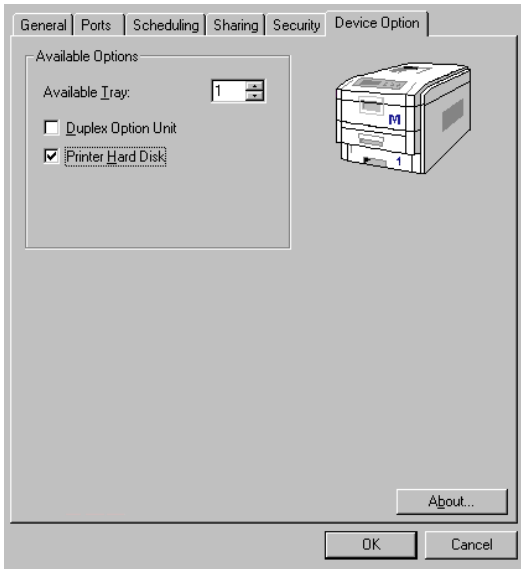
# Hard Disk Drive: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, click **Printer Hard Disk**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



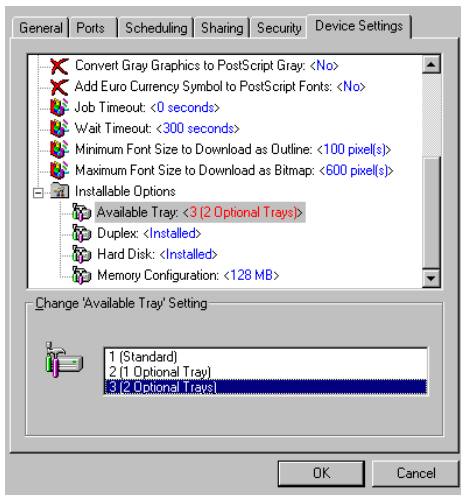
# Paper Trays: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, click **Available Trays**
5. Select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) from the **Change 'Available Tray' Setting** list.
6. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



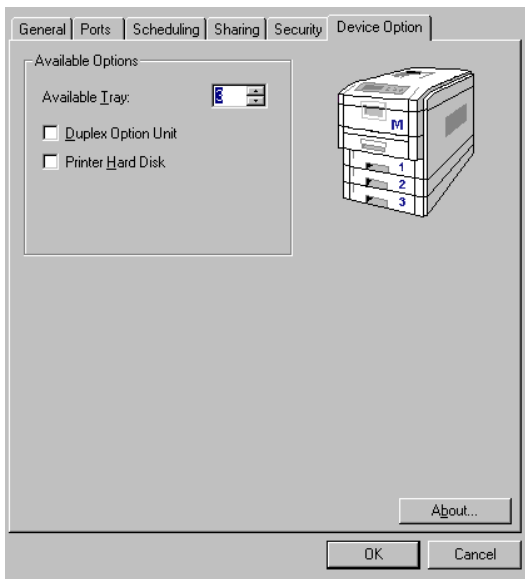
# Paper Trays: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray).
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



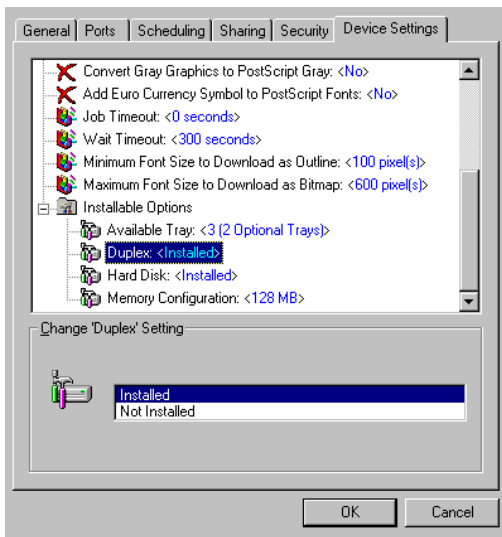
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PostScript

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
4. Under **Installable Options**, make sure the **Duplex** is **Installed**.
5. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.





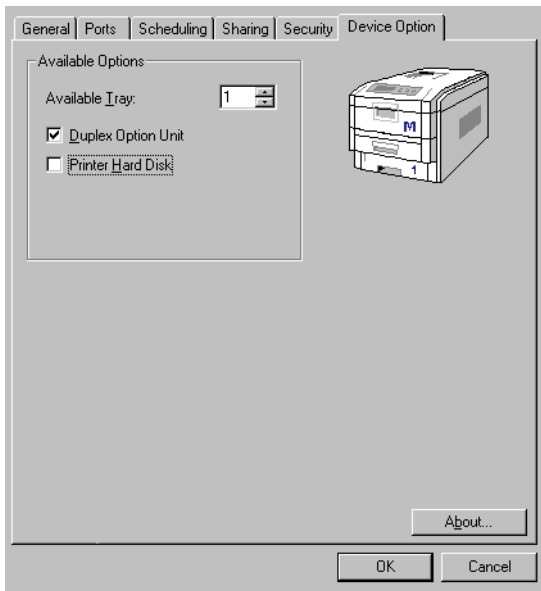
# Duplex Unit: Enabling

## PCL

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **File** then **Properties**.
3. Click the **Device Option** tab, click **Duplex Option Unit**.
4. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PostScript

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

**If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.**

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

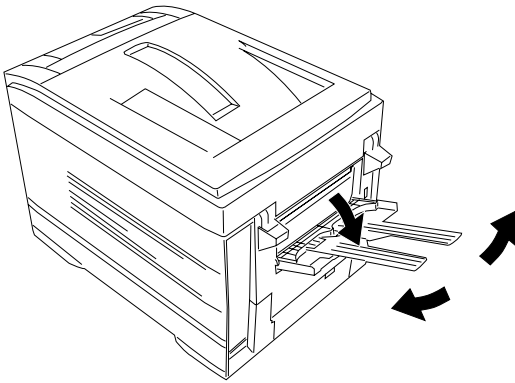
1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.

## Important!

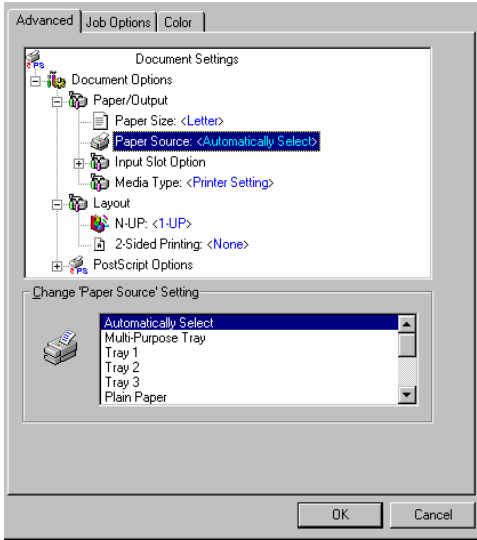
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

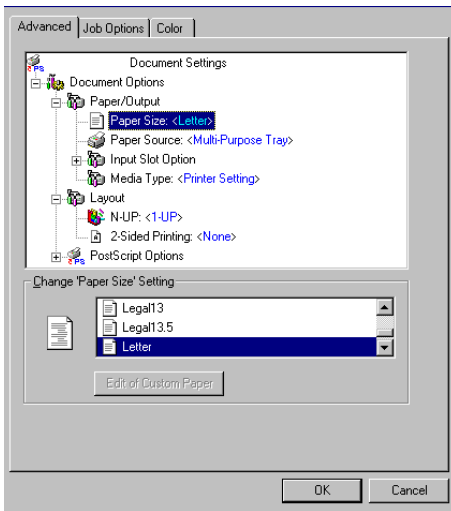
- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



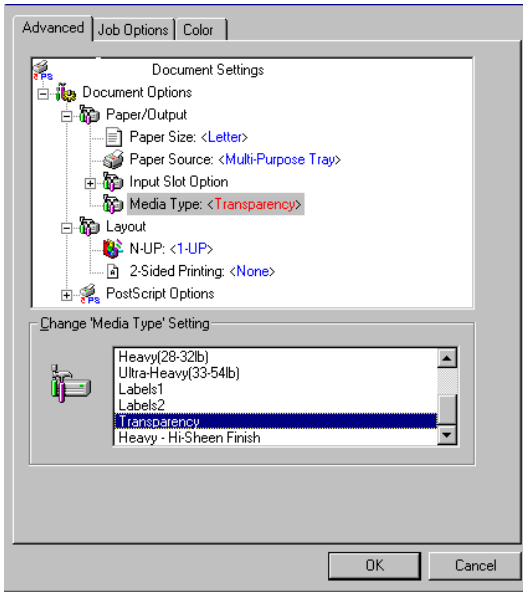
3. On the **Advanced** tab, under **Document Options** → **Paper/Output**, click **Paper Source**.
4. Select the paper feed in the **Change 'Paper Source' Setting** list.



5. Click **Paper Size**.
6. Select the size in the **Change 'Paper Size' Setting** list.



7. Click **Media Type**.
8. Select the media from the **Change 'Media Type' Setting** list.
9. Click **OK**. Close the Printers dialog box.



# Paper Feed, Size and Media

## Changing Defaults

### PCL

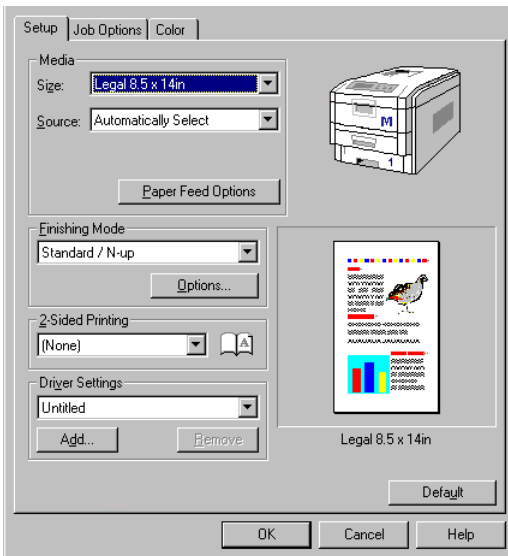
The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### NOTE

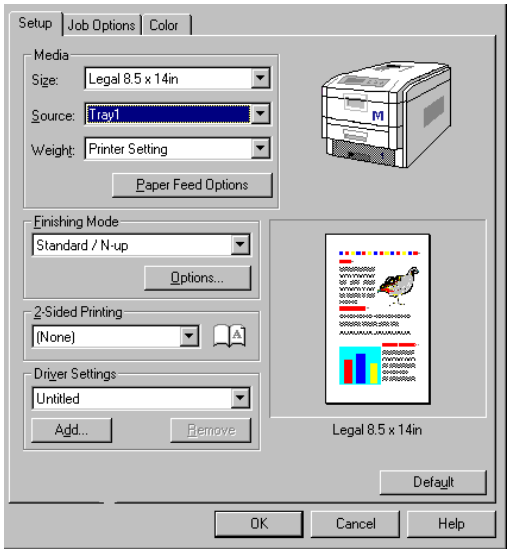
If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer does not print. An error message displays.

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Media**, select the required paper size in the **Size** drop-down list.



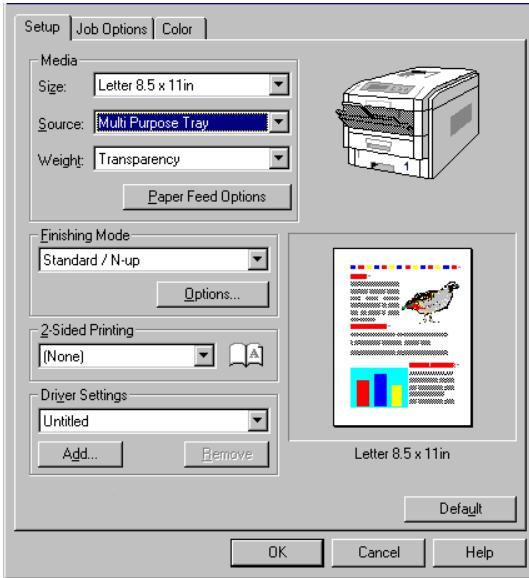
4. Select the required paper feed under **Source**.



## NOTE

If a paper tray is selected, the Weight field becomes visible.

5. Select the required paper type under **Weight**.





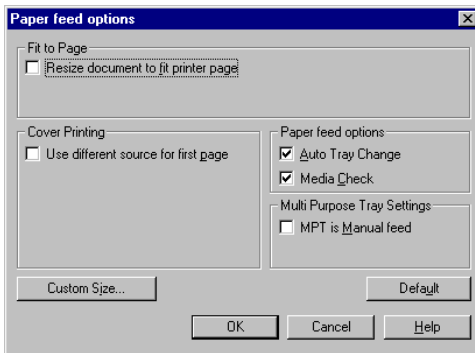
## NOTE

If **Printer Setting** is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

A **Warning** may appear (indicating a setting conflict),  
If it does, click **OK**.

The driver automatically corrects the problem.

6. Click the **Paper Feed Options** button.
7. Make any other selections.
8. Click **OK**.



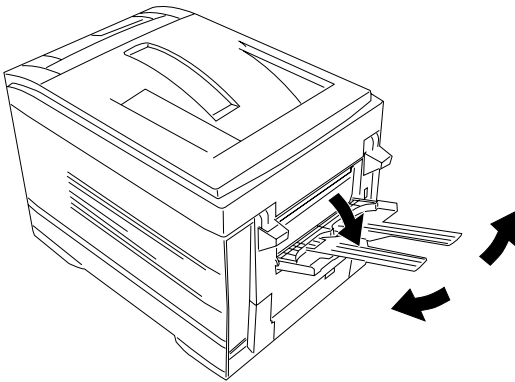
9. Click **OK** twice. Close the Printers dialog box.

### **Important!**

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



# Network Printer Status Utility

- Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. The printer driver **Properties** dialog box changes:

- a new **Status** tab is added.
- an **Option** button is added to the **Device Option** tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

## Important!

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver automatically pings the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box.

This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens.

To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows NT 4.0

## Operation

### NOTE

**Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.**

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features.

Printer's features covered in this section include:

- N-up printing (see page 440)
- Custom page sizes (see page 443)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 454)
- Duplex printing (see page 456)
- Printing Booklets (see page 460)
- Watermarks (see page 462)
- Collating (see page 464)
- Proof and Print (see page 465)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 469)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 473)
- Using overlays (see page 478)
- Printing posters (see page 493)

## Factors that Affect Color Printing

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration.*

Some of the most important factors are

- the differences between the range of colors a monitor can reproduce versus the range of colors that a printer can reproduce
- viewing conditions
- printer driver color settings
- monitor settings
- how your software application displays color
- paper type

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Colors vs. Printer Colors

### (Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce)

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Yellow, Magenta and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues. These cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

## Viewing Conditions

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

## Printer Driver Color Settings

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# Factors that Affect Color Printing

## Monitor Settings

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

### NOTE

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many monitors allow you to adjust the color temperature through their control panels.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

- **5000k\***

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

- **6500k\***

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

- **9300k\***

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# **Factors that Affect Color Printing**

## **How your Software Application Displays Color**

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

## **Paper Type**

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.



# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### NOTE

**These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications override, without warning, any color matching settings in the printer driver.**

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color. However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer.

There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

- most common [RGB] (see page 426)
- professional desktop publishing and graphics [CMYK] (see page 426)
- photographic images (see page 427)
- specific colors (i.e., a company logo) (see page 428)
- printing vivid colors (see page 429)

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **RGB or CMYK?**

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method make distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print are in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically, CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Matching Photographs**

#### **RGB only**

Oki Color Matching (see page 436) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

# Color Matching

## Choosing a Method

### Matching Specific Colors

#### (Example: Company logo)

##### RGB only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 436), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 438).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 433).

##### RGB or CMYK

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric Setting (see page 438).

# **Color Matching**

## **Choosing a Method**

### **Printing Vivid Colors**

#### **RGB only**

Use Oki Color Matching (see page 436), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 438) with the Saturation option.

# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### PCL Driver

The Color Matching Options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

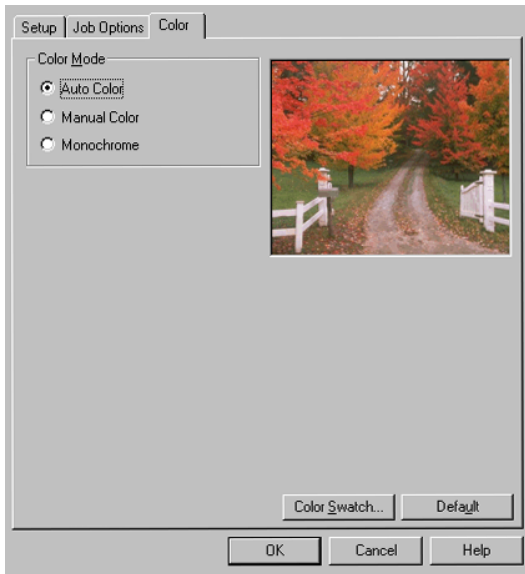
### NOTE

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

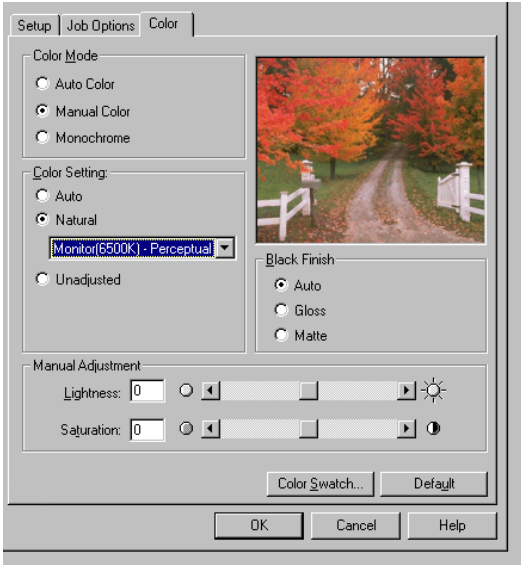
If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

### Manually set the options in the PCL driver:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the appropriate printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, click **Manual Color**.
5. Under **Color Setting**, click **Natural**.



6. Select the method you wish to use:

***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

7. Set any other required parameters. Use the on-line Help for guidance.
8. When you are done, click **OK**. Close the Default dialog box.



# Color Matching

## Color Matching Options

### Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

#### **An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:**

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.
4. Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
5. Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
6. Use your program's color picker to enter the same RGB values (from step 5). Change the logo to that color.

### **NOTE**

**The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.**

# Color Matching

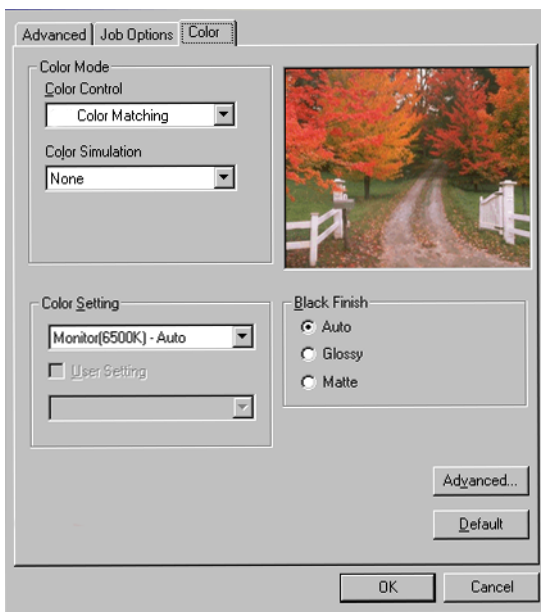
## Color Matching Options

### PostScript Driver

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

### Setting Options Manually

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. Click the **Color** tab.



4. Under **Color Mode**, use the drop-down list to select one of the following **Color Control Methods**:
  - a. **OKI Color Matching**

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB data only*. See "OKI Color Matching" on page 436.
  - b. **PostScript Color Matching**

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. See "PostScript Color Matching" on page 438.
  - c. **No Color Matching**

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching. No color correction occurs when selected. This option is beneficial when other matching regimens are used, specifically if you select a Color Simulation option.
  - d. **Print in Grayscale**

This option prints all documents as monochrome. No color prints. The printer interprets all colors as a variation of grays.

# Color Matching

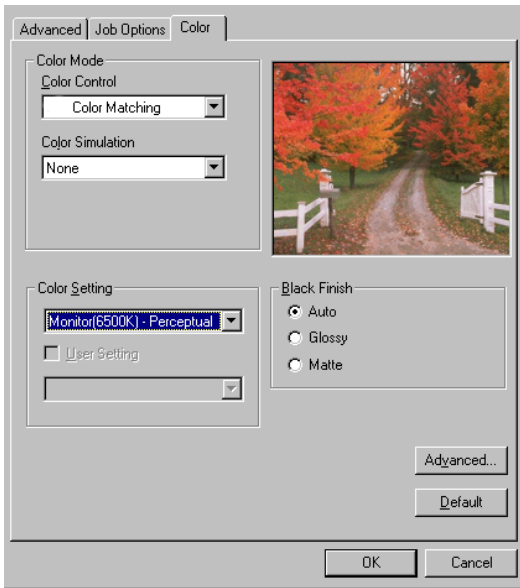
## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system. It affects *RGB data only*. This is the default setting. It provides the fastest, best color matching for your printer.

Under **Color Setting**, use the drop-down list to select the type to be used:



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### OKI Color Matching

#### PostScript

#### Color Settings

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Perceptual***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. This is best for printing photographic images.

##### ***Monitor (6500k) Vivid***

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***Monitor (9300k)***

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

##### ***Digital Camera***

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken. Vivid or Digital Camera settings produce brightest colors.

##### ***sRGB***

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

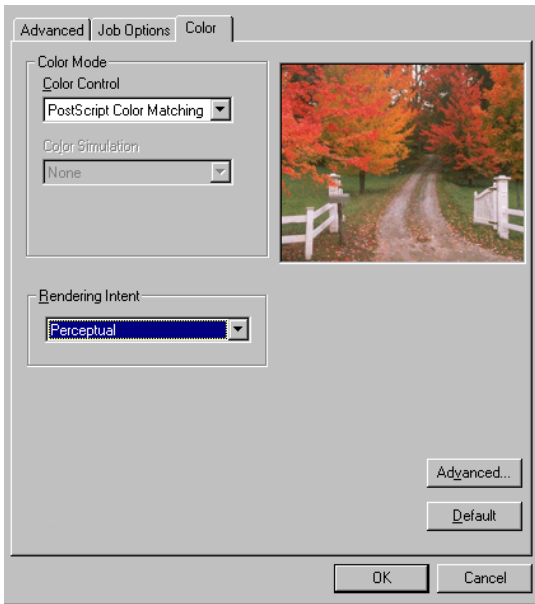
# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer. It affects both RGB and CMYK data.

From the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list, select the rendering type.



# Color Matching

## Color Control Method

### PostScript Color Matching

#### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The printer driver provides the rendering intents listed below:

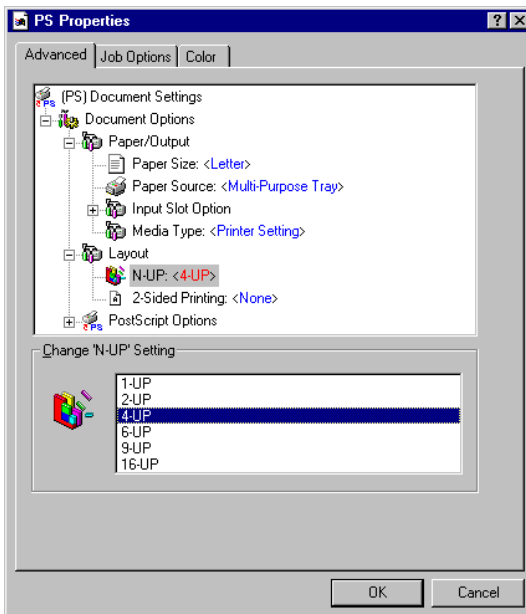
- *Auto*  
Best choice for printing general documents.
- *Perceptual*  
Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image. This option attempts to simulate RGB color.
- *Saturation*  
Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.
- *Relative Colorimetric*  
Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white. Unlike Absolute Colorimetric, Relative Colorimetric attempts to take the paper white into account.
- *Absolute Colorimetric*  
Best for printing solid colors and tints (such as Company logos). Matches colors common to both devices exactly. Clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

## (N-Up Printing)

### PostScript

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.  
Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Advanced** tab, under **Document Options** → **Layout**, click **N-UP**.
4. In the **Change 'N-UP' Setting** list, select the number of pages per sheet,
5. Click **OK**. Print the document.



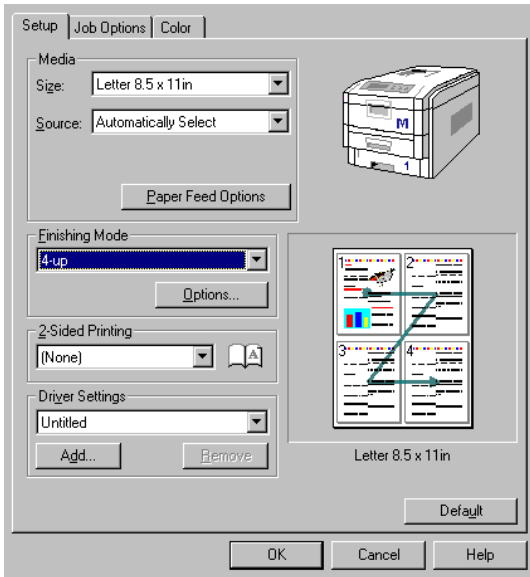


# Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

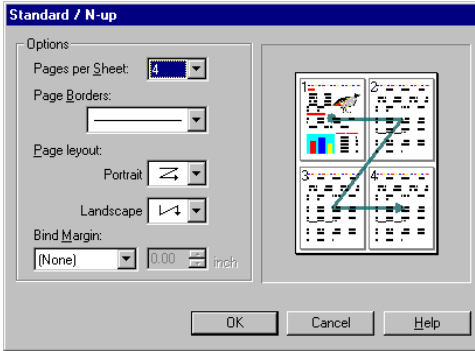
## (N-Up Printing)

### PCL

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



4. Click the **Options** button. Select the **Page Borders**, **Page Layout** and **Bind Margin**. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**. Print the document.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PostScript

### NOTE

One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

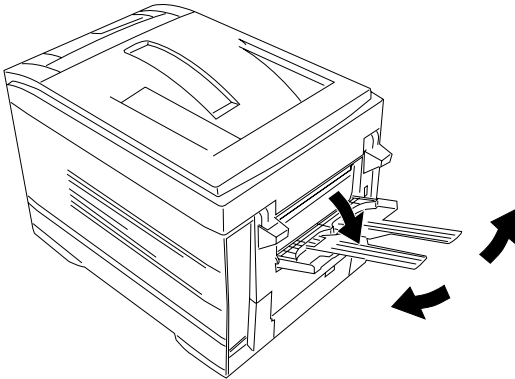
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.  
Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

### **Important!**

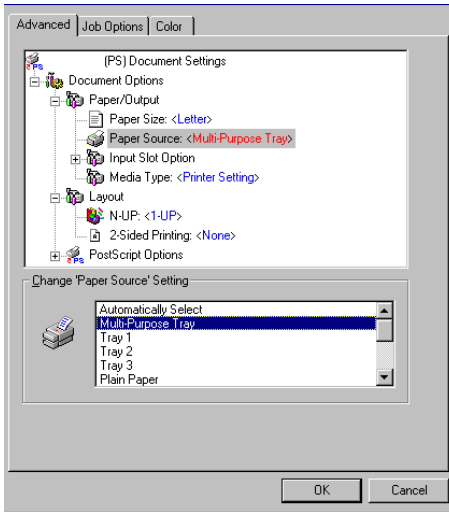
If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

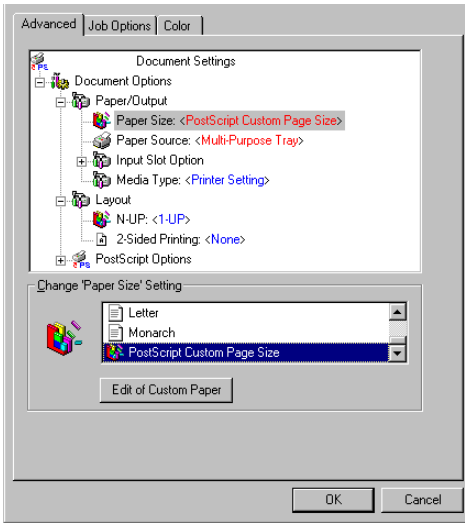
- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



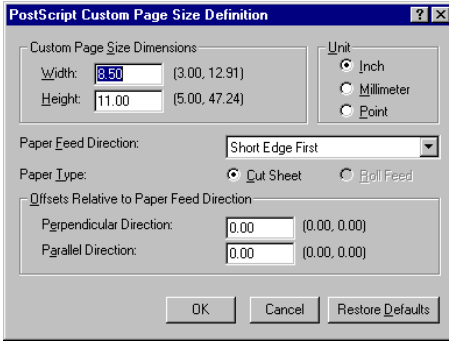
3. On the **Advanced** tab, under **Document Options** → **Paper/Output**:
  - a. Click **Paper Source**. In the **Change 'Paper Source' Setting** list, select **Multi-Purpose Tray**.



- b. Click **Paper Size**.
- c. In the **Change 'Paper Size' Setting** list, select **Postscript Custom Page Size**.



4. Click the **Edit of Custom Paper** button.



5. Enter the **Width** and **Height** for the custom paper.

Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

6. Select the **Paper Feed Direction**.

### **NOTE**

- **Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first**
- **Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first**
- **Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**
- **Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.**

7. Click **OK** twice.

8. Print the document.



# Custom Page Sizes

## PCL

### NOTE

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The paper (media) size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use.

Custom page sizes range:

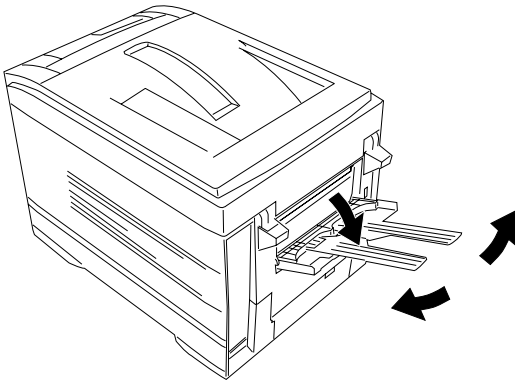
- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]

## Important!

If you are using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, use the face up (straight through) paper feed path.

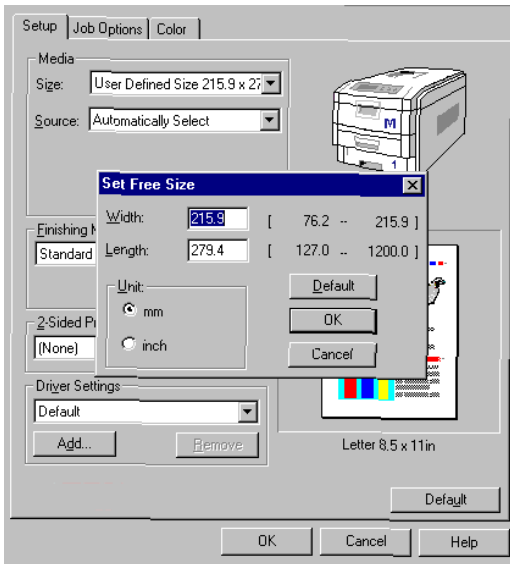
For face *up* printing (straight-through path), make sure the rear exit is *open* and the paper support is extended.

- Paper is stacked in reverse order.
- Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Media**, in the **Size** drop-down list, select **User Defined Size**.

*The Set Free Size dialog box appears.*



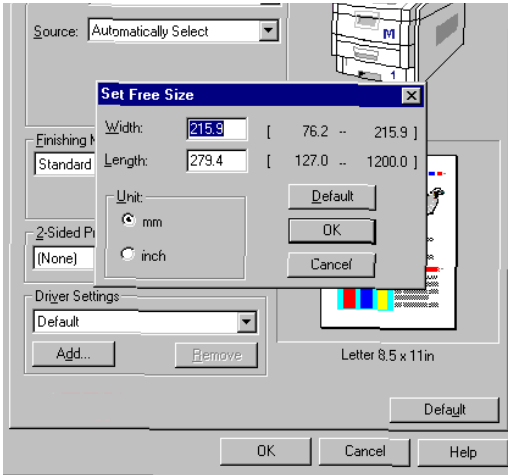
## NOTE

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK.

The driver automatically makes the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

4. Select the unit. Enter the width and length measurements.  
Custom page sizes range:

- Width: 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm]
- Length: 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm]



5. Click **OK**.
6. Check that **User Defined** now appears in the **Size** list on the **Setup** tab.

## NOTE

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options.
- Click Custom Size.
- Select the unit.
- Enter the relevant information for Width and Height.
- Give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.
- Click OK.

*The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.*

7. Click **OK**.
8. Print the document.

# Print Resolution

## PCL or PostScript

### Changing for a Print Job

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

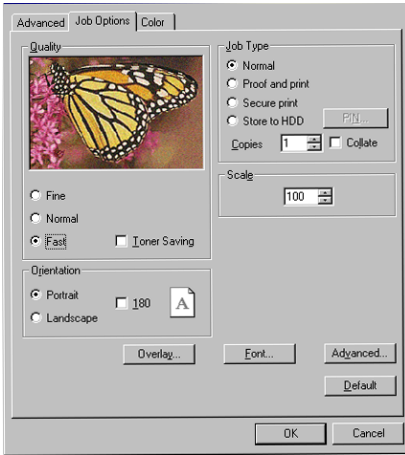
- Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
- **Right click** the appropriate printer name.
- **Select Properties**.
- **Follow steps 3, etc., below.**

**More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.**

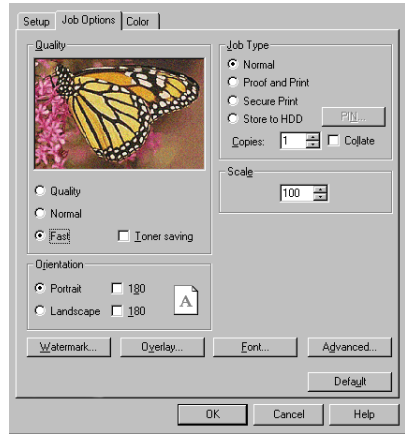
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.  
Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.

4. Select the required printing resolution under **Quality**.
5. Select **Toner Saving** (if appropriate).
6. Click **OK**. Print the document.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

#### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

Before you can perform duplex printing, unit must be

- installed in the printer  
and
- enabled in the driver.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.
- Duplexing cannot be used if Paper Weight is set to Ultra Heavy.  
See Paper (Media), “Weight and Type” on page 70.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name.
- Select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below.

More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.



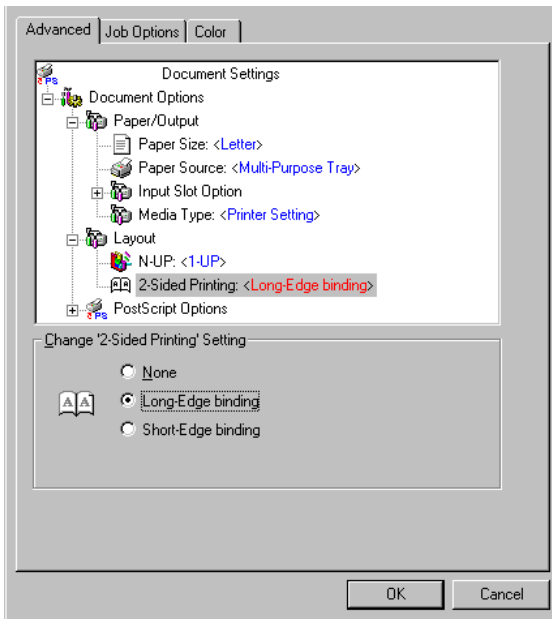
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PostScript

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver.  
Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Advanced** tab, under **Document Options** → **Layout**, click **2-Sided Printing**.
4. In the **Change '2-Sided Printing' Setting** list, select **Long-Edge binding** or **Short-Edge binding**.



# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

#### Usage Restrictions

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- Paper must be loaded print side *up*.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing.
- The Multi Purpose (MP) tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

#### NOTE

To change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name.
- Select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below.

More tabs appear in the Properties screen for setting defaults.

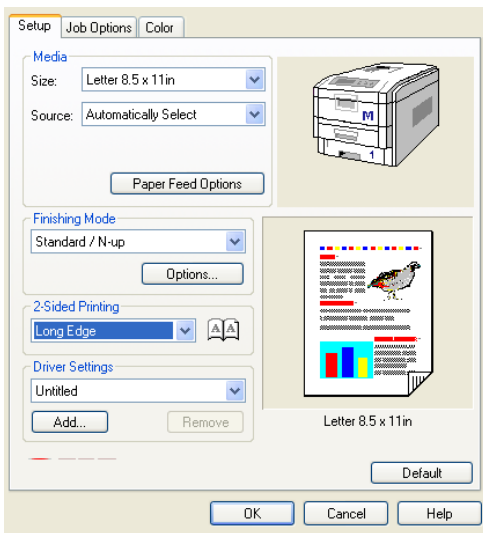
# Duplex Printing

## (Printing on Both Sides of the Paper)

### PCL

#### Using

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **2-Sided Printing**, select **Long Edge** or **Short Edge**.
4. Click **OK**. Print the document.



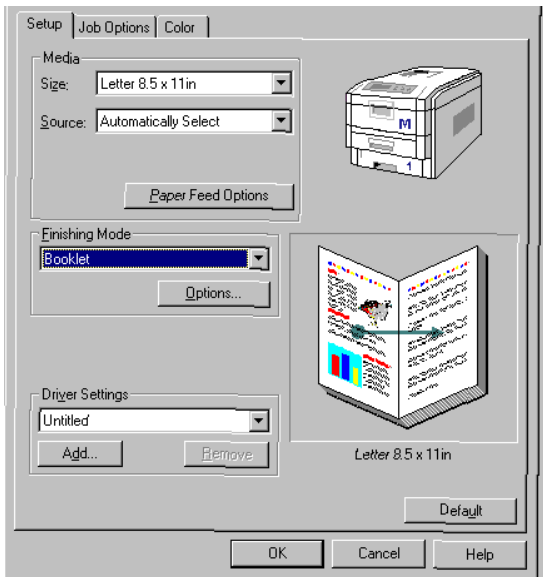
# Printing Booklets

## PCL Only

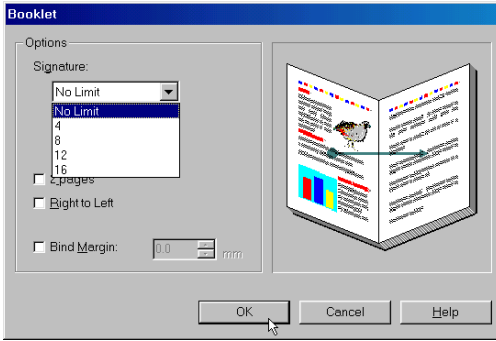
### NOTES

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, in the drop-down list, select **Booklet**.



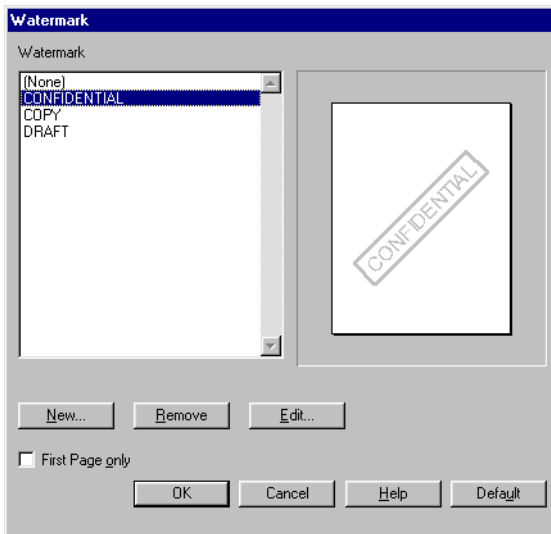
4. Click the **Options** button. Set the **Signature**, **2pages**, **Right to Left**, and **Bind Margin**, as required. See the online Help for information. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK**. Print the document.



# Printing Watermarks

## PCL Only

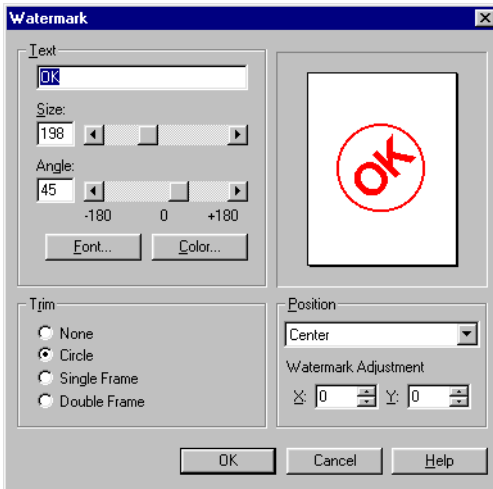
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Job Options** tab, click **Watermark**.
4. Select a name from the **Watermark** list.



## NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

- Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark. Select the attributes (font, size, angle) to be used.
- Click OK.

*The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.*

5. If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
6. Click **OK** twice.
7. Print the document.

# Collating

## PCL or PostScript

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. A printer with a hard disk drive performs better.

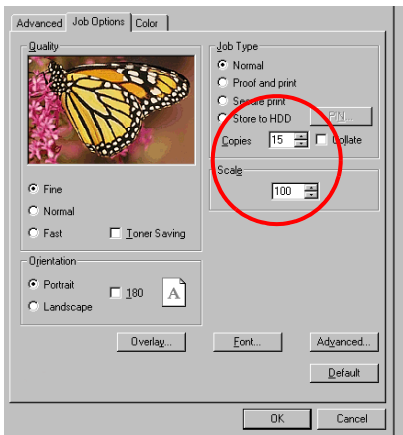
### Important

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

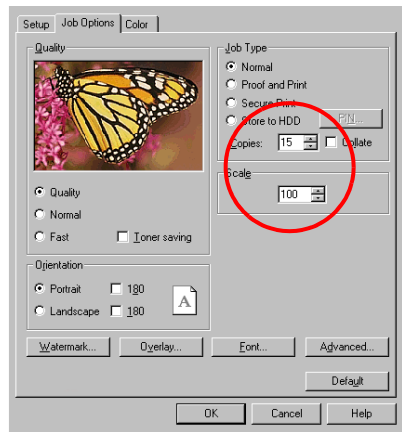
To use the printer driver to select collating:

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Job Options** tab, under **Job Type**, enter the number of copies required. *Only if the application has no collate option—select **Collate**.*
4. Click **OK**. Print the document.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver





# Proof and Print

## PCL or PostScript

### Using

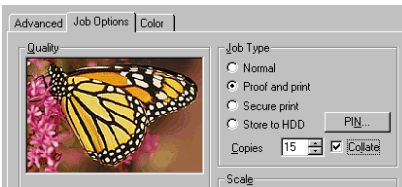
Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

### NOTES

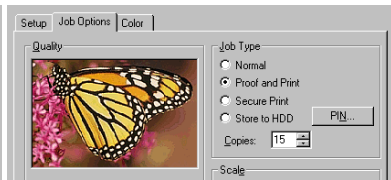
- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Select **Print to File**.
4. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
5. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



- a. On the **Job Options** tab, under **Job Type**, select **Proof and Print**.
- b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

PostScript Driver

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "JOB PIN" with a question mark icon and a close button. It contains a "Job Name Setting" section with a "Job Name:" label and an empty text input field. Below this is a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job" which is currently unchecked. At the bottom, there is a "Personal ID Number:" label, an empty text input field, and the instruction "Enter 4 digits." Below the input field are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

PCL Driver

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job PIN" with a close button. It contains a "Job Name Settings" section with a "Job Name:" label and a text input field containing the word "test". Below this is a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job" which is checked. At the bottom, there is a "Personal ID Number (PIN):" label, an empty text input field, and the instruction "Enter 4 digits. Use numbers 0-9." Below the input field are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- c. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**. Print the document. The document is stored on the hard disk drive. One copy is printed for checking.
7. After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document. Use the procedures given below.

## Proof and Print

### Printing Copies

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

## Proof and Print

### Deleting Copies

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter your personal ID number.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online help for Storage Device Manager.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### PCL or PostScript

#### Using Secure Printing

Secure printing (printing with passwords) allows you to print confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users in a network environment.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, **DISK FULL** is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.

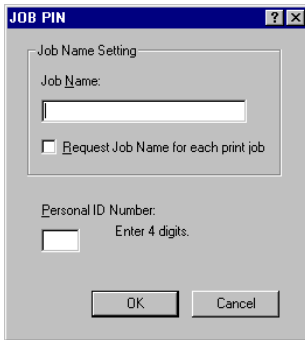
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.  
Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. Select **Print to file**.
4. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
5. On the **Job Options** tab, under **Job Type**, select **Secure Print**.

#### NOTE

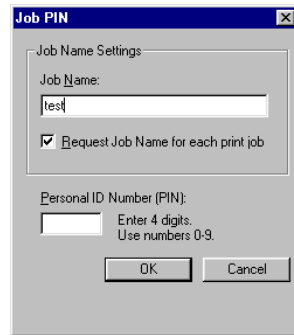
If you've already used **Secure Print** to place a document on the hard disk drive, but have not yet printed it out, click the **PIN** button and enter a new job name.

- a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver

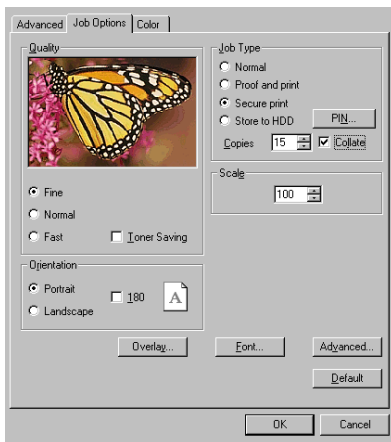


- b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.

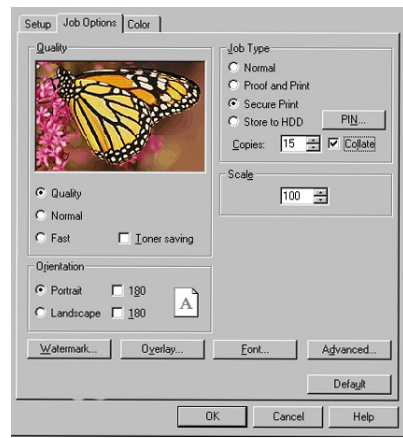
6. Enter the number of copies. If required, select **Collate**.

C73\_NT\_PS\_SecureK.tif and C73\_NT\_PCL\_SecureK.tif

### PostScript Driver



### PCL Driver



7. Click **OK**. Print the document. The document is stored on the printer's hard disk.
8. Go to the printer. Use the front panel to print the document. See below.

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Printing at the Printer

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**.  
Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button.

*The document prints and is deleted from the hard disk drive.*

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Secure Printing

## (Printing Confidential Documents)

### Deleting the confidential document before printing it

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**. Press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you set above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**



# Hard Disk Drive

## PCL or PostScript

### Storing a Document

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead, stationery, etc.

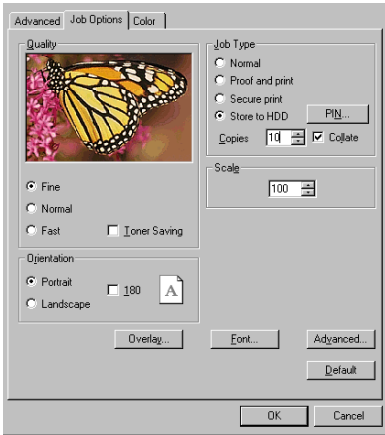
#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.

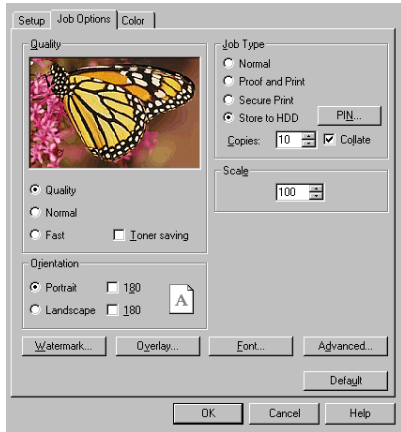
1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver.
3. Select **Print to file**.
4. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

5. Select **Store to HDD**.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



**NOTE**

If you've already stored a document on the printer's hard disk drive, and want to store another one, click the **PIN** button and enter a new Job Name.

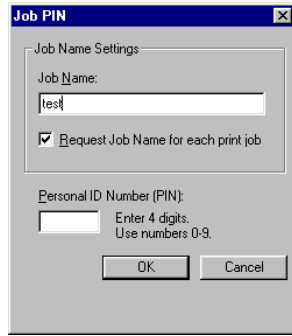
- a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under **Job Name Setting**. If required, select **Request Job Name for each print job**.

#### PostScript Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "JOB PIN" with a blue title bar. Inside, there is a section titled "Job Name Setting" containing a text input field for "Job Name" and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job" which is currently unchecked. Below this is a section for "Personal ID Number" with a small input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits." At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

#### PCL Driver



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Job PIN" with a blue title bar. Inside, there is a section titled "Job Name Settings" containing a text input field for "Job Name" with the text "test" entered, and a checkbox labeled "Request Job Name for each print job" which is checked. Below this is a section for "Personal ID Number (PIN)" with a small input field and the instruction "Enter 4 digits. Use numbers 0-9." At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- b. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777. Click **OK**.
6. Select the number of copies. Click **Collate**, if applicable.
  7. Click **OK**. Print the document. The document is stored on the hard disk. It can then be printed on demand, or deleted. Use the procedures given below.

## Hard Disk Drive

### Printing a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the SELECT button to print the document.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

## Hard Disk Drive

### Deleting a stored document

1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU** and press the SELECT button.
2. Use the buttons on the printer control panel to enter the personal ID number you selected above.
3. Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
5. When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

### NOTE

**An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the online Help for the Storage Device Manager software.**

# Overlays

## What are Overlays?

An overlay is a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored and printed whenever required.

An overlay is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (optional).

An overlay is similar to a watermark. However, an overlay can be much more elaborate than a watermark.

Overlays can

- replace as pre-printed stationery
- add your logo or company address to a document
- create forms.

## When to Use Overlays

Use overlays to print letterheads, forms, or invoices.

Using overlays can reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

## Example of Using Overlays

Use the Storage Device Manager to create and store three files in the printer:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

Use the Overlay feature to place these files into your document.

You can use the files in many different combinations, according to your changing requirements.

# Overlays

## Creating Files for Overlays

The files to be used as overlays must be created, generated, and stored.

Then, other users can use settings in the printer drivers to use the files as overlays in documents.

1. Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead).
2. Use the printer driver to generate a PRN file (print file).
3. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format.
4. Download the storable file to the printer.

# Overlays

## Requirements for Using

### Read This First

#### **Important!**

1. An overlay may consist of more than one component file.
2. When the hard disk drive is installed, you *must* use the Shutdown Menu before turning OFF the printer.
3. If your software application has a collate print option, you *must* turn it OFF before you print overlays.
4. You *cannot* use overlays with the:
  - Windows 2000 PostScript driver
  - Macintosh driver
5. The message DISK FULL appears if there isn't enough memory for the data.

### **Hardware / Software Requirements**

- the Storage Device Manager software must be installed.
- printer internal hard disk drive (Installation is highly recommended)

### **Required Actions**

Before overlays can be printed, they must be

- created in a software application
- saved as a print file
- downloaded to storage



# Overlays

## Requirements for Using

### Storage Requirements

#### Locations

Use Storage Device Manager to store the overlays to the printer's:

- hard disk drive

or

- flash memory

### Maximum Available Space

Hard Disk Drive

2 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms

Flash Memory

about 0.5 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms

# Overlays

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PCL

An overlay can be created in any software application that can

- handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc.  
and
- print to a file.

To create a print (PRN) file:

1. Open your application program.
2. Open the file to be stored as an overlay.
3. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
4. Make sure that the "**Print To File**" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
5. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model.
6. Click **Properties . . .** This should open the printer driver settings.

### Important

You must use the Oki PCL driver to do this.

7. Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
8. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet.  
Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
9. Click **OK** to Close the Default dialog box.
10. Print the document.  
Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.  
Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

# Overlays

## Creating documents to use as overlays

### PostScript

An overlay can be created in any software application that can

- handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc.

and

- print to a file.

1. Open your application program.
2. Open the file to be stored as an overlay.
3. Choose **File**, then **Print**.
4. Make sure that the **Print To File** option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
5. Depending on the application, you may need to select your printer model.
6. Click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.
7. Select the **Job Options** tab.
8. Click the **Overlays...** button.
9. Choose **Create Form** from the menu.
10. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
11. Click **OK** to print the document to a file.

### Important

You must use the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk.

Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn."

# Overlays

## Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

### PCL or PostScript

Once you have created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk, you must download this file to the printer.

Use the Storage Device Manager to download the PRN file.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

1. Launch Storage Device Manager.
2. Allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
3. Click **Project**, then **New Project**.
4. From the **Project** menu, select **Add File to Project**.
5. Select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.

**PCL:** This automatically generates a BIN file.

**PostScript:** This automatically generates a PostScript hst file.

### **Important!**

The BIN file is automatically assigned an ID number.

To change the ID number

- double-click the number
- enter a new one in the ID field.

6. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager.

*Names are case sensitive.*

### **NOTE**

**The assigned file name is very important!**

**You must use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver.**

**You should change the ID number or name from the default value.**

***Note the new name for later use.***

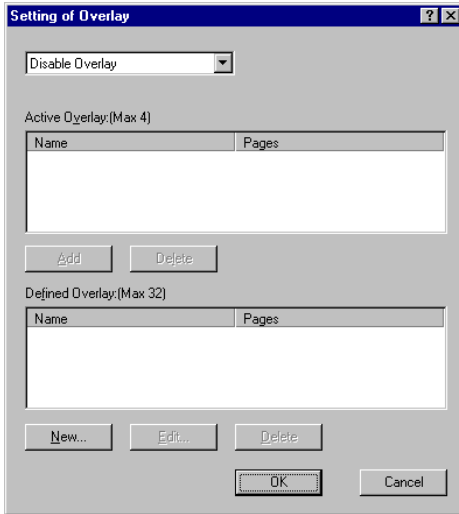
7. Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.
8. Select the **Project** menu. Choose **Send Project Files to Printer**. This downloads the file to the printer.  
  
If the file was downloaded successfully, "Command Issued" displays.
9. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# Overlays

## Defining Overlays

### PostScript

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. On the **Job Options** tab, click the **Overlay** button.



4. Click the **New** button.

**Define Overlays**

Overlay Name:

Print on Pages:

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting

Form Name:

Defined Forms:

5. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay. Select the pages where you want the overlay to print.

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

- Under **Form setting**, in the drop-down list, enter or select a form name. Click **Add**.

Define Overlays

Overlay Name: Logo

Print on Pages: First Page

Custom Pages:

Enter page numbers and /or page ranges separated by commas. For example, 1,3,5-12

Form setting

Form Name: Stationery

Add Rename

Defined Forms:

Stationery

Delete

OK Cancel

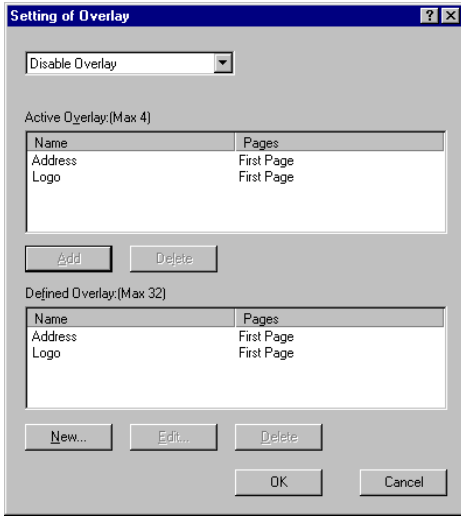
## NOTE

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- Click **OK**.
- To continue to add files to the overlay (if required), repeat steps 5 through 8.



9. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name(s). Click **Add** to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay. To select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name.



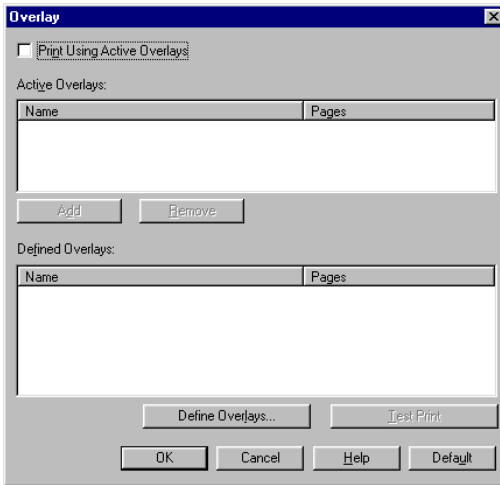
10. At the top of the dialog box, use the drop-down list to select **Use Overlay**. Click **OK**.
11. Click **OK** to close the Default dialog box.

# Overlays

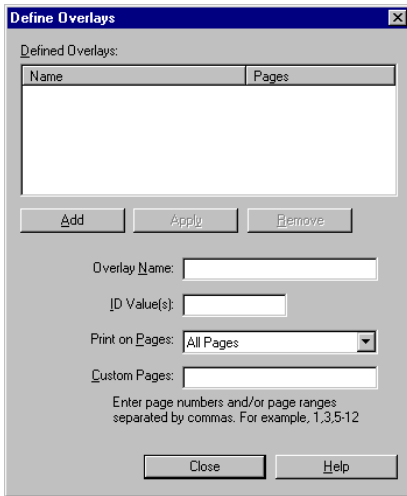
## Defining Overlays

### PCL

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay...** button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



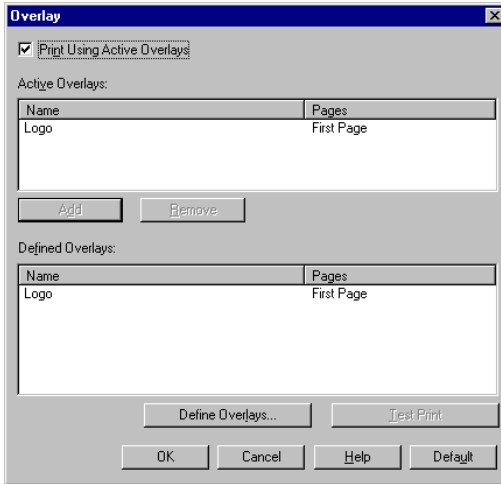
6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay

### NOTE

The **Overlay Name** must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is **case sensitive**.

7. In **ID Values**, enter the ID of the file. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
8. Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from **Print on Pages** or use **Custom Pages** to select specific page numbers in the document. Click **Add**.
9. Click **Close**.
10. Repeat steps 5 through 9 for each overlay you wish to add.
11. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name. Click the **Add** button to add the overlay to the list in **Active Overlays**.

**12. Select **Print Using Active Overlays.****



**13. Click **OK.****

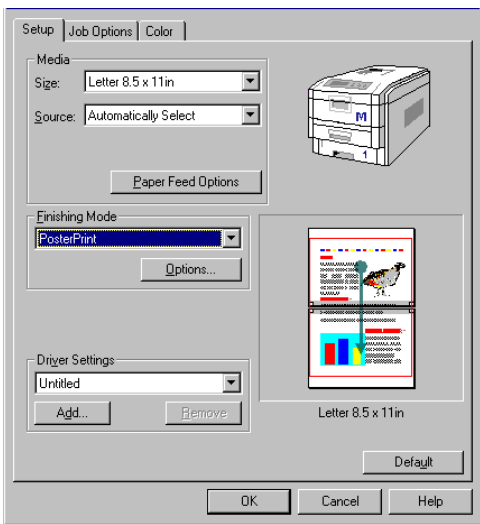
**14. Click **OK** to close the Default dialog box.**

# Printing Posters

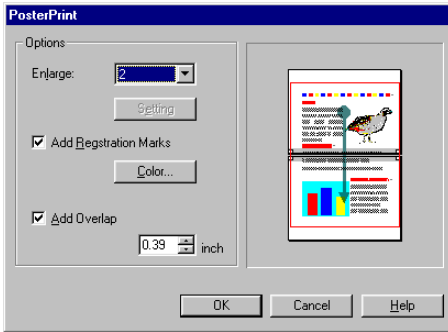
## PCL Only

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces. Each piece prints, enlarged, on a separate sheet. Then, the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver.

1. Open the file in your application. Select **File** → **Print**.
2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver. Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
3. On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select **Poster Print**.



4. Click **Options...** and enter the configuration details.
5. Click **OK** twice.
6. Print the document.

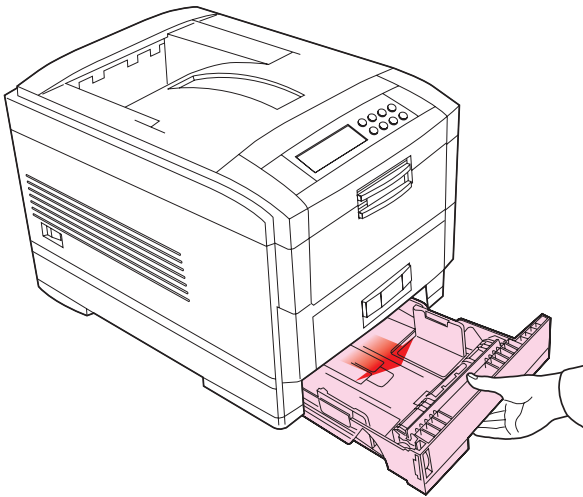


# Maintenance

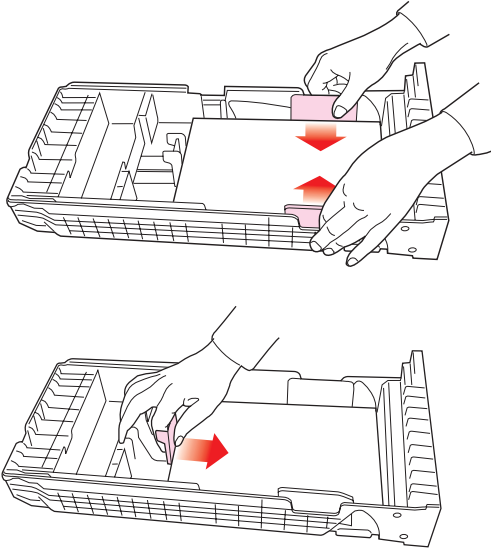
## Adding Paper

The display indicates when the number of sheets of paper in any paper tray falls below 30.

1. Remove the paper tray.
2. Remove the remaining sheets of paper.
3. Refill the tray with up to a ream (500 sheets) of paper. Replace the sheets removed in step 2. This guarantees that the oldest paper is used first. Doing this helps preventing paper jams.



4. Check that the paper guides and rear stopper are correct for the size of paper being used.



5. Close the paper tray *gently*.

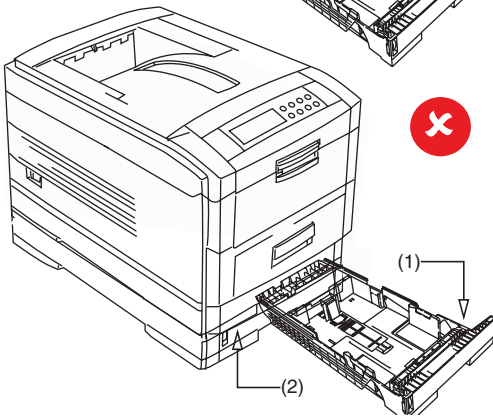
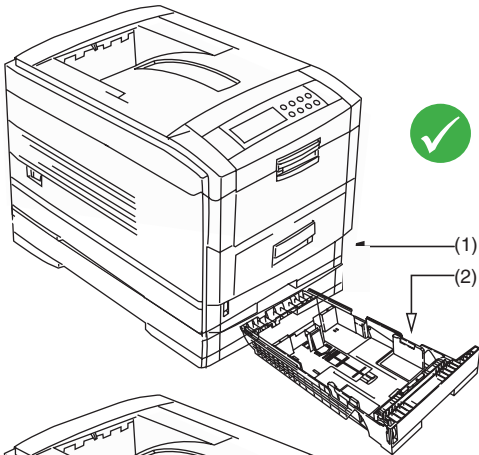
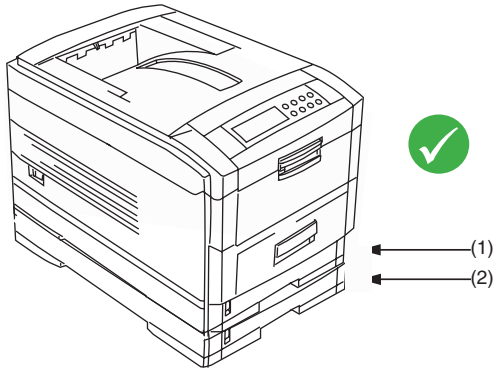
### **Important!**

To prevent jams:

- Make sure there is no space between the paper and the paper guides and rear stopper.
- Don't overfill the paper tray. Capacity depends on the type of paper and the paper weight (max 530 sheets of 80gm<sup>2</sup>).
- Don't load damaged paper.
- Don't mix paper of different sizes, paper quality or thickness.
- Don't remove the paper tray during printing.



6. If installed, a lower paper tray cannot be used to print if there is no paper in the tray inserted above it.



# Changing the Toner Cartridge

## NOTE

After installing the new toner cartridge, the message on the display **TONER LOW** or **CHANGE TONER** should disappear. However, this sometimes does not disappear until printing has been carried out. If it still does not disappear, reinstall the toner cartridge.

When the toner is running low, \*\*\*\*\* TONER LOW is displayed in the control panel (\*\* is the color name).

If printing continues without replacing the toner cartridge, CHANGE \*\*\*\*\* TONER is displayed and printing is cancelled. Depending on the operating environment, print may become faint before this message is displayed.

At this stage, remove the toner cartridge and check whether it is empty. If so, the toner cartridge needs to be replaced.

Cartridge life is approximately 10,000 letter-size pages at 5% print density. The first toner cartridge installed in a new image drum needs to be replaced after less than this amount because the toner cartridge has to fill a new image drum.

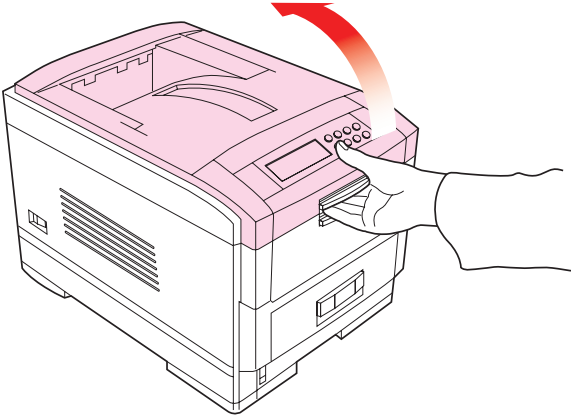
## WARNING!

*Take extreme care when handling toner.*

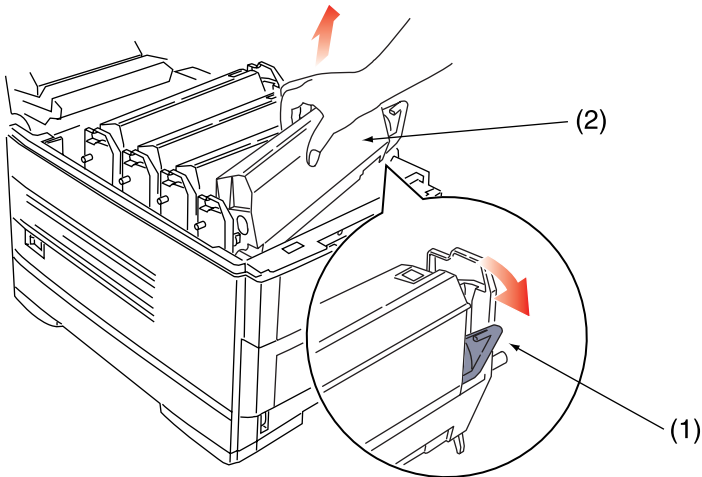
- *Toner can be harmful if inhaled, swallowed or if it gets in the eyes.*
- *Toner can also stain hands and clothing.*

*See the Material Safety Data Sheets in your Warranty, Regulatory and Safety Information booklet for more information.*

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the top cover.



3. Check the color label of the toner cartridge to be changed.
4. Locate the colored lever (1), on the right side of the toner cartridge. Move it (as shown by the arrow) as far as it will go.
5. Lift the lever end of the cartridge. This disengages the locating peg on the image drum from the toner cartridge.

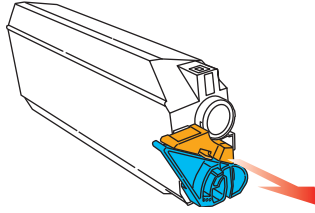


6. Remove the toner cartridge (2).

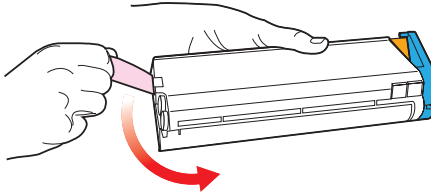
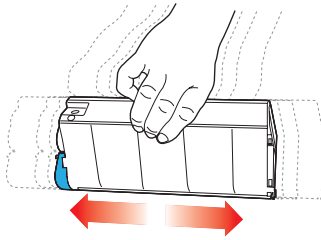
### **CAUTION!**

**Dispose of the toner cartridge in accordance with local legislation.**

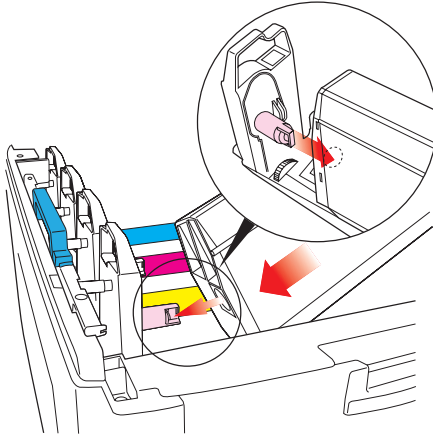
7. Unpack the new toner cartridge and remove the orange shipping clip.



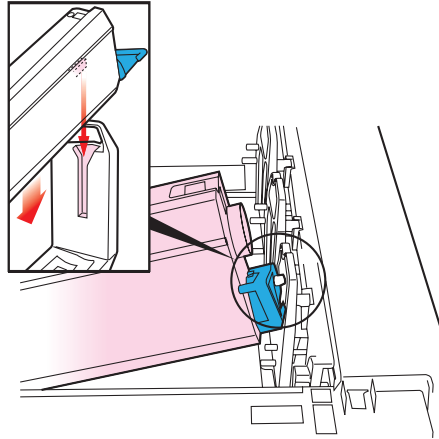
8. Shake the new toner cartridge back and forth several times. Then holding the toner cartridge horizontally, remove the tape.



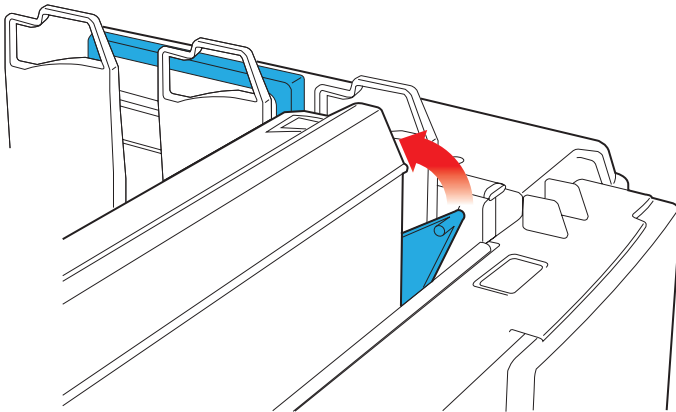
9. Insert the new toner cartridge into the image drum, left side first, engaging the drum locating peg in the hole in the toner cartridge.



- 10.** *Gently* push the toner cartridge down, engaging the locking pin into the groove on the image drum.



- 11.** *Gently* push the colored lever forward until it stops. This releases the toner into the image drum.



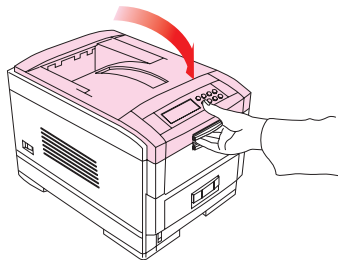
12. Gently wipe the LED head surface with LED lens cleaner or a soft tissue.



### CAUTION

Do not use methyl alcohol or other solvents on the LED head. These solvents damage the lens surface.

13. Close the top cover.



### NOTE

After installing the new toner cartridge, the message on the display **TONER LOW** or **CHANGE TONER** should disappear. However, this sometimes does not disappear until printing has been carried out. If it still does not disappear, reinstall the toner cartridge.



## Changing the Image Drum

When the image drum reaches the end of its product life, **\*\*\* CHANGE DRUM** is displayed in the control panel (\*\*\*) is the color name). If printing continues without replacing the image drum, **CHANGE \*\*\*\* IMAGE DRUM** is displayed and printing is cancelled.

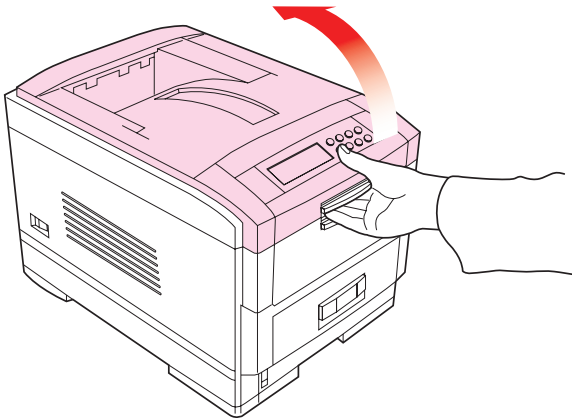
Change the toner cartridge and clean the LED head at the same time as changing the image drum.

Image drum life is approximately 23,000 sheets of letter-size media. This assumes a typical office environment where 20% of print jobs are one page emails, 30% are 3-page documents containing only words (no graphics) and 50% are print runs of 15 pages or more.

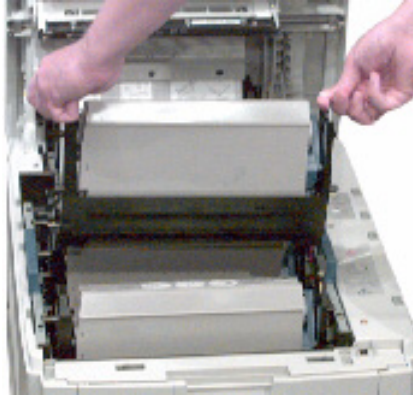
### CAUTION!

- **Never expose the image drum to direct sunlight.**
- **Never expose the image drum to light for more than 5 minutes.**
- **Never touch the surface of the green drum inside the image drum unit.**

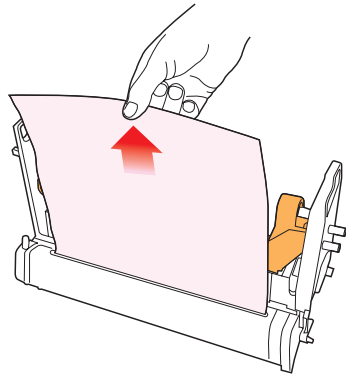
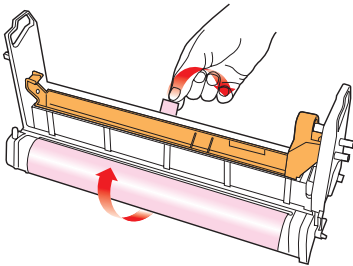
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the top cover.



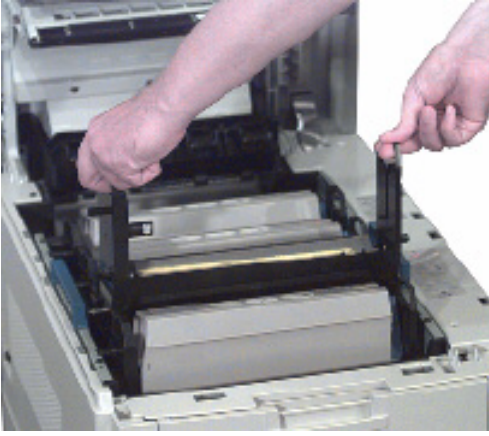
3. Remove the appropriate image drum/toner cartridge from the printer.



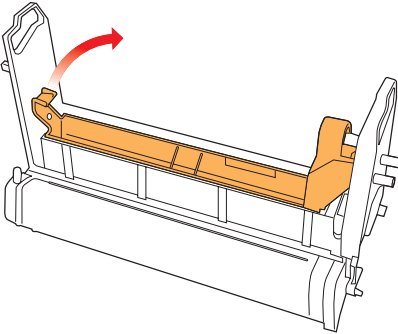
4. Make sure the replacement image drum is the correct color and remove it from the packaging.
5. Remove the protective sheet from the new image drum.



6. Install the new image drum in the printer.



7. Push the tab inwards and remove the blanking plate from the image drum.

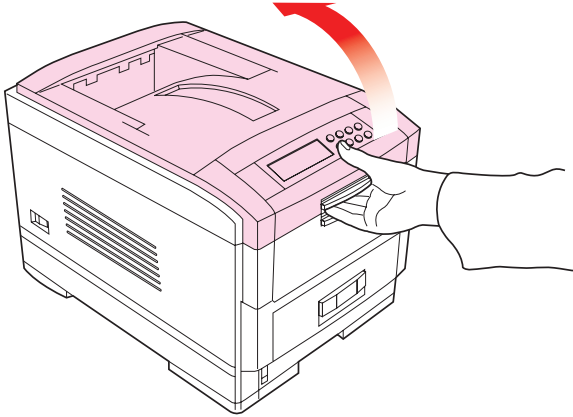


8. Install a new toner cartridge. See “Changing the Toner Cartridge” on page 498.
9. Close the top cover.

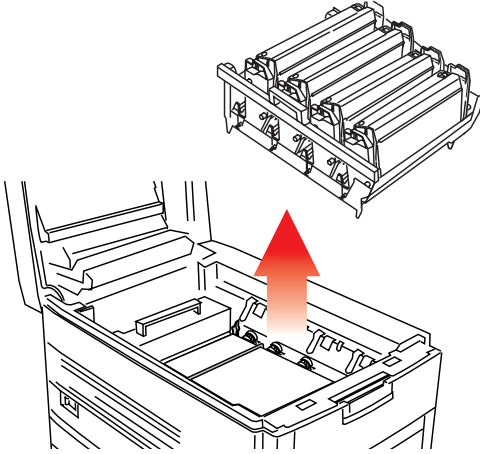
## Changing the Transfer Belt

When the transfer belt reaches the end of its product life, **CHANGE BELT UNIT** is displayed in the control panel. Transfer belt life depends on the number of sheets per print job. When single sheets are printed, transfer belt life is reduced.

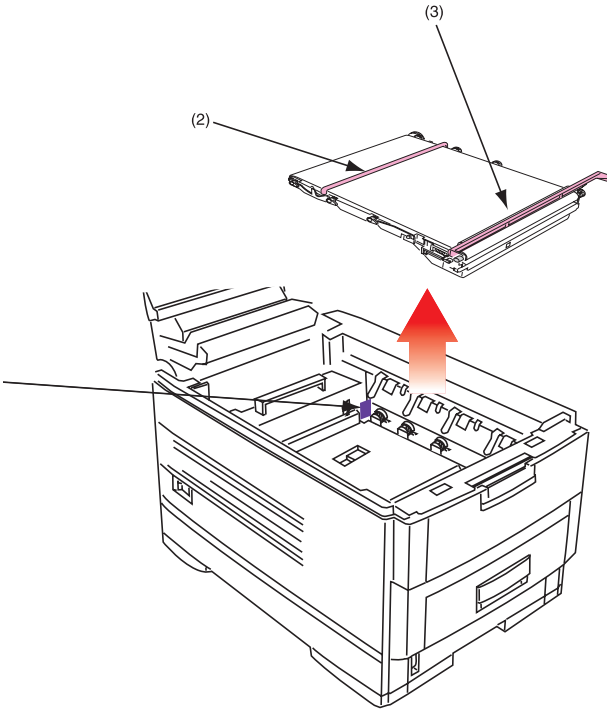
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the top cover.



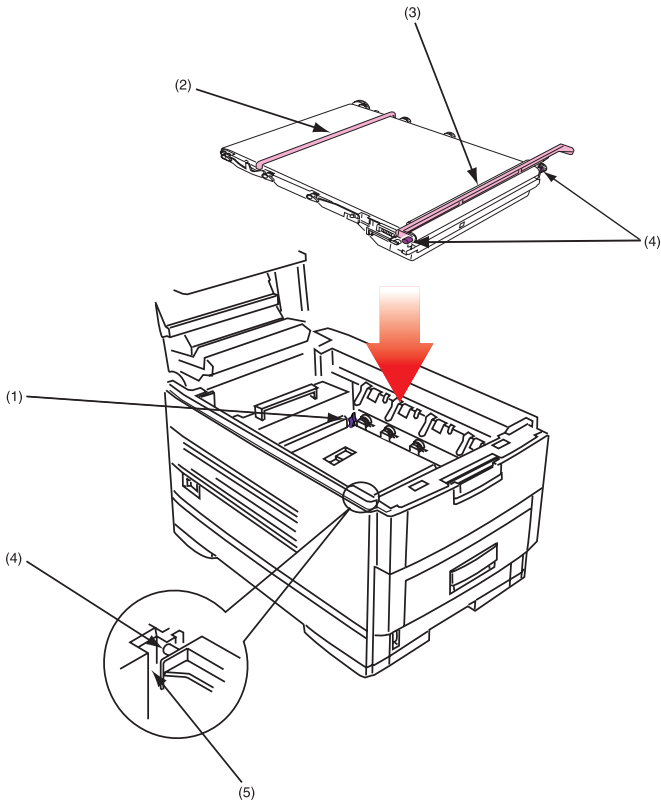
3. Remove the cradle (complete with the four image drums and toner cartridges) from the printer.



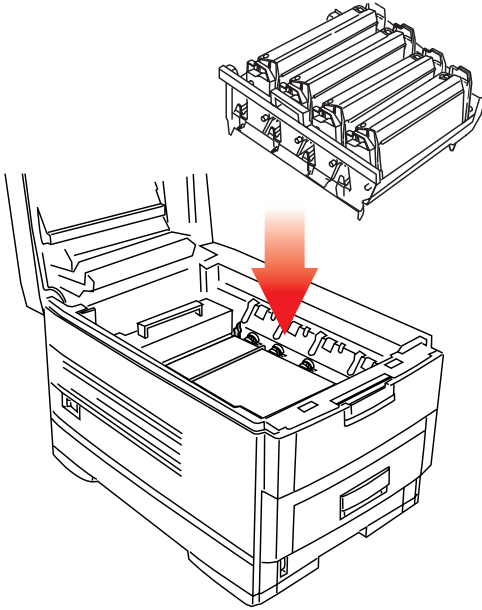
4. Press back the lock lever (1).
5. Use the handles (2 and 3) to remove the old transfer belt from the printer.



6. Remove the new transfer belt unit from its packaging.
7. Using the handles (2 and 3), align the pins (4) with the grooves (5) on the printer and insert the new transfer belt into the printer.

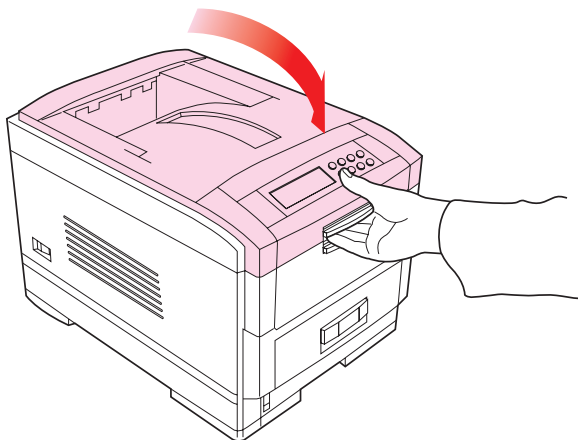


8. Move the lock lever (1) toward the front of the printer.  
Make sure it locks the transfer belt into place.
9. Reinstall the cradle complete with the four image drums and  
toner cartridges in the printer.





**10. Close the top cover.**



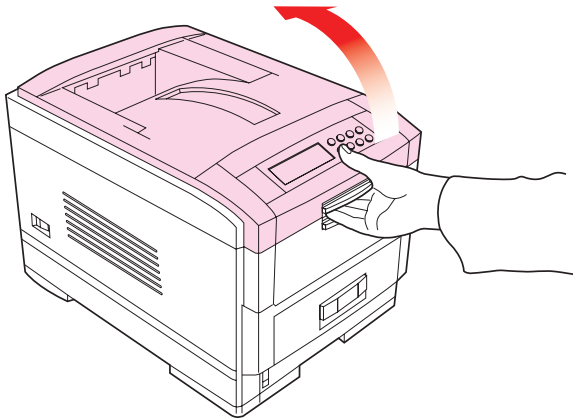
## Changing the Fuser

### **WARNING!**

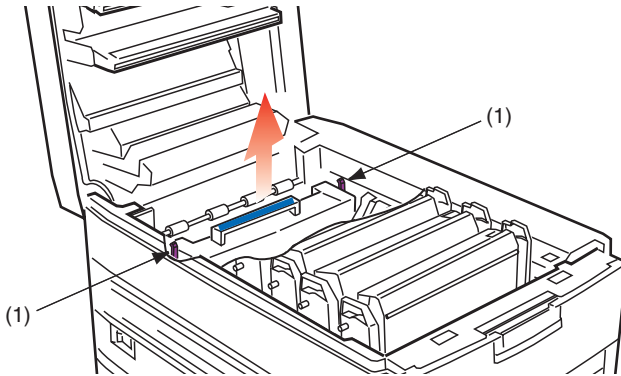
*The fuser unit is very hot after printing. Always use the handle when lifting it.*

When the fuser unit reaches the end of its product life, **CHANGE FUSER UNIT** is displayed in the control panel. Fuser unit life is approximately 60 000 A4 sheets.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the top cover.

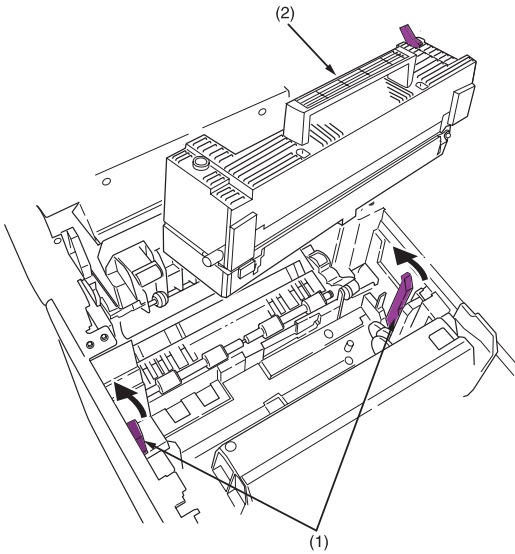


3. Move the two locking levers (1) to the rear of the machine to release the fuser unit.

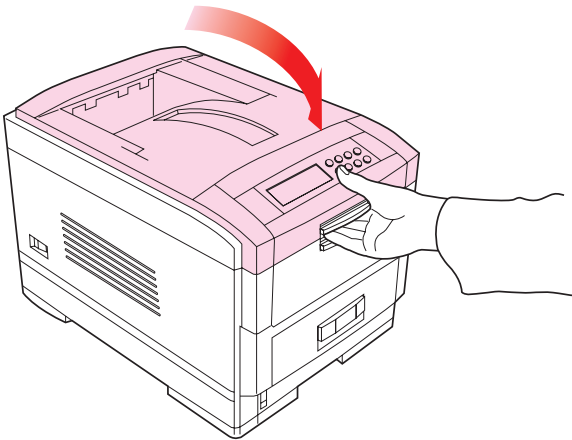


4. Use the handle (2) to remove the fuser unit from the printer.
5. Remove the new fuser unit from its packaging. Lift off the shipping tape at either end. As you remove the tape, the levers at either end of the fuser should move into the locked position.

6. Using the handle (2), install the new fuser unit into the printer. Make sure the two spring loaded locking levers (1) lock the fuser unit into place.



7. Close the top cover.



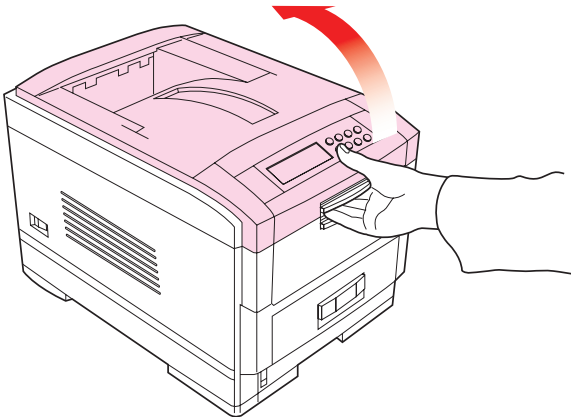
# Cleaning the LED heads

## CAUTION!

Do not use methyl alcohol or other solvents on the LED heads. These solvents damage the lens surface.

Clean the LED heads when printing does not come out clearly, has white lines or when text is blurred.

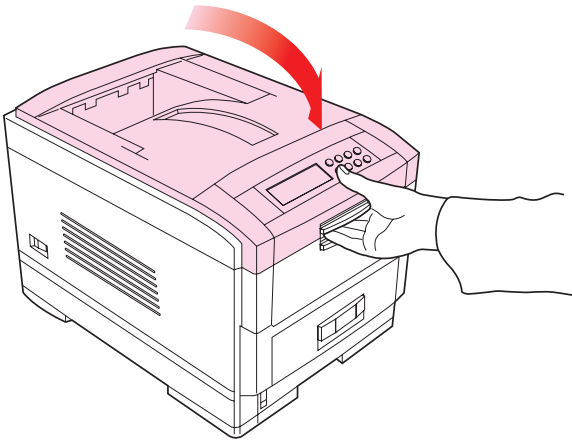
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the top cover.



3. Gently wipe the LED head surface with LED lens cleaner or soft tissue.



4. Close the top cover.





# Moving (Shipping) the Printer

## **WARNING**

*This printer weighs 106 lbs. (48 kg).*

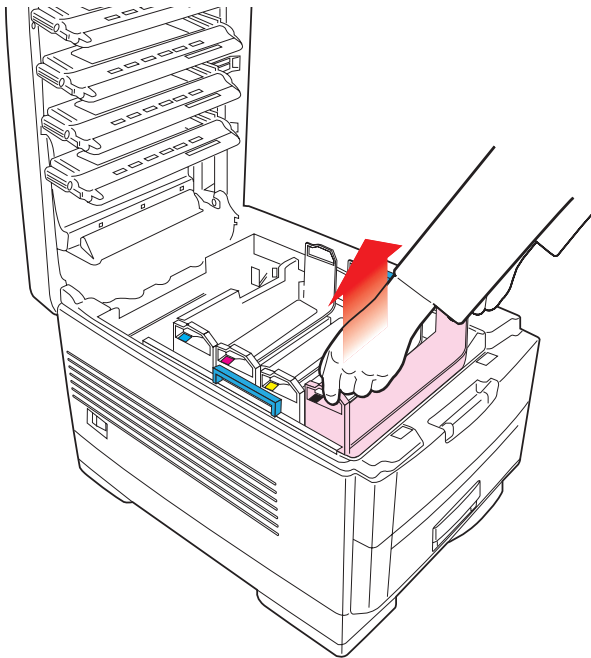
*Two people are required to lift the printer safely.*

This printer is a precision machine.

Moving the printer without the protective packaging may damage the printer.

To prepare the printer for moving:

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Disconnect the power cable from the printer.
3. Disconnect the printer interface cable from the printer.
4. Remove any paper from the paper trays.
5. Open the top cover. Remove the four image drums.







# Troubleshooting

## Messages on Control (Front) Panel Display

The control (front) panel has a liquid crystal display (LCD).

The display indicates the printer status and if there is a problem with the printer.

The messages (status and error) are listed below, together with an explanation of what each message means:

### List of Messages

The messages are listed in alphabetical order.

Display Message	Meaning
1 ***** DRUM NEAR LIFE	An image drum is nearing the end of its life. (***** indicates color)
2 ***** EMPTY	Warning that Tray ***** is empty. MP Tray is Tray 0.
3 ***** NEAR END	The paper in the selected ***** is nearly finished. (***** indicates paper tray).
4 ***** TONER LOW	Toner is low (***** indicates color).
5 ***** TONER SENSOR ERROR	Error with the toner sensor (***** indicates color). Call for service.
6 BELT UNIT MISSING	Transfer belt unit is missing.
7 CANCELLING JOB	Cancelling the current job.
8 CENTRO I/F ERROR	Centronics interface error (parallel interface).
9 CHANGE ***** IMAGE DRUM	Change the image drum (***** indicates color).
10 CHANGE BELT UNIT	Change the transfer belt.
11 CHANGE FUSER UNIT	Change the fuser unit.
12 CHANGE PAPER TO *****	Paper must be changed to correct paper size and/or media type. (***** indicates size or media type).

Display Message	Meaning
13 CHECK *****	Check Tray ***** for paper jam. MP tray is Tray 0.
14 CHECK BELT UNIT	Check the transfer belt for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
15 CHECK DUPLEX	Check the duplex unit for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
16 CHECK FUSER UNIT	Check the fuser unit for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
17 CHECK IMAGE DRUM	Check the image drum for correct installation, etc. Color is indicated.
18 COLLATE FAIL	Collating of multiple copies has failed.
19 COLOR ADJUSTING	Adjusting head so that colors do not shift on to each other.
20 COLOR BALANCE ADJUST	Adjust the color balance.
21 COMMUNICATION ERROR	There is an error with communications to computer.
22 DATA ARRIVE	Data has been received, but processing has not started yet.
23 DATA PRESENT	Unprinted data remains in buffer. Waiting for data to follow.
24 DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED	Error with hard disk operations.
25 DISK FILESYSTEM IS FULL	Hard disk/flash memory full.
26 DISK FULL	The internal hard drive is full.
27 EEPROM INITIALIZE ERROR	Call for service.
28 EMPTY	Indicates which paper tray is empty.
29 ERROR POSTSCRIPT	A PostScript error has occurred.
30 FATAL ERROR	Call for service.
31 FUSER UNIT MISSING	Fuser unit is missing.

Display Message	Meaning
32 INSTALL ADDITIONAL MEMORY	Additional memory is required before job can be printed. See "Memory (Additional)" on page 555.
33 INSTALL NEW IMAGE DRUM	Install a new image drum. Color is indicated. See "Changing the Image Drum" on page 505.
34 INSTALL NEW TONER	Install a new toner cartridge. Color is indicated.
35 INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE	Install the paper cassette. Paper tray is indicated. See "Loading Paper" on page 42.
36 INVALID DATA	Data is incorrect.
37 LOAD	Load correct paper size/type. Size/type is indicated. See "Loading Paper" on page 42.
38 MEDIA MISMATCH	Paper type set via menu does not match that sent via driver.
39 NETWORK ERROR	Network error.
40 OFFLINE	Shows offline status.
41 ONLINE	Shows online status.
42 OPEN UPPER COVER	Open the upper cover.
43 PAPER JAM	A paper jam has occurred.
44 PAPER SIZE ERROR	Indicates wrong paper size.
45 PLEASE POWER OFF	Printer must be turned off after disk/flash initialization.
46 POWER SAVE	The printer is in power save mode.
47 PRINTING	Data is being printed.
48 PROCESSING	Data is being processed.
49 RAM CHECK	RAM is checked after printer is turned on.

Display Message	Meaning
50 REGISTRATION ADJUST TEST	Registration adjustment being tested.
51 REGISTRATION ERROR	An error has occurred setting up the registration.
52 REMOVE THE PAPER	Indicates wrong paper being used.
53 SERVICE CALL	A serious error has occurred Call for service.
54 SHUTDOWN	Starts the shutdown procedure to protect the file system on hard disk.
55 SIZE MISMATCH	Change paper to correct size/type. Press On-line to continue.
56 STACKER FULL	Stacker is full. Remove the paper.
57 UNSUITABLE SIZE	Indicates wrong paper size.
58 USB I/F ERROR	USB interface error has occurred.
59 WARMING UP	The printer is warming up.

## Repeating Asterisk (\*) Symbol

An asterisk (\*) symbol appears on the display, repeatedly moving across the first line then the second.

Possible cause	Remedy
The main board is not properly seated in the printer.	Turn the printer off, then reseal the main board and turn the printer back on again.

# Paper Jams

## Clearing

### NOTE

Do not close the top cover *completely* (until it latches) during this process.

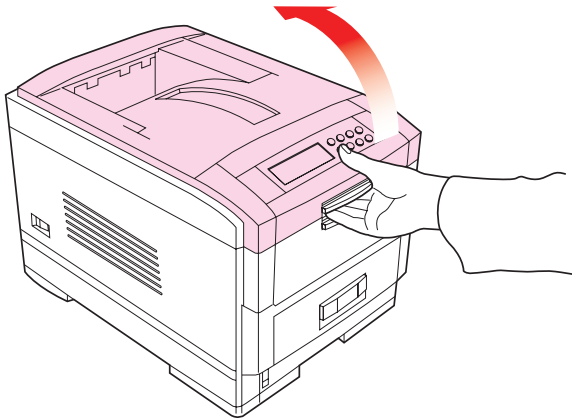
If the top cover is closed too soon, the paper jam error does not clear.

To minimize possible damage to the drums due to exposure to light, lower the top cover when appropriate, but do not press down to latch it.

Paper jams are indicated by an error message on the display.

Paper jams are cleared as follows:

1. Open the top cover of the printer.

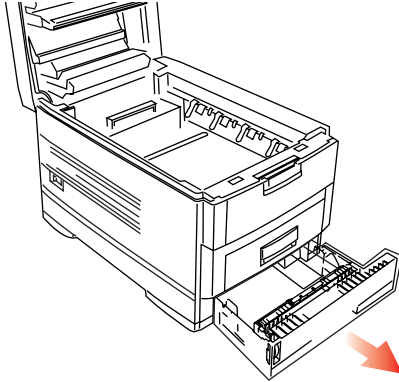


# Paper Jams

## Clearing

### Check the paper tray

2. Pull out the paper tray.
  - a. Remove any jammed paper from the printer.
  - b. Gently push the paper tray back in.



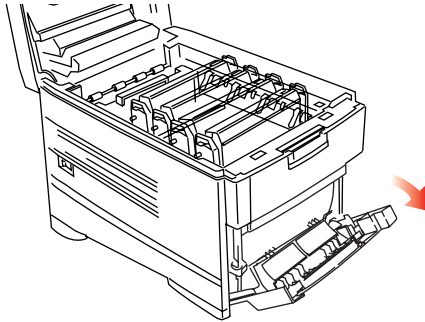


# Paper Jams

## Clearing

### Check behind the front cover

3. Open the front cover.
  - a. Remove any jammed paper.
  - b. Close the front cover.



# Paper Jams

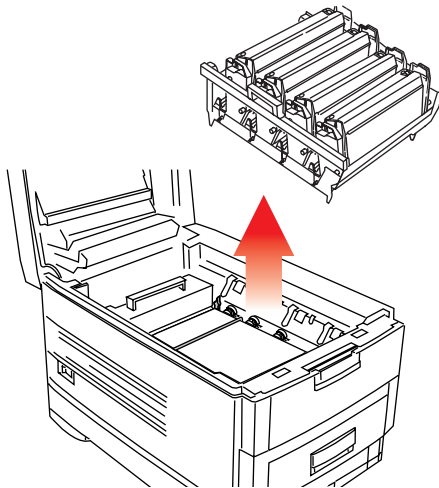
## Clearing

### Check the transfer belt

#### CAUTION!

- Never expose image drums to light for more than 5 minutes.
- Always hold an image drum by the ends.
- Never expose image drums to direct sunlight.
- Never touch the green surface of the drum.

4. Remove all four image drums as one unit in their cradle. Place the cradle on a *flat* surface. This prevents damage to the shiny green surface on the bottom of the drums.
  - a. Carefully remove any jammed paper from the transfer belt and top paper exit.
  - b. Replace all four image drums as one unit into the printer.

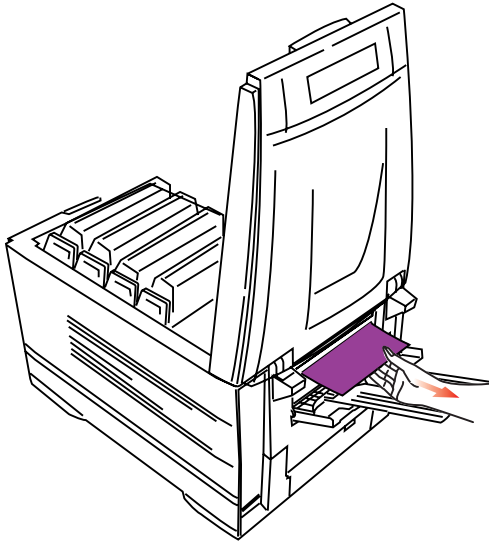


# Paper Jams

## Clearing

### Check behind the rear cover

5. Open the rear cover.
  - a. Remove any jammed paper.
  - b. Close the rear cover.



# Paper Jams

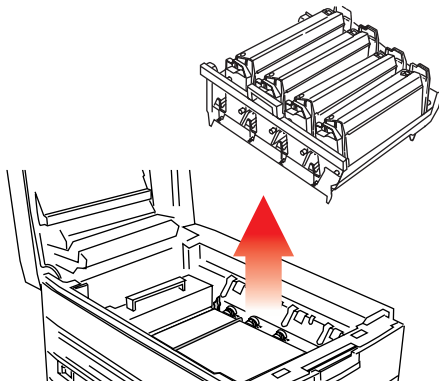
## Clearing

### Check the fuser unit

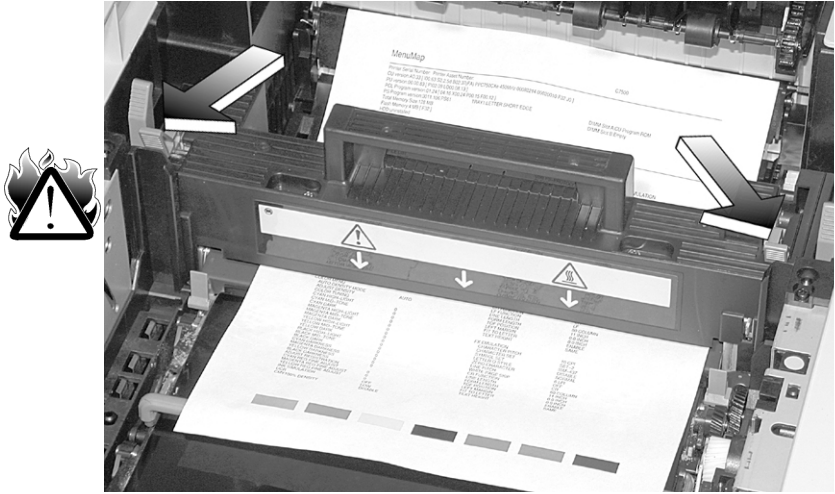
#### **WARNING!**

*The fuser unit is very hot after printing. Always use the handle when lifting it.*

- a. If necessary, lift out the toner/drum cradle to access the jammed page.



- b. Release the fuser roller lock levers at either end of the fuser and slowly remove the jammed paper.
- c. Re-lock the levers at either end of the fuser.

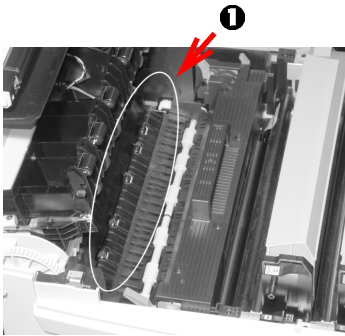


# Paper Jams

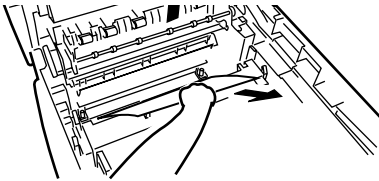
## Clearing

### Check the paper separator

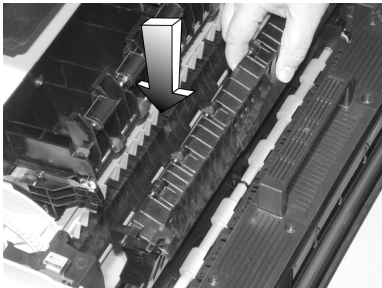
- a. Release and lift the separator (1).



- b. Remove any jammed paper from the printer.



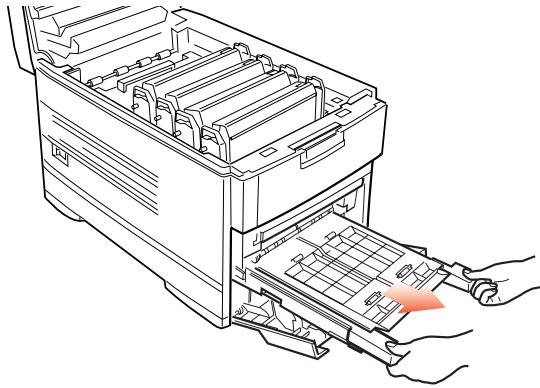
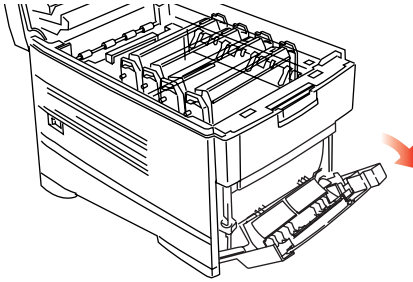
- c. Replace the separator.



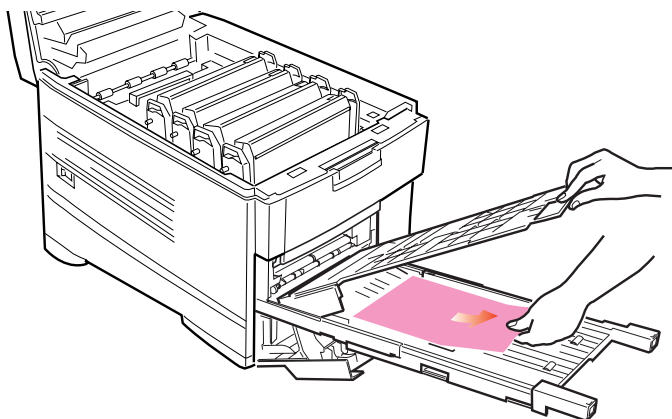
## Paper Jams

### Check the duplex unit

- a. Open the front cover.
- b. Slide out the duplex unit.



- c. Open the duplex top cover and remove any jammed paper.
- d. Close the duplex top cover and slide the duplex unit back into the printer.
- e. Close the front cover.





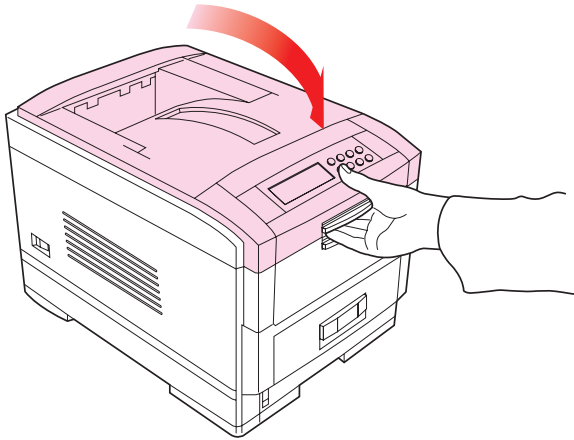
# Paper Jams

## Clearing

### Check additional paper trays

If any optional paper tray(s) are installed:

6. Pull them out. Check that no paper is jammed along the various parts of the exit path.
7. Close the top cover.



# Paper Jams

## Examples of Paper Jams

**Paper jams are frequent**

**More than one sheet feeds at a time**

**Paper curls**

**Paper feeds at an angle**

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer is not horizontal.	Place the printer on a stable, level surface.
The paper is too thin.	Use the correct type of paper. See Specifications.
The paper is moist or affected by static.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.
The paper is creased or wrinkled.	Remove the creased/wrinkled paper from the feed tray.
The paper is not aligned correctly.	Adjust tray or manual feed guides.
Paper doesn't feed.	Correct paper feed selection in the printer driver.

# Paper Jams

## Printer does not print after jam is cleared

Possible cause	Remedy
The top cover was closed <i>before</i> all paper jams were cleared.	Removing a paper jam is not enough. The top cover cannot be closed until all of the paper jams are cleared. <i>Gently</i> open and close the top cover.

# Print Quality Problems

## Stripes: White

The stripes appear in the same direction as the paper was printed (moved through the printer).

Possible cause	Remedy
LED head is dirty.	Clean LED head with lens cleaner or soft tissue. See "Cleaning the LED heads" on page 517.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.
Image drum damaged.	Change image drum. See "Changing the Image Drum" on page 505.

## Stripes: Black

The stripes appear in the same direction as the paper was printed (moved through the printer).

Possible cause	Remedy
Image drum is damaged.	Replace image drum. "Changing the Image Drum" on page 505.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.
Periodic black lateral lines or spots.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 44 - 94 mm, the image drum (green tube) is damaged or dirty. If damaged, replace the image drum cartridge. If dirty, wipe the image drum gently with soft tissue. If this does not work, replace the image drum.</li><li>• If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 113 mm, the fuser roller is damaged. Change the fuser unit. See "Changing the Fuser" on page 514.</li></ul>
The image drum has been exposed to light.	Remove the image drum from the printer and store it in a dark place for several hours. If this does not work, replace the image drum.

# Print Quality Problems

## Blurred letter edges

Possible cause	Remedy
LED is dirty.	Clean LED with lens cleaner or soft tissue. See "Cleaning the LED heads" on page 517.
Cannot print desired color because toner is low.	Replace toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.
Black formation method does not match application.	Open the printer driver and set black formation to CMYK. See "Printing Black" on page 41.

# Print Quality Problems

## Faded Output

### Streaks

Possible cause	Remedy
LED head is dirty.	Clean LED head with lens cleaner or soft tissue. See "Cleaning the LED heads" on page 517.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.
Paper is unsuitable for printer.	Use recommended paper. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.

## Faded Output

### Random Patches

Possible cause	Remedy
The paper is moist.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.

## Faded Output

### Print

Possible cause	Remedy
The toner cartridge is incorrectly installed.	Reinstall the toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.
The paper is moist.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.
Paper is unsuitable for printer.	Use recommended paper. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.

# Print Quality Problems

## Shading on unprinted sections

Possible cause	Remedy
Paper has been affected by static electricity.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.
Paper is too thick.	Use recommended paper. See Paper (Media) : "Recommendations" on page 74.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge. See "Changing the Toner Cartridge" on page 498.

## Toner rubs off the output

Possible cause	Remedy
Media Weight and Media Type settings may not be appropriate.	Set the value of media weight to the next heaviest one. See Paper (Media) : "Weight and Type" on page 70
Packing materials were left on the fuser when it was installed.	<b>Careful!</b> Fuser may be <b>HOT!</b> Open the top cover and check to be sure that all the packing materials were removed from the fuser. To remove the fuser, see "Changing the Fuser" on page 514.

## Output is garbled or incorrect

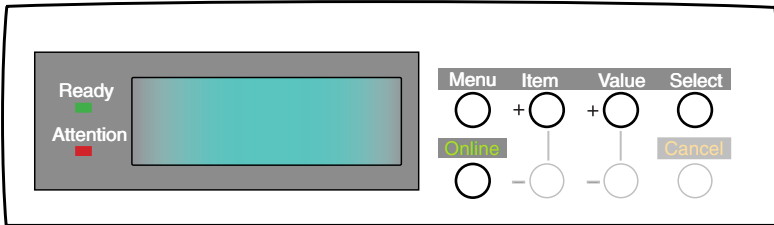
Possible cause	Remedy
Possible mismatch on parallel connection between computer and printer.	Change parallel transmission mode. See "Parallel Interface Problems" on page 544.

# Parallel Interface Problems

## Parallel Transmission Mode

The parallel port supports IEEE-1284 and ECP mode. If your computer's parallel port is not compatible with one of these modes, the printer may not print at all or it may print corrupted data.

To correct for this, enter the printer's Parallel Menu and change the ECP setting to Disable.



1. Press MENU until **PARALLEL MENU** displays
1. Press SELECT.
2. Press ITEM (either + or -) until **ECP** displays.
3. Press VALUE (either + or -) until **DISABLE** displays.
4. Press SELECT.  
*An asterisk (\*) appears to the right of the selected setting.*
5. Press ONLINE. The printer goes online. **ONLINE** displays.



# Parallel Interface Problems

## Cannot configure for parallel connection

### Windows only

Possible cause	Remedy
The computer does not support bi-directional parallel interface.	There is no solution for this problem. You must use a computer that supports a bi-directional parallel interface.
Parallel cable does not meet specifications.	Use a bi-directional parallel cable that meets the IEEE 1284–1994 specifications.
The interface is disabled.	Check that the parallel interface is set to enable.
Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.	Configure again from the beginning.
Parallel cable is disconnected or faulty.	Reconnect or try another cable.
A converter, buffer or extension cable is being used.	Test by connecting printer and computer directly.

# Parallel Interface Problems

## Output is garbled or incorrect.

### Windows only

Possible cause	Remedy
Possible mismatch on parallel connection between computer and printer.	Change parallel transmission mode (see Parallel Transmission Mode above).

# USB Problems

## Cannot configure for USB connection

### NOTE

- **Windows 95 and NT 4.0 do not support USB.**
- **Windows 98 upgraded from Windows 95 may not support USB.**
- **Windows 98 original installation and Windows Me, 2000, and XP all support USB.**

Possible cause	Remedy
Computer does not support USB interface.	Check if there is a USB controller in the Windows device manager.
USB cable does not meet specifications.	Use USB cable to specification Ver.1.1.1.
Interface is disabled.	Check that USB interface is set to Enable.
Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.	Configure again from the beginning.
USB cable is disconnected or faulty.	Reconnect or try another cable.
A USB hub is being used.	The printer cannot be used with a USB hub. Connect the printer and computer directly.

# USB Problems

## Cannot print

- LPT WRITE ERROR is displayed (Windows only).
- PRNUSBX WRITE ERROR is displayed.

Possible cause	Remedy
Interface is disabled. <b>(Windows only)</b>	In the printer menu settings, enable Parallel or USB interface. See “Parallel Menu” on page 109 or “Parallel Menu” on page 109 <b>(Windows only)</b>
Printer is switched OFF.	Switch ON.
Printer interface cable is disconnected.	Reconnect the printer interface cable.
A converter, buffer, extension cable or USB hub is being used.	Test by connecting the printer and computer directly.
Printer driver output port is incorrect.	Set correct output port to which the printer interface cable is connected.
Printer is not selected in the printer driver.	Select the printer or set to default printer.
Incorrect printer driver is being used.	Delete this printer driver and install correct printer driver.

# Application Error

or

## General Protection Fault

Possible cause	Remedy
Application is not suitable for Windows version. <b>(Windows only)</b>	Upgrade the application. <b>(Windows only)</b>
Memory is insufficient for number of applications running.	Close all other applications.
Print file is corrupted.	Correct or recreate the file.
Memory is insufficient for application.	Increase computer's memory. See "Memory (Additional)" on page 555
Insufficient free space on hard disk.	Delete unnecessary files.
Printer driver is incorrectly configured.	Correctly configure printer driver.

# Paper Size Change request

Possible cause	Remedy
Paper loaded in tray is different size from that formatted in software application.	Either change paper in tray to match size formatted in application and press ONLINE to continue, or Continue printing on existing paper by pressing ONLINE.

## Printer does not go online

Possible cause	Remedy
Bad connection	Turn off the printer. Disconnect the power cable. Reconnect power cable. Turn on the printer. If this does not clear the fault, call for service.

## Printer makes a strange noise

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer is not horizontal.	Place the printer on a stable, level surface.
There are scraps of paper or other foreign matter inside the printer.	Check the inside of the printer and remove any such objects.
The top cover is not firmly shut.	Press the left and right sides of the top cover.

## Printer takes a long time to start printing

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer has to warm up returning from power save mode.	In the printer menu settings, set power save to a higher value to increase the length of time before entering power save mode. See "POWER SAVE Mode" on page 57.
The printer is cleaning the image drum. This helps ensure good print quality. The cleaning process takes time.	Wait until this process has been completed.
The printer is adjusting the temperature of the fuser. This takes time.	Wait until this process has been completed.
The printer is processing data from another interface.	Wait until this data is processed.



## Printing is slow

Possible cause	Remedy
Print processing is carried out by the computer.	Use a computer with a faster processor.
Print resolution is set high.	Set lower print resolution in the printer driver.
Data is too complex.	Simplify data.

## Printing does not start

Possible cause	Remedy
Printer error	Check the control panel. If an error message is displayed, correct the problem.

## Printing cancels

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer interface cable is faulty.	Replace the printer interface cable.
The time out setting is too short.	Reset time out to a higher value. See Manual Timeout and Wait Timeout items of the "System Configuration Menu" on page 97.

# Accessories

Depending on the configuration of your printer, you may wish to add one or more of the following options as your needs evolve:

- Memory (see page 555)
- Hard Disk Drive (see page 562)
- Duplex Unit (see page 566)
- Paper Trays (see page 567)

# Memory (Additional)

## When to Install

Adding memory increases the printer's capacity to process complex data. You should add memory if:

- you use duplex printing
- error messages appear when printing complex data.
- you run graphic-intensive applications on Networks.

## Available Amounts

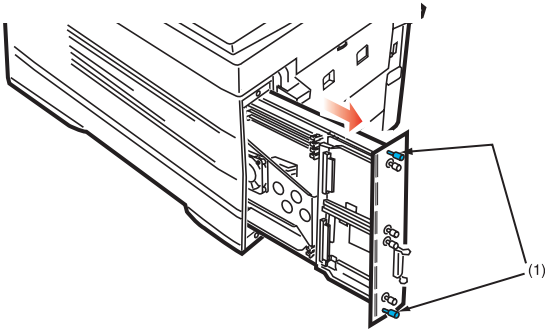
Additional Memory is available in modules of:

- 64Mb
- 128Mb
- 256Mb

# Memory

## How to Install

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.
3. Loosen the two screws (1) and remove the main board.



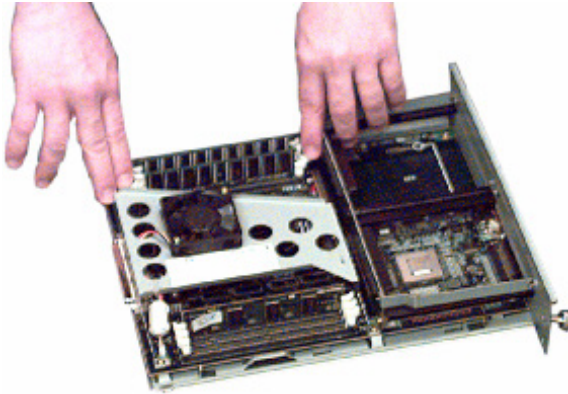
To insert the memory modules into the slots:

### **CAUTION!**

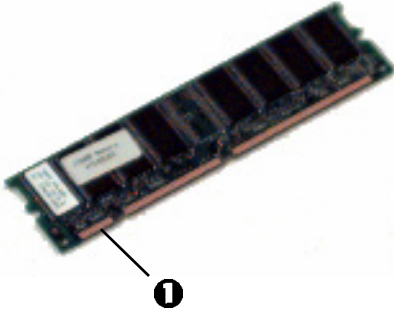
If you are installing three 256 MB modules (the maximum amount of memory), the memory modules that were originally installed *must* be removed.

The printer may not operate correctly if the modules are not firmly seated.

4. Push out the white tabs at either end of the socket.
5. Lift out the board.



6. Align the module with the narrow strip (1) on its metallic contact edge to the right (toward the slot identifier numbers) of the control board.



7. Carefully insert the module in the socket, placing the ends into the slot in the lock tabs. Press down firmly, until you feel the board engage the connector, then make sure the white tabs come up to lock the module in place.



8. Replace the main board and secure it with the two screws.
9. Connect the printer interface cable and power cable.
10. Turn on the printer.

### **NOTE**

**SERVICE CALL/034 may appear on the printer's display.**

**If it does:**

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Remove the main board.
3. Make sure the memory modules are correctly installed.
4. Replace the main board.
5. Turn on the printer.
6. If **SERVICE CALL/034** appears, repeat the above steps.



7. Print a MenuMap.

To print the MenuMap:

- a. Press MENU twice. **INFORMATION MENU** displays.
  - b. Press SELECT. **PRINT MENU MAP** displays.
  - c. Press SELECT. The Menu Map prints.
8. Check the Total Memory Size (shown at the top of the MenuMap). It should match the memory now installed in the printer. If it doesn't:
- a. Turn the printer off.
  - b. Remove the main board.
  - c. Make sure that all of the modules are *firmly seated* in their connectors.

For Windows *only*:

9. In the printer driver(s), change the installed memory to match the new value:
- For Windows XP: see page 121
  - For Windows 2000: see page 216
  - For Windows Me/98/95: see page 312
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 403

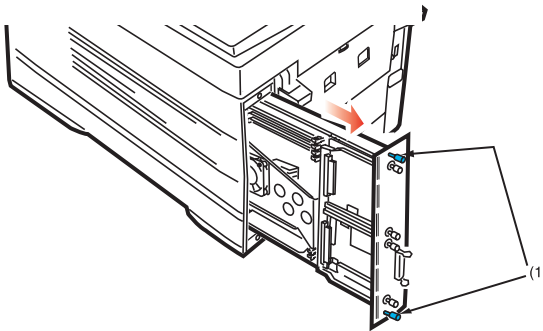
## Hard Disk Drive

The optional internal hard disk drive is used to store documents for:

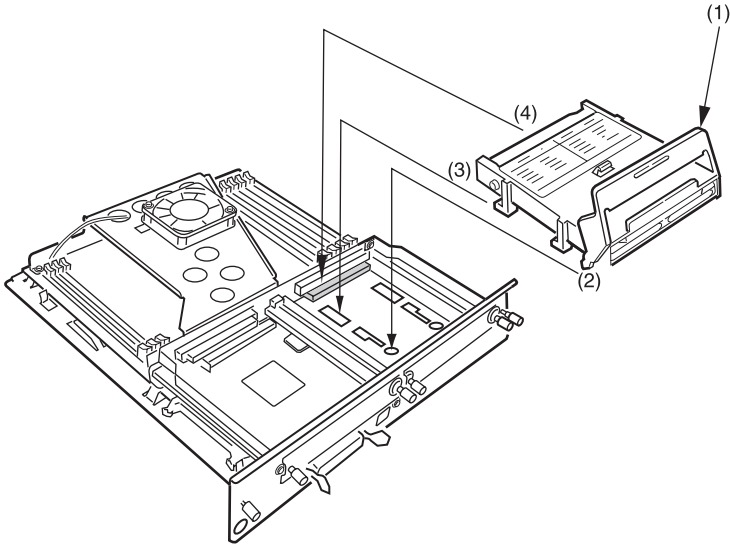
- proof and print
- password or secure printing

### Installation

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.
3. Loosen the two screws (1) and remove the main board.



4. Hold the hard disk drive by the locking handle (1).
5. Insert the handle locating lugs (2) and four locating feet (3) into the holes in the main board making sure the hard disk connector (4) starts to engage with the socket on the control board.
6. *Gently* push down on the locking handle (1) making sure the hard disk moves forward and fully engages with the socket.



7. Replace the main board and secure it with the two screws.
8. Connect the printer interface cable and power cable.
9. Turn on the printer.

10. Print a MenuMap.  
To print the MenuMap:
  - a. Press MENU twice. **INFORMATION MENU** displays.
  - b. Press SELECT. **PRINT MENU MAP** displays.
  - c. Press SELECT. The Menu Map prints.
11. Check that the HDD appears at the top of the MenuMap.  
If it doesn't,
  - a. Turn the printer off
  - b. Remove the main board
  - c. Reseat the hard disk drive.
  - d. Turn on the printer
  - e. Print the MenuMap.
12. After installing the hard disk drive, the printer automatically initializes to include the option.

#### **NOTE**

- **When initializing the hard disk, any fonts, overlays or print jobs that have been acknowledged are erased.**
- **The Storage Device Manager can also be used to initialize the hard disk after installation. Please refer to the User Guide for the Storage Device Manager.**

For Windows *only*:

13. In the printer driver(s), change the installed memory to match the new value:
  - For Windows XP: see page 122
  - For Windows 2000: see page 217
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 314
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 404

# Hard Disk Drive

## Initialize Automatically

After the hard disk drive is installed, the printer automatically initializes (configures) to include this option.

You can also manually initialize the HDD.

## Initialize Manually

### NOTE

- When initializing the hard disk, any fonts, overlays or print jobs that have been stored are erased.
- You can also use Storage Device Manager to initialize the hard disk. For more information, please refer to the User Guide for the Storage Device Manager.

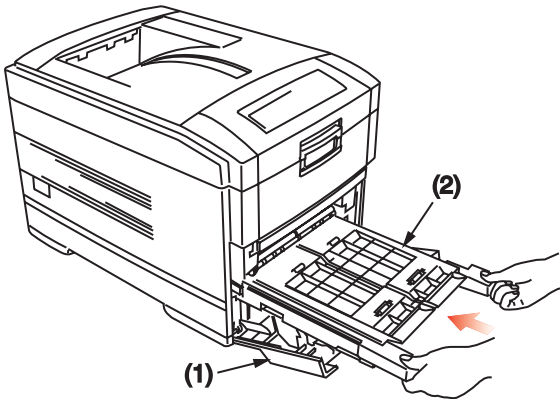
1. Press MENU until **DISK MAINTENANCE** displays.
2. Press SELECT.
3. Press ITEM (either + or –) until **HDD INITIALIZE** displays.
4. Press the SELECT button.
5. Press the ITEM button to shut down the printer.
6. Turn on the printer.

The printer has to be turned off and on again to initialize the hard disk before use.

# Duplex Unit

## Installation

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Disconnect the power cable.



3. Open the front cover (1).
4. Insert the duplex unit (2) into the printer.  
Engage the sides of the duplex unit in the slots in the printer.
5. *Gently* slide the duplex unit (2) fully into the printer.
6. Close the front cover (1).
7. Connect the power cable
8. Turn on the printer.
9. The printer automatically configures to include this option.

For Windows *only*:

10. In the printer driver(s), change the installed memory to match the new value:
  - For Windows XP: see page 126
  - For Windows 2000: see page 221
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 316
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 408

## Paper Trays

Two additional paper trays can be installed.

When combined with the standard paper tray, paper capacity increases to approximately 1590 sheets.

### Installation

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.

### **WARNING!**

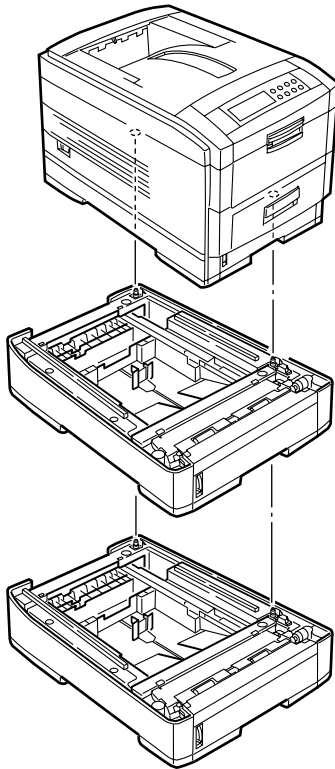
*The printer weighs 106 lbs. (48 kg). 2 people are required to lift the printer safely and prevent any personal injury.*

### **NOTE**

**If installing both additional paper trays:**

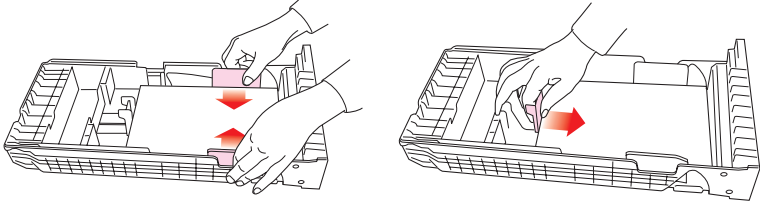
**Put the two additional paper trays together as one unit *first*.  
Then install the printer on top of the two additional paper trays.**

3. Move the printer away from its location.
4. Position the additional paper tray(s) where you want the printer to go.
5. Lower the printer *gently* on to the additional paper tray(s)
6. Align the holes and connection socket on the base of the printer with the locating pegs and connector on the additional paper tray unit.

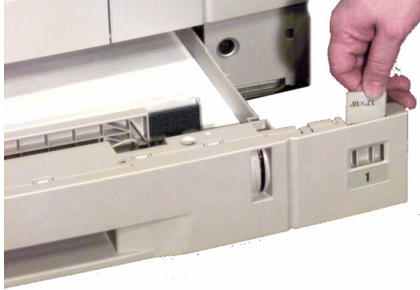




7. Load paper in each tray. Use the same procedure you use for loading paper in Tray 1. See “Loading Paper” on page 42.



8. Fold the tray media size identifier sheet to expose the appropriate media size. Insert it in the holder at the right end of the tray. The label is supplied with the optional tray.



9. Place the appropriate self-adhesive tray number identifier label (2 or 3) on the lower rectangle at the right side of the tray. The label is supplied with the optional tray.



10. Connect the printer interface cable and power cable.
11. Turn on the printer.
12. Print a Menu Map.  
To print the MenuMap:
  - a. Press MENU twice. **INFORMATION MENU** displays.
  - b. Press SELECT. **PRINT MENU MAP** displays.
  - c. Press SELECT. The Menu Map prints.
13. Check that TRAY 2 (and TRAY 3 if installed) appear under MEDIA MENU.
14. The printer automatically configures to include this option.

For Windows *only*:

15. In the printer driver(s), change the installed memory to match the new value:
  - For Windows XP: see page 124
  - For Windows 2000: see page 219
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 315
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 406

# Specifications

<b>Print method</b>	LED exposed light source electronic photographic memory
<b>Resolution</b>	ES2426n - 600 x 1200dpi ES2426dn - 600 x 1200dpi ES2426e - 1200 x 1200dpi
<b>Colors</b>	Cyan, magenta, yellow, black (CMYK)
<b>CPU</b>	Power PC 750 processor, 32 bit RISC CPU, 500 MHz, 64 bit
<b>Memory</b>	ES2426n, ES2426dn - 128 Mb standard ES2426e - 256 Mb standard (Up to 1 Gb max with optional memory modules)
<b>Print language</b>	PostScript3, PCL5c
<b>Internal font</b>	PostScript 3, PCL5c fonts
<b>Print Start</b>	First print time: 8 sec (mono), 9 sec (color)
<b>Parallel Interface</b>	IEEE Std 1284-1994 parallel <i>Connection:</i> 36-pin receptacle <i>Cable:</i> IEEE Std 1284-1994 compatible cable of up to 1.8 meters <i>Transmission Mode:</i> Compatible, Nibble mode ECP <i>Interface Level:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Low +0.0 – 0.8V</li><li>• High +2.4 – 5.0V</li></ul>
<b>Universal Serial Bus (USB) interface</b>	USB specification Version 1.1 <i>Connection:</i> USB Type B <i>Cable:</i> USB specification Version 1.1 cable (shielded) <i>Transmission Mode:</i> Full speed (12 Mbps + 0.25% maximum)

<b>Power control</b>	Self-powered device
<b>Network</b>	100BASE-TX/10BASE-T (option)
<b>Print speed in pages per minute (ppm)</b> [Print speed varies with paper size, media weight and paper feed.]	Color: 24 ppm Mono: 26 ppm Duplex color: 13 ppm
<b>Media size</b> <b>Trays 1, 2, 3</b>	Letter, Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13, Executive A4, A5, B5 A6: <i>Tray 1 only</i>
<b>Media size</b> <b>MP tray</b>	Letter, Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13, Executive A4, A5, A6, B5 Envelopes: C5, DL, Com-9, Com-10, Monarch Custom (up to 1200 mm length)
<b>Media weight</b>	<i>Trays 1 to 5:</i> 20 to 47 lb. US Bond (75 to 177 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) <i>Multi-purpose tray:</i> 17 to 54 lb. US Bond—up to 113 lb. Index—(64 to 203 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) <i>Duplex unit:</i> 20 to 28-lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Paper capacity (depending on paper weight)</b>	Paper tray: 530 sheets approx. Manual feed: 100 sheets approx.
<b>Exit capacity (depending on paper weight)</b>	Face up: 100 sheets approx. Face down: 500 sheets approx.
<b>Print margin</b>	¼-inch (6.4 mm) minimum
<b>Print accuracy</b>	<i>Start:</i> ±2 mm <i>Paper skew:</i> ±1 mm per 100 mm <i>Image expansion/compression:</i> ±1 mm per 100 mm
<b>Startup time</b>	Less than 3 min. from powering up (25°C)

<b>Power supply</b>	120 (115-127) volts AC, 60 Hz $\pm$ 2 Hz <i>OR</i> 230 (198-264) volts AC, 50 Hz $\pm$ 2 Hz
<b>Power consumption</b>	Operating: 1350 max.; 500 W average (25°C) Standby: 1200 max.; 150 W average (25°C) Power saving: 45 W max.
<b>Operating environment</b>	<i>Operating:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 50 to 90°F (10 to 32°C)</li> <li>• 20 to 80% RH</li> </ul> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">maximum wet bulb temperature 77°F (25°C)</p> <i>For maximum print quality</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 62.6 to 80.6°F (17 to 27°C)</li> <li>• 50 to 70% RH</li> </ul> <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 32 to 110°F (0 to 43°C)</li> <li>• 10 to 90% RH</li> </ul> <i>Storage</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• -14 to 110°F (-10 to 43°C)</li> <li>• 10 to 90% RH</li> </ul>
<b>Product life</b>	5 years or 600,000 sheets
<b>Dimensions</b>	<i>Width:</i> 16.9 inches (430 mm) <i>Depth:</i> 24.4 inches (620 mm) <i>Height:</i> 16.9 inches (430 mm)
<b>Weight</b>	106 lbs. (48 kg) not including optional accessories and paper

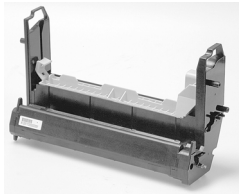
# Consumables

## Toner



<b>Description</b>	<b>Order No.</b>
Black Toner .....	52114901
Cyan Toner .....	52114902
Magenta Toner.....	52114903
Yellow Toner .....	52114904

## Drums



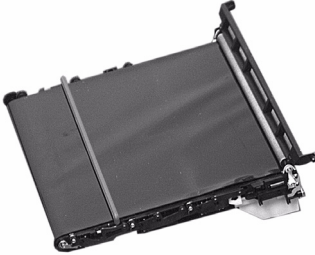
<b>Description</b>	<b>Order No.</b>
Black Image Drum .....	56117901
Cyan Image Drum.....	56117902
Magenta Image Drum .....	56117903
Yellow Image Drum.....	56117904

# Fuser Units



Description	Order No.
Fuser Unit, 120V .....	41945601
Fuser Unit, 230V .....	41945607

# Transfer Belt



Description	Order No.
Transfer belt.....	41945501



# OKI® Print Media

## OKI SynFlex™

Waterproof and Tear proof



White, 8½ x 11". 100 sheets ..... **Order No.** 52205901

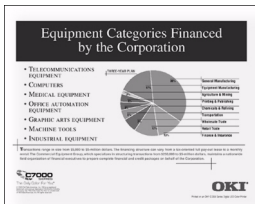
## OKI Bright White Proofing Paper

32-lb. US Bond, 8½ x 11". 500 sheets ..... **Order No.** 52206101

## OKI Premium Card Stock

White, 60 lb. Cover, 8½ x 11". 250 sheets ..... **Order No.** 52205601  
 White, 90 lb. Index, 8½ x 11". 250 sheets ..... 52205602  
 White, 110 lb. Index, 8½ x 11". 250 sheets ..... 52205603

## OKI Premium Color Transparencies



8½ x 11". 50 sheets ..... **Order No.** 52205701

# OKI® Print Media (continued)

## OKI Premium Envelopes

Security Tint, Redi-Strip Seal



	<b>Order No.</b>
White, COM-10. Box 100 .....	52206301
White, COM-10. Box 500 .....	52206302

# Factory Default Settings

## Print Menu

Item	Factory default setting
COPIES	1
DUPLEX	OFF
BINDING	LONG EDGE
PAPER FEED	TRAY1
AUTO TRAY SWITCH	ON
TRAY SEQUENCE	DOWN
MP TRAY USAGE	FEED WHEN MISMATCHING
MEDIA CHECK	ENABLE
TRANSPARENCY DETECT	AUTO
RESOLUTION	
ES2426n	600 X 1200 dpi
ES2426dn	600 X 1200 dpi
ES2426e	FAST 1200 dpi
TONER SAVE MODE	OFF
MONO-PRINT SPEED	AUTO
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT
LINE PER PAGE	60
EDIT SIZE	CASSETTE SIZE

# Media Menu

Item	Factory default setting
TRAY1 MEDIATYPE:	PLAIN
TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY2 MEDIATYPE:	PLAIN
TRAY2 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY3 MEDIATYPE:	PLAIN
TRAY3 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
MPP TRAY PAPERSIZE	LETTER
MP TRAY MEDIA	PLAIN
MP TRAY MEDIWEIGHT	AUTO
UNIT OF MEASURE	INCH
X DIMENSION	8.5 INCH
Y DIMENSION	11 INCH

## Color Menu

Item	Factory default setting
AUTO DENSITY MODE	AUTO
ADJUST DENSITY	[EXECUTE]
COLOR TUNING	[PRINT PATTERN]
CYAN HIGH-LIGHT	0
CYAN MID-TONE	0
CAN DARK	0
MAGENTA HIGH-LIGHT	0
MAGENTA MID-TONE	0
MAGENTA DARK	0
YELLOW HIGH-LIGHT	0
YELLOW MID-TONE	0
YELLOW DARK	0
BLACK HIGH-LIGHT	0
BLACK MID-TONE	0
BLACK DARK	0
CYAN DARKNESS	0
MAGENTA DARKNESS	0
YELLOW DARKNESS	0
BLACK DARKNESS	0
ADJUST REGISTRATION	[EXECUTE]
CYAN REG FINE ADJUST	0
MAGENTA REG FINE ADJUST	0
YELLOW REG FINE ADJUST	0
INK SIMULATION	OFF
INK LIMIT	DARK
CMY100% density	DISABLE

# System Configuration Menu

Item	Factory default setting
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME	60 mins.
USB PS-PROTOCOL	RAW
NETWORK PS-PROTOCOL	RAW
PERSONALITY	AUTO EMULATION
CLEARABLE WARNING	ON
AUTO CONTINUE	OFF
MANUAL TIMEOUT	60 sec.
WAIT TIMEOUT	40 sec.
LOW TONER	CONTINUE
JAM RECOVERY	ON
ERROR REPORT	OFF
LANGUAGE	ENGLISH

## PCL Emulation Menu

Item	Factory default setting
FONT SOURCE	RESIDENT
FONT No.	I000
FONT PITCH	10.00 cpi
FONT HEIGHT	12.00 point
SYMBOL SET	PC-8
A4 PRINT WIDTH	78 column
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LF FUNCTION	LF
PRINT MARGIN	NORMAL
TRUE BLACK	OFF
PEN WIDTH ADJUST	ON

## PPR Emulation Menu

Item	Factory default setting
CHARACTER PITCH	10 cpi
FONT CONDENSE	10 cpi to 12 cpi
CHARACTER SET	SET - 2
SYMBOL SET	IBM-437
LETTER O STYLE	DISABLE
ZERO CHARACTER	NORMAL
LINE PITCH	6 lpi
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LF FUNCTION	LR
LINE LENGTH	80 column
FORM LENGTH	11 inches
TOF POSITION	0.0 inch
LEFT MARGIN	0.0 inch
FIT TO LETTER	ENABLE
TEXT HEIGHT	SAME



## FX Emulation Menu

Item	Factory default setting
CHARACTER PITCH	10 cpi
CHARACTER SET	SET - 2
SYMBOL SET	IBM-437
LETTER 0 STYLE	DISABLE
ZERO CHARACTER	NORMAL
LINE PITCH	6 lpi
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LINE LENGTH	80 column
FORM LENGTH	11 inch
TOF POSITION	0.0 inch
LEFT MARGIN	0.0 inch
FIT TO LETTER	ENABLE

## Parallel Menu

Item	Factory default setting
PARALLEL	ENABLE
BI-DIRECTION	ENABLE
ECP	ENABLE
ACK WIDTH	NARROW
ACK/BUSY TIMING	ACK-IN-BUSY
I-PRIME	DISABLE
OFFLINE RECEIVE	DISABLE

## USB Menu

Item	Factory default setting
USB	ENABLE
SOFT RESET	DISABLE
OFFLINE RECEIVE	DISABLE

# Network Menu

Item	Factory default setting
TCP/IP	ENABLE
NETWARE	ENABLE
ETHERTALK	ENABLE
NETBEUI	ENABLE
FRAME TYPE	AUTO
DHCP/BOOTP	ENABLE
RARP	DISABLE
IP ADDRESS	0.0.0.0
SUBNET MASK	0.0.0.0
GATEWAY ADDRESS	0.0.0.0
PRINT SETTINGS	OFF
INITIALIZE	OFF

# Memory Menu

Item	Factory default setting
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE	AUTO
RESOURCE SAVE	OFF
FLASH INITIALIZE	EXECUTE
PS FLASH RESIZE	0.5MB

# Disk Maintenance Menu

Item	Factory default setting
PARTITION #1	PCL
PARTITION #2	COMMON
PARTITION #3	PS

# System Adjust Menu

Item	Factory default setting
X ADJUST	0.0 mm
Y ADJUST	0.0 mm
DUPLEX X ADJUST	0.0 mm
DUPLEX Y ADJUST	0.0 mm
TRAY1 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY2 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY3 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
PCL TRAY2 ID#	5
PCL TRAY3 ID#	20
PCL MP TRAY ID#	4
HEX DUMP	EXECUTE

# Maintenance Menu

Item	Factory default setting
EEPROM RESET	EXECUTE
POWER SAVE	ENABLE
PAPER BLACK SETTING	0
PAPER COLOR SETTING	0
TRANSPR BLACK SETTING	0
TRANSPR COLOR SETTING	0



# Color Swatch Utility

## General Information

The Color Swatch Utility allows you to

- print color samples (swatches) on your color printer.
- create custom color swatches

The swatches are used with your software program to select and reproduce color accurately.

The swatches represent selected samples of the printer's color palette. Use the swatches to find the desired colors for your printed documents.

Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

### NOTE

- **The Swatch Utility does not guarantee that the printer prints the same color as displayed on your monitor. Consider the displayed color as a reference.**
- **The printer may not be able to print the exact color that you desire.**
- **Your software may not be able to match colors using the swatch information. You may need to use other matching methods.**
- **The color swatch samples do not show all the colors your printer can print.**
- **Other factors influence how you see color: the color and finish of the paper, ambient light, even the color surrounding the one you are looking at.**

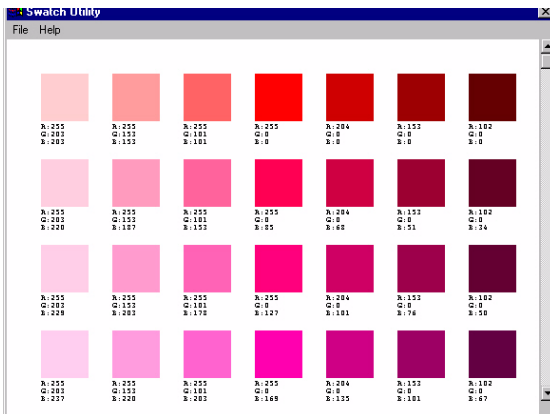
# Color Swatch Utility

## Printing Color Swatches

### NOTE

- The color swatch samples do not show all the colors your printer can print.
- The Swatch Utility does not guarantee that the printer prints the same color as displayed on your monitor. Consider the displayed color as a reference.
- The printer may not be able to print the exact color that you desire.

1. Install the utility from CD1 using the OKI Menu Installer (Windows).
2. Click **Start** → **Programs** → **Color Swatch** → **Color Swatch Utility**.
3. A swatch page displays, showing commonly used colors.
4. Select print to print sample pages.



5. Use the color blocks to pick the specific colors that you want to appear in your printed document.

Each color block, or sample, is identified with information your software package needs to reproduce that color accurately.

The numbers under each block specify the amounts of the primary colors—red (R), green (G), and blue (B)—that mix to form each particular shade.

The amounts are given as a numerical value between 0 and 255.

# Color Swatch Utility

## Creating Custom Swatch Colors

### NOTE

- The Swatch Utility does not guarantee that the printer prints the same color as displayed on your monitor. Consider the displayed color as a reference.
- The printer may not be able to print the exact color that you desire.

If you don't find your desired color, you can create or customize colors:

1. Select **Custom Swatch** from the **File** menu.
2. On the pop-up window, there are 3 slide bars that allow you to customize swatches:
  - **Hue** bar changes the hue of the swatches, for example, red to green or blue to yellow.
  - **Saturation** bar changes vividness.
  - **Lightness** bar changes darkness.
3. Adjust the bars until you see the desired color.  
Color variations are created to help you find the best match.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Print the custom swatch page.
6. Repeat these steps until you find the desired printed color.
7. For additional information, see the Swatch Utility Read-me file located in the Windows Programs list.  
The file includes:
  - Applying Color Value in your Application
  - Setting Monitor Color

# PDF Direct Print Utility

## General Information

PDF Direct Print allows you to send a selected PDF file directly to the printer.

This is faster and easier than using Adobe Acrobat separately before printing.

PDF Direct Print also lets you set paper source, copies, 2-sided printing, print page range and other settings.

Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

## Requirements for Use

- An optional built-in hard disk must be installed.
- Supports version PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0) or below.
- A font environment on your system.

### NOTE

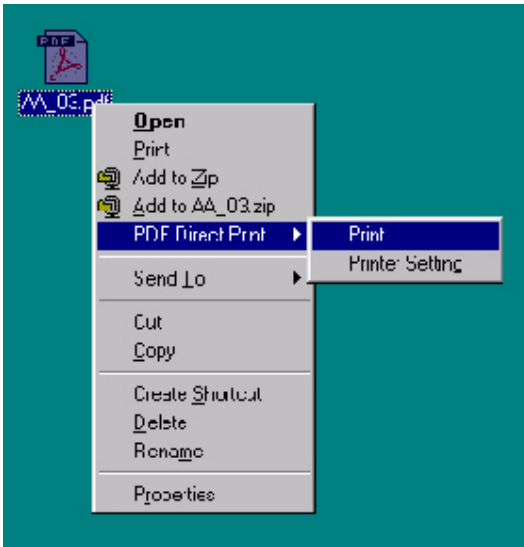
**Some PDF files may not be able to print correctly.**

# Using

## NOTE

The PDF Direct Print Utility works with version 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0) or below PDF files.

1. Right-click on  
the file you want to print in Windows Explorer  
*or*  
the file icon on the Desktop.
2. Click **PDF Direct Print**
3. Click **Print**.



4. The **Start** screen appears.

It allows you to change the settings of the following features:

- Select Print
- Paper Source
- Copies
- 2-sided printing
- Binding
- Collate
- Fit to page
- Print page range
- Restore Default
- Save Settings
- Print
- Cancel
- Help
- About

5. If “ERROR:PDF to PS conversion failed” displays, the file contains an embedded font not installed on the system.

Using Acrobat, delete the text that is embedded, or unembed the embedded font.

In Acrobat, select **Tool** → **Touchup** → **Text attribute**.

Remove the checkmark in the **Embed** box.

6. For additional information, see the PDF Print Direct **Help** file in the PDF Direct Print Utility.

# Storage Device Manager for Windows

## General Information

This Utility lets you manage the printer's hard disk and flash memory, and download fonts, macros and firmware.

Storage Device Manager (SDM) provides a means of managing

- The printer's internal hard disk drive (optional): 20 GB [partitioned as Common, PCL and PostScript].
- The printer's flash memory (2 MB).
- Using the software improves the internal performance of the printer and provides a tool for downloading files from the computer to the printer's memory, including
  - Overlays such as logos, addresses, etc.
  - Graphic files
  - Forms such as letterheads, invoices, etc.

Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

### NOTE

**Storage Device Manager requires Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.0 or higher to run.**

**The printer's internal hard drive does not communicate directly back to the Storage Device Manager software.**

**Any error messages appear on the printer display.**

**If things seems to be "stuck," go to the printer and check the display.**



## **Summary of Functions**

- Create or modify a project.
- Download files to a printer.
- Add or remove printers being administered.
- Reboot the printer.
- Manage the Proof & Print and Secure Print spooler queues on the internal hard drive.
- Delete files from the internal hard disk or from the flash memory.
- View the status, configuration and variables for a printer.
- Print the demo page, PCL fonts list, or PostScript font list from a printer.
- Print one or more PCL format macros or PostScript forms (Overlays).

## **Installation**

Install Storage Device Manager from CD1 Using the Oki Menu Installer.

## Getting Help

### NOTE

The printer's internal hard drive does not communicate directly back to the Storage Device Manager software. Any error messages appear on the printer display. If things seems to be "stuck," go to the printer and check the display.

The Oki Storage Device Manager software contains an online Help system.

To access it from the main Storage Device Manager screen, click **Help Topics** from the **Help** pull-down menu.

To access it from other Storage Device Manager screens, click the **Help** button.

### NOTE

Storage Device Manager requires Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.0 or higher to run.

## **Network Administrator Functions**

On network systems, the Network Administrator

- oversees the Storage Device Manager software
- uses Storage Device Manager to manage and monitor the printer's internal hard disk and flash memory

The Administrator's Functions Feature lets you:

- set up the Administrative Password.
- establish 4-digit PIN numbers for each client, using any four numbers from 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).
- reboot the printer.
- delete files (Show Resources is preferable).
- format the internal hard drive.

# Network Administrator Functions

## Notes and Cautions

### NOTES

#### PIN Numbers

Clients can choose their own PIN numbers.

The administrator must know these PINs in order to access client information.

### CAUTION!

#### Deleting Files

With Show Resources, you can browse to the file, click it, click Delete, then click OK to confirm the deletion.

Using Administrator Functions to delete a file requires that you print out a File List, then use the information in the File List to type in the exact path (case sensitive) to the file. The file is deleted without confirmation.

#### Format the Hard Drive

You can also use Storage Device Manager to format the partitions on the printer's hard drive.

**Remember:** this erases the contents of the partition and can cause serious problems.

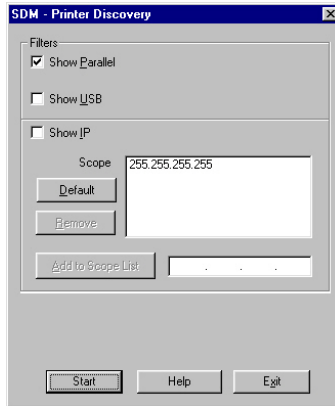
Use Show Resources and HDD Print Jobs to maintain the disk.

# Using

## Opening the Program

1. Click **Start** → **Programs** → **Oki** → **Oki Storage Device Manager** → **Oki Storage Device Manager**.

*The SDM - Printer Discovery dialog box opens.*

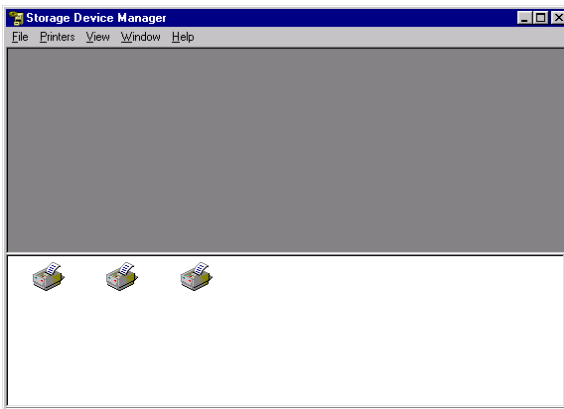


2. Select the appropriate computer connection(s), then click **Start**.

*The printer searches for connected printers and places icons in the window at the bottom of the dialog box.*

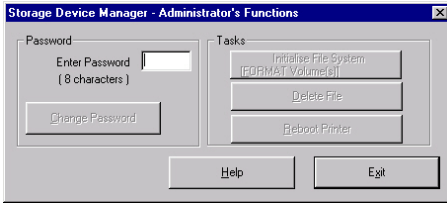
3. Click **Exit**.

*The Storage Device Manager dialog box opens.*



## Setting Up an Administrative Password

1. With the Storage Device Manager program open, click **Administrator Functions** in the **Printers** menu.



### NOTE

**Passwords consist of eight digits, letters or numbers, and are case sensitive.**

2. Type in the default password (p1xs7d0m) under **Enter Password**, then click **Change Password**.
3. Type the 8-digit, alpha-numeric password of your choice under **New Password**.
4. Type the password again under **Confirm New Password**.  
*New Password Accepted appears.*
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Exit** twice.

# Forms

## PostScript

### NOTE

Use PostScript forms if you are not experienced with PCL Macro commands.

- Step 1: Create the Form
- Step 2: Create a Project
- Step 3a: Add Files to the Project
- Step 3b: Delete Files from the Project
- Step 4: Store the Files
- Step 5: Save and Download the Project
- Step 6: Test Print the Form

### Important!

Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.



# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 1: Create the Form

1. Create the document in your software application.
2. Click **File** → **Print** and make sure the Oki PostScript driver is selected.
3. Select **Print to file**.
4. Engage the Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) output option.

#### **Windows Me/98/95:**

- Click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).
- Click the PostScript tab. If it is not already selected, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**.

#### **Windows NT 4.0:**

- Click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).
- Scroll down to **PostScript Options** and click it. Click **PostScript Output Option**. Select **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**.

5. Click **OK**.
6. Print the document to a file using the extension PRN.

# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 2: Create a New Project

1. Open Storage Device Manager.
2. Click **Projects** → **New Project**.  
The Project dialog box opens.
3. Click **Projects** → **Save Project**, enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click **Save**.

# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 3a: Add Files to the Project

1. Click **Projects** → **Add File to Project**.  
*The Open dialog box appears.*
2. Make sure **PRN files (\*.prn)** is selected in the **Files of type** drop-down list.
3. Browse to the folder where the files are saved. Select the files you wish to add to the project. Click **Open**.  
*The Information dialog box appears.*
4. Click **OK**.  
*The files are saved as HST.*
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4 until you have added all the files you wish to add to the Project.

### Step 3b: Delete Files from the Project

#### NOTE

To delete a file from the project, click the file name, then click **Projects** → **Remove File from Project**.

# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 4: Store the Files

#### ***Hard Disk Drive***

If your printer is equipped with an internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager automatically saves the forms to the PostScript partition on the hard drive.

#### ***Flash Memory***

If your printer does not have an internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager automatically stores the forms in the PostScript section of the Flash memory.

To store the forms in the Flash memory instead of on the hard disk drive:

1. Double-click the file name in the Project window.  
*The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.*
2. Under **Volume**, type in %Flash0%, then click **OK**.

# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 5: Save the Project and Download it to the Printer

1. Click **Projects** → **Save Project**.
2. Click **Projects** → **Send Project Files to Printer**.  
*Command Issued appears.*
3. Click **OK**.

# Forms

## PostScript

### Step 6: Test Print the Form

1. With Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click **Printers** → **Test Form**.  
*The Test PostScript Form dialog box appears.*
2. Click the file name for the form you wish to print (you can get this from the File List printout). Click **OK**.  
*Command Issued appears.*
3. Click **OK** and wait for the form to print.

# Forms

## PCL

### **Important!**

Unless you are experienced with PCL macro commands, it is best to stay with the PostScript Forms.

Here are the processes to producing PCL macros:

- Step 1: Create the Form
- Step 2: Create a Project
- Step 3: Convert the Form
- Step 4a: Add Files to the Project
- Step 4b: Delete Files from the Project
- Step 5: Check the Settings and Save the Project
- Step 6: Download the Project
- Step 7: Test Print the Form

# Forms

## PCL

### Important!

Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.

### Step 1: Create the Forms in Your Software Application

1. Create the document in your software application.
2. Click **File** → **Print** and make sure the Oki PCL driver is selected.
3. Print the document to a file using the extension PRN.

### Step 2: Create a New Project

1. Open Storage Device Manager.
2. Click **Projects** → **New Project**.  
*The Project dialog box opens.*
3. Click **Projects** → **Save Project**, enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click **Save**.

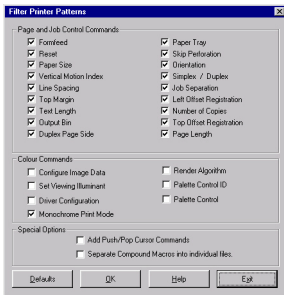


# Forms

## PCL

### Step 3: Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format

1. Click **Projects** → **Filter Macro File**.  
*The Filter Printer Patterns dialog box appears.*



2. Make any adjustments in the settings.

#### **Example**

If you create a black oval in MS Paint, and leave all the color command filters checked, the black oval prints as a black rectangle when the overlay is used.

To maintain the oval shape, turn off (deselect) the “Configure Image Data,” “Palette ID,” and “Palette Control” filters.

3. Click **OK**.  
*The Open dialog box appears.*
4. Make sure **Print spool files (\*.prn)** is selected in the **File of type** drop-down list.

# Forms

## PCL

### Step 3: Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format

5. Under **Look in**, go to the folder where the files are saved and double-click the file name.

*The file is saved as a bin file. Filter File Created appears.*

6. Click **OK**.
7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 until you have converted all the files you wish to add to the project.

# Forms

## PCL

### Step 4a: Add Files to the Project

1. Click **Projects** → **Add File to Project**.  
The Open dialog box appears.
2. Highlight the .bin file you wish to add. Click **Open**.  
*The file name appears in the Project dialog box.*
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until all the files you wish to include in the project appear in the Project dialog box.

### NOTE

An alternate way to add files to the project is:

- 1 **Open either My Computer or Microsoft Explorer.**
- 2 **Browse to the directory where the prn files are stored.**
- 3 **Select the files and drag them into the Project box.**

### Step 4b: Delete Files from the Project

To delete a file from the project:

1. Click the file name.
2. Click **Projects** → **Remove File from Project**.

# Forms

## PCL

### Step 5: Check File Settings and Save the Project

1. To check the settings for the bin files, double-click the file name.

*The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.*

Here you can edit the

- file name
- ID number (the number you need to enter in the printer driver when printing overlays)
- volume:
  - 0: = printer's disk drive PCL partition
  - 1: = printer's disk drive Common partition
  - %disk0%: = printer's disk drive PostScript partition
  - 2: = Flash memory PCL
  - %Flash0% = Flash memory PostScript
- path.

2. Click **OK**.

3. When you're through reviewing the settings, click **Projects** → **Save Project**.

# Forms

## PCL

### Step 6: Download the Project

1. Click **Projects** → **Send Project Files to Printer**.  
*Command Issued appears.*
2. Click **OK**.

# Forms

## PCL

### Step 7: Test Print the Form

1. With Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click **Printers** → **Test Macro**.  
*The Test Macro dialog box appears.*
2. Enter the ID number for the macro file you wish to print.  
You can get this from the File List printout.  
Look under Volume 0.  
  
Example: for 2:OKI.BIN, enter 2
3. Click **OK**.  
*Command Issued appears.*
4. Click **OK** and wait for the macro to print.

# Printing the File List

## Using Storage Device Manager

To print a list of files in the printer's memory:

1. Open Storage Device Manager.
2. Click **Printers** → **Print File Listing**.  
*Command Issued appears.*
3. Click **OK** and wait for the File List to print.

## From the Control (Front) Panel

### NOTE

To print the File List from the control (front) panel:

- Press **MENU** until **INFORMATION MENU** appears.
- Press **ITEM** (either + or -) until **PRINT FILE LIST** appears.
- Press **SELECT**.

# Internal Hard Disk Drive: Maintenance

## Flash Memory: Maintenance

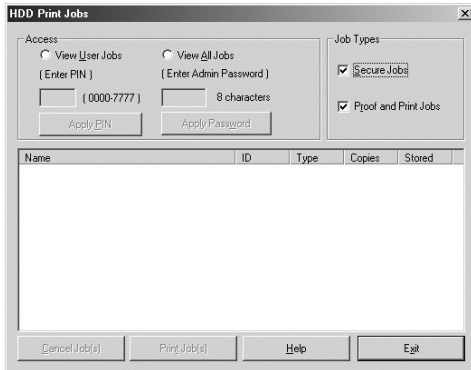
### View and Delete Files

#### ***HDD Print Jobs Feature***

The HDD Print Jobs feature allows you to view and delete the Proof & Print and Secure Print files stored on the printer's internal hard drive.

1. Open Storage Device Manager. Click the icon for the printer whose contents you wish to view.
2. Click **Printers** → **HDD Print Jobs**.

*The HDD Print Jobs dialog box appears.*



3. Under **Job Types**, select **Secure Jobs** to view Secure Print jobs and/or **Proof and Print Jobs** to view Proof & Print jobs.



4. To view the jobs stored for a particular client:
  - a. Select **View User Jobs** under **Access**
  - b. Type in the client's 4-digit User PIN
  - c. Press **Enter**.all stored jobs:
  - a. Select **View All Jobs**
  - b. Type in your Administrator's Password
  - c. Press Enter.
5. Delete the files.

### **Important!**

You are not prompted to confirm the deletion.

- Click **Cancel Job(s)** to delete the files without printing them.
- Click **Print Job(s)** to print the files out before they are automatically deleted.

# Internal Hard Disk Drive: Maintenance

## Flash Memory: Maintenance

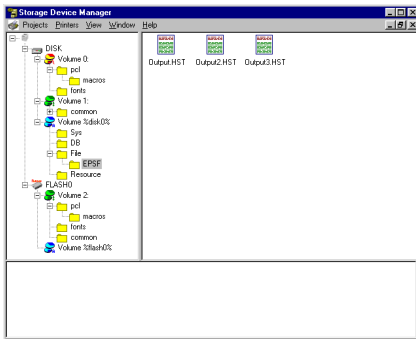
### Delete Files

#### Show Resources Feature

Use the Show Resources feature to delete files from the internal hard drive and flash memory.

1. Open Storage Device Manager. Click the icon for the printer whose contents you wish to view.
2. Click **Printers** → **Show Resources**.

Show\_clr\_C53\_oem.bmp



3. Click the file(s) to be deleted.  
Press Shift to select a span of files.  
Press Ctrl to select additional files).
  - PCL Macro files are under  
Volume 0 (internal hard drive)  
or  
Volume 2 (flash memory)
  - PostScript Forms are under  
Volume &disk0% (internal hard drive)  
or  
%flash0% (flash memory)
4. Click **Printers** → **Delete File(s)**.
5. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

**6.** Close the dialog box.

# Overlays

## What are Overlays?

An overlay is a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored and printed whenever required.

An overlay is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (optional).

An overlay is similar to a watermark. However, an overlay can be much more elaborate than a watermark.

Overlays can

- replace as pre-printed stationery
- add your logo or company address to a document
- create forms.

## When to Use Overlays

Use overlays to print letterheads, forms, or invoices.

Using overlays can reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

## Example of Using Overlays

Use the Storage Device Manager to create and store three files in the printer:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

Use the Overlay feature to place these files into your document.

You can use the files in many different combinations, according to your changing requirements.

# Overlays

## Creating Files for Overlays

The files to be used as overlays must be created, generated, and stored.

Then, other users can use settings in the printer drivers to use the files as overlays in documents.

1. Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead).
2. Use the printer driver to generate a PRN file (print file).
3. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format.
4. Download the storable file to the printer.

# Overlays

## Requirements for Using

### *Read This First*

#### **Important!**

1. An overlay may consist of more than one component file.
2. When the hard disk drive is installed, you *must* use the Shutdown Menu before turning OFF the printer.
3. If your software application has a collate print option, you *must* turn it OFF before you print overlays.
4. You *cannot* use overlays with the:
  - Windows 2000 PostScript driver
  - Macintosh driver
5. The message DISK FULL appears if there isn't enough memory for the data.

#### **Hardware / Software Requirements**

- the Storage Device Manager software must be installed.
- printer internal hard disk drive (Installation is highly recommended)

#### **Required Actions**

Before overlays can be printed, they must be

- created in a software application
- saved as a print file
- downloaded to storage

# Overlays

## Requirements for Using

### *Storage Requirements*

#### *Locations*

Use Storage Device Manager to store the overlays to the printer's:

- hard disk drive
- or
- flash memory

### *Maximum Available Space*

Hard Disk Drive

2 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms

Flash Memory

about 0.5 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms

# Overlays

## Windows 2000 and XP: PCL

### **Defining**

*In Windows 2000, overlays can only be printed using the PCL driver.*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Printing Preferences**.

*The OkiPrinting Preferences dialog box appears.*

3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Click **Define Overlays**.
5. Under **Overlay Name**, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under **ID Value**, enter the ID number for the file saved using the Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
7. In the **Print on Pages** drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select **Custom** and enter specific page numbers under **Custom pages**.
8. Click **Add**, then click **Close**.

*The overlay you defined appears in the Defined overlays list.*

9. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.



# Overlays

## Windows 2000: PCL

### *Printing*

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click **File** → **Print**.  
*The Print dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Under **Defined Overlays**, click any overlays you wish to use.  
To select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names.
5. Click **Add**.  
Each name appears in the **Active overlays** box.

### ***To print a sample of an overlay for review***

1. Under **Defined Overlays**, click the name.
2. Click **Test Print**.

### ***To add more overlays to the list***

1. Click **Define overlays**.
2. In the **Define overlays** dialog box, fill in the appropriate information.
3. Click **Close**.
4. Click **Print using active overlays**.
5. Click **Print**.

# Overlays

## Windows 2000: PCL

### *Editing*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Printing Preferences**.  
*The Oki Printing Preferences dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Click **Define overlays**.  
*The Define overlays dialog box appears.*
5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be edited.
6. Make your changes, then click **Apply**.
7. Click **Close**.
8. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# Overlays

## Windows 2000: PCL

### *Deleting*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Printing Preferences**.  
*The Oki Printing Preferences dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Overlay** tab.
4. Click **Define Overlays**.  
*The Define Overlays dialog box appears.*
5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click **Remove**, then click **Close**.

# Overlays

## Windows Me/98/95: PCL

### *Defining*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Properties**.  
*The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Job Options** tab, click the **Overlay** button.
4. Click **Define overlays**.
5. Under **Overlay Name**, enter a name for the overlay.
6. Under **ID Value**, enter the ID number for the file saved using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout).
7. In the **Print on Pages** drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select **Custom** and enter specific page numbers under **Custom pages**.
8. Click **Add**, then click **Close**.  
*Each overlay you defined appears in the Defined overlay list.*
9. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# Overlays

## Windows Me/98/95: PCL

### *Printing*

1. Open the document in the software application.
2. Click **File** → **Print**.  
*The Print dialog box appears.*
3. Make sure the Oki PCL driver is selected, then click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).  
*The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
4. Click the **Overlay** tab.
5. Under **Defined Overlays**, click any overlays you wish to use.  
To select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names. Click **Add**.  
*The names appear in the Active overlays box.*
  - To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click its name in the **Defined overlays** box, then click **Test Print**.
  - If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click **Define overlays**. In the **Define overlays** dialog box, fill in the appropriate information. Click **Close**.
6. Click **Print using active overlays**. Click **OK** and print the document.

# Overlays

## Windows Me/98/95: PCL

### *Editing Defined*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon.
3. Click **Properties**.  
*The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
4. Click the **Job Options** tab.
5. Click the **Overlay** button.
6. Click **Define overlays**.  
*The Define overlays dialog box appears.*
7. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be edited.
8. Make any changes
9. Click **Apply**.
10. Click **Close**.
11. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# Overlays

## Windows Me/98/95: PCL

### *Deleting*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Properties**.  
*The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Job Options** tab. Click the **Overlay** button.
4. Click **Define overlays**.  
*The Define overlays dialog box appears.*
5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be deleted.
6. Click **Remove**, then **Close**.
7. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# Overlays

## Windows Me/98/95: PostScript

### Defining

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the Oki PostScript printer icon. Click **Properties**.  
*The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
3. Click the **Job Options** tab. Click the **Overlay** button.
4. Set up an Overlay Group: Click **New**.  
*The Define Overlays dialog box appears.*
5. Under **Group Name**, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
6. To select the pages that the overlay prints on,
  - In the **Print on Pages** drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed,  
*or*
  - Select **Custom** and enter specific page numbers under **Custom pages**.
7. Under **Overlay Name**, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it was stored using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout), *including the file extension HST*.  
*Overlay file names are case sensitive.*
8. Click **Add**.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
10. Click **OK**.

*To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 4 to 10 above.*

### Finish

11. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.



# Overlays

## Windows NT: PostScript

### *PostScript*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Right click the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. On the **Job Options** tab, click the **Overlay** button.
4. Click the **New** button.
5. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay. Select the pages where you want the overlay to print.

#### NOTE

The Overlay Name must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

6. Under **Form setting**, in the drop-down list, enter or select a form name. Click **Add**.

#### NOTE

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

7. Click **OK**.
8. To continue to add files to the overlay (if required), repeat steps 5 through 8.
9. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name(s). Click **Add** to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay. To select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name.
10. At the top of the dialog box, use the drop-down list to select **Use Overlay**. Click **OK**.
11. Click OK to close the Default dialog box.

# Overlays

## Windows NT: PCL

### *Defining*

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**.
2. Highlight the printer name. Click **Document Defaults**.
3. Click the **Job Options** tab.
4. Click the **Overlay...** button.
5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.
6. In the **Overlay Name** list, enter the file name of the overlay

### **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be **EXACTLY** the same as the file name you noted in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

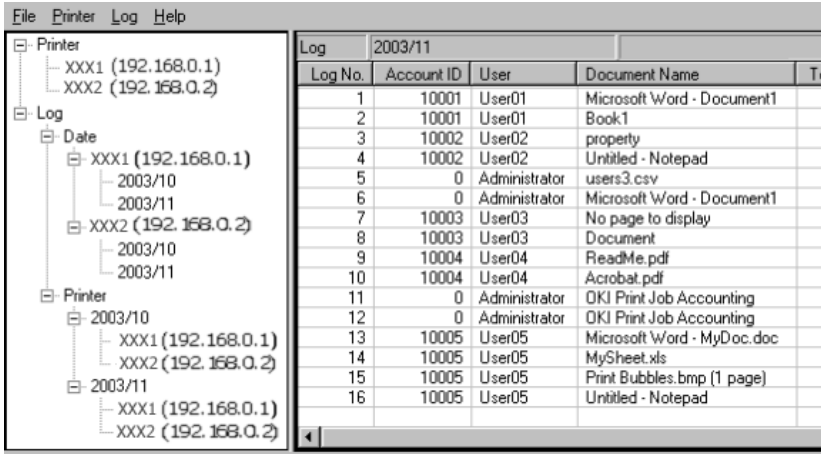
7. In **ID Values**, enter the ID of the file. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
8. Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from **Print on Pages** or use **Custom Pages** to select specific page numbers in the document. Click **Add**.
9. Click **Close**.
10. Repeat steps 5 through 9 for each overlay you wish to add.
11. Under **Defined Overlay**, highlight the overlay name. Click the **Add** button to add the overlay to the list in **Active Overlays**.
12. Select **Print Using Active Overlays**.
13. Click **OK**.
14. Click **OK** to close the Default dialog box.



# Print Job Accounting Utility

## Introduction

The Print Job Accounting software, designed specifically for OKI printers in a network environment, provides job accounting features that allow you to track printer usage, calculate printing costs, and specify access available to each client (user).



Log				
2003/11				
Log No.	Account ID	User	Document Name	T
1	10001	User01	Microsoft Word - Document1	
2	10001	User01	Book1	
3	10002	User02	property	
4	10002	User02	Untitled - Notepad	
5	0	Administrator	users3.csv	
6	0	Administrator	Microsoft Word - Document1	
7	10003	User03	No page to display	
8	10003	User03	Document	
9	10004	User04	ReadMe.pdf	
10	10004	User04	Acrobat.pdf	
11	0	Administrator	OKI Print Job Accounting	
12	0	Administrator	OKI Print Job Accounting	
13	10005	User05	Microsoft Word - MyDoc.doc	
14	10005	User05	MySheet.xls	
15	10005	User05	Print Bubbles.bmp (1 page)	
16	10005	User05	Untitled - Notepad	

### NOTE

The screen shots in this User's Guide are generic. When you see XXX1, XXX2, etc., in a screen, they represent a specific model number which will vary depending on which models are being used in your system.

With Print Job Accounting, you can

- Control costs by limiting access to color printing for specific clients.
- Plan equipment allocation by monitoring exactly how much each client prints.
- Set up billing for individual clients based on their recorded usage.

### **NOTE**

**This software saves acquired log data on the printer's Hard Disk Drive (optional). If the printer does not have the Hard Disk Drive, the acquired logs are saved to the Flash memory.**

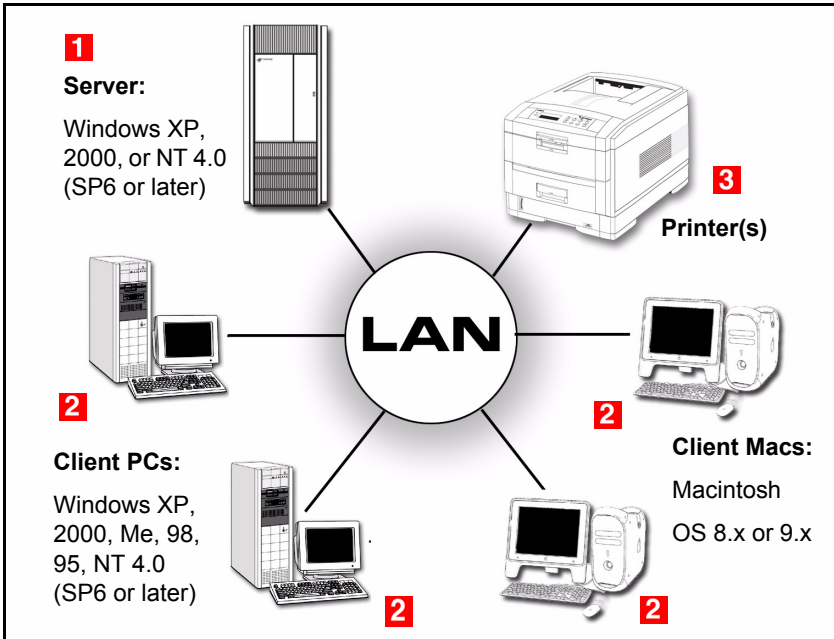
**The Flash memory is relatively limited as to how much information can be stored on it.**

**The Hard Disk Drive has much greater memory capacity.**

**Therefore, we highly recommend that your printer be equipped with a Hard Disk Drive for use with the Print Job Accounting software.**

# Overview

## Sample Network Diagram



## Requirements

The Print Job Accounting utility requires

- 1 Server computer** using an appropriate Windows operating system.
- 2 Client computers** using Windows and/or Macintosh operating systems.
- 3 Connection to the printer(s)** to be managed; either a direct connection (USB or Parallel) to the server, or a network TCP/IP connection.

### NOTE

**Print Job Accounting does not operate in NetBEUI or NetWare environments.**

# Operating System Requirements

## Server (Windows Only)

The Print Job Accounting server software can be run under any of the following Windows operating systems, with the latest Service Pack installed.

- Windows XP
- Windows 2000
- Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6 or later)

## Client Computers (Windows or Macintosh)

The Print Job Accounting Client software can run under any of the following operating systems:

### Windows

- XP
- 2000
- Me
- 98
- 95
- NT4.0 (Service Pack 6 or later)

### Macintosh

- OS 8.1, 8.5.x, 8.6.x (Adobe PS 8.6 or greater required)
- OS 9.0, 9.0.4, 9.1.x, 9.2.x (LaserWriter 8.7 required)

# Installation



## Installing the Print Job Accounting Server Software

1. Place the driver CD supplied with your printer in the CD-ROM drive on the Server computer and wait for the Menu Installer to open.  
*If the CD does not AutoPlay, click Start → Run → Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM drive. Double-click Install.exe. Click OK.*
2. Click **Next** to accept the terms in the license agreement.
3. Select the language.
4. Click **Network Software** → **Administration Tools** → **Job Accounting** → **Server**. Follow the on-screen instructions.
5. If you want to create log reports using Excel, install the report tools. Click **Report Tools**. Follow the on-screen instructions.



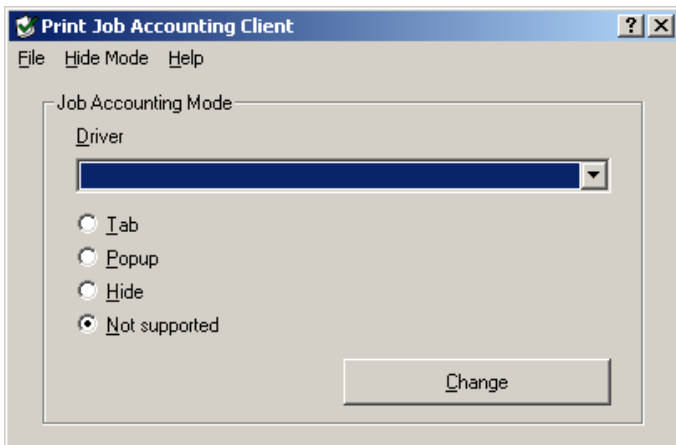
## Installing the Print Job Accounting Client Software

### NOTE

The printer driver(s) must also be installed on the Client computers.

### Windows Client Computers

1. Place the driver CD supplied with your printer in the CD-ROM drive and wait for the Menu Installer to open.  
*If the CD does not AutoPlay, click Start  $\mathcal{A}$  Run  $\mathcal{A}$  Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM drive and double-click Install.exe, then click OK.*
2. Click **Next** to accept the terms in the license agreement.
3. Select the language.
4. Click **Network Software**  $\rightarrow$  **Administration Tools**  $\rightarrow$  **Job Accounting**  $\rightarrow$  **Client** and follow the on-screen instructions.
5. When the installation finishes, the following window appears. See "Client Software" on page 716 for more information.



## Macintosh Client Computers

Normally, the Oki Job Accounting software is automatically installed when you install the printer driver. To activate the Job Accounting Client software:

1. Select **Print Desktop...** on the File menu.
2. Ensure that your printer model is selected, then click **General** and select **Plug-in Preferences**.
3. Open the Print Time Filters menu, then check **Print Time Filters**, **JobType** and **JobAccounting**.
4. Click **Save Settings**, then click **OK**.
5. Click **Cancel**.

## Server Software Capabilities

Use the Print Job Accounting server software

- to register printers and clients
- to set print limits
- to set up automatic generation of print logs.
- to set up automatic email of log reports to the Administrator

### For Each Client, You Can

- Enable/disable print or color print.
- Set upper limits for items such as printed pages.
- Log selected items, including:
  - Date
  - User Name
  - Printer Name
  - Document Name

#### NOTE

**The information on document names cannot be acquired while printing from some Windows applications or from a Macintosh.**

- Number of Printed Pages broken down by color versus monochrome
- Paper Size
- Simplex or Duplex Printing
- etc.
- Set up an account, allowing printing only within the limits set.

## **For Each Printer, You Can**

- Set fees by sheets, paper sizes, and so forth.
- Set (all) print enabled/disabled or color print enabled/disabled.
- Set upper limits for items such as printed pages.
- Set up an account, allowing printing only within the limits set.
- Set up Group(s) in which to include the printer

## **For Print Logs, You Can**

- Export print logs as comma-separated value (.csv) files, which can be imported into many commercially available spreadsheet programs.
- Automatically email print logs to the Administrator monthly on a selected day.
- Customize items to be included in the log, setting them either manually (see page 703) or using one of the multiple Microsoft® Excel spread sheet macros provided (see page 707).
- Acquire a print log for print jobs sent from a client directly to a printer, bypassing the print server.
- Accurately record printed pages through print logs even when a client has cancelled his/her print jobs or paper jams have occurred.

# User Name Versus Account ID

## User Name

The User Name is displayed whenever print logs are displayed, and its sole purpose is to make it easy to see who has been printing.

The User Name is assigned when creating an Account ID (see page 688). It may be set up to represent an individual client or a group of clients, and is associated with the Account ID number.

The User Name does not necessarily need to be the same as the Windows Login User Name.

## Account ID

The Account ID is the number Print Job Accounting actually uses to identify clients. Account ID values of 1 through 1879048191 can be assigned. Clients who do not have their own Account ID will be recognized as Unregistered ID(0).

Normally an Account ID is assigned to each individual client. If the same Account ID is assigned to different clients, all the print jobs they have made will be added up as the same client when the System totals up.

Account IDs must be set for each individual registered printer connected to the Server. The same Account ID can be set up for more than one printer, with different limits set for each printer. Therefore, you can set particular clients to have access only to certain printers.

## **Examples of Account ID Scenarios:**

### ***To Permit Only Some Clients to Print:***

In this case, you need not necessarily assign an Account ID to each and every client. You assign one only to those clients who are permitted to print. All other clients will be recognized as Unregistered ID(0) and all you have to do is to inhibit printing by Unregistered ID clients.

### ***To Permit Only Some Clients to Print in Color:***

You can prevent any Unregistered ID clients from printing in color, in the same way as above.

### ***To Set the Print Limits and Collect Print Logs by Department:***

In this case, you need not necessarily assign an Account ID to each and every client. All you have to do is to assign an Account ID to each department and specify the Group Name in place of User Name.

### ***To Set Print Limits and Collect Print Logs for Each Client:***

Here, you need to assign an Account ID to each individual client. Be sure that you do not to assign the same Account ID to more than one. client.

## **NOTE**

**All Account IDs must be set in the Server computer for each of the Client computers that will be allowed to print to a specific printer.**

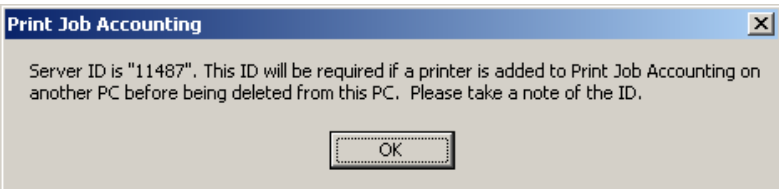
# Server Software

## Starting the Server Software

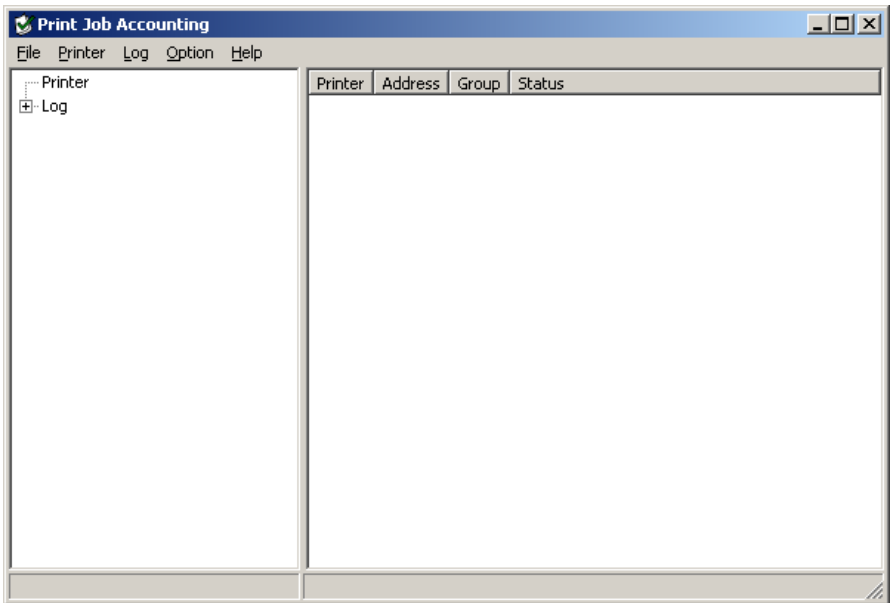
Click **Start** → **Programs** → **Okidata** → **Print Job Accounting** → **Print Job Accounting**.

### Important!

The first time you open the Server software, the following window appears. Make a note of the Server ID for future use. You can also find it by clicking **Help** → **Server ID ...** from the main Job Accounting Window.



The following window appears:





## Server Software Pull-Down Menus

There are five Server Software Pull-Down Menus

- File Menu
- Printer Menu
- Log Menu
- Option Menu
- Help Menu

File Printer Log Option Help

# Server Software Pull-Down Menus

## File Menu

<b>Exit</b>	Close the application.
-------------	------------------------

# Server Software Pull-Down Menus

## Printer Menu

<b>Add a Printer</b>	Register a new printer.
<b>Manages multiple printers as a group ...</b>	Set up multiple registered printers as a group.
<b>Delete a Printer/ Printer Group<sup>a</sup></b>	Delete a registered printer or group of printers.
<b>Change a Printer Group</b>	Add or delete registered printers from a group.
<b>Start/End Log<sup>a</sup></b>	Start/end the process of acquiring information for logs from the printer at the set interval time.
<b>Acquire a Log<sup>a</sup></b>	Acquire a print log saved in the printer. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Setting the Time<sup>a</sup></b>	Set the present time in the printer. <sup>c</sup>
<b>Define Fees ...</b>	Set up and select fees.
<b>Properties ...</b>	Set the printer properties.

- a. Before running, select the subject printer from the "Printer Tree" on the left side of the window.
- b. Select **Log Menu** → **Refresh Display** to update the information on the log pane after having run this menu.
- c. If the printer has been switched on and off, the correct time will not set in the printer until the next time printer logs are acquired. You need only do this if the printer has been switched on and off in between acquisition of logs.

# Server Software Pull-Down Menus

## Log Menu

<b>Display Logs<sup>a</sup></b>	Change the display from Total to Logs.
<b>Display Total<sup>a</sup></b>	Change the display to <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Total per Printer</li><li>• Account ID or</li><li>• Month</li></ul>
<b>Export Report Logs<sup>a</sup></b>	Export the required fields for the report macro in a .csv file.
<b>Export Logs<sup>a</sup></b>	Export the log as a .csv file.
<b>Export Total<sup>a</sup></b>	Export totals as a .csv file, by <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Printer</li><li>• Account ID, or</li><li>• Month</li></ul>
<b>Delete the log<sup>a</sup></b>	Delete the selected log
<b>Display Details</b>	Switches back and forth between displaying only the default items in the log and displaying the entire detailed list of items in the log. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Display/Export Item Settings</b>	Select the items to be shown or exported as part of Log or Total display (see page 703 for more information). <sup>b</sup>
<b>Refresh Display</b>	Refresh the display.

- Before running, select the subject item from the “Log Tree” on the left side of the window. If you select “Log,” all items will be subject to displaying/exporting. If you select one printer, only that printer will be subject to displaying.
- Select **Log Menu** → **Refresh Display** to update the information on the log pane after having run this menu.

# Server Software Pull-Down Menus

## Option Menu

---

Setup ...	Set up: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• mail server</li><li>• email address for Sender</li><li>• email address for Administrator</li><li>• where you wish to store logs</li><li>• closing date for logs (select the day of the month which determines when logs are considered previous month logs as opposed to current month logs).</li></ul>
-----------	---

---

## Server Software Pull-Down Menus

### Help Menu

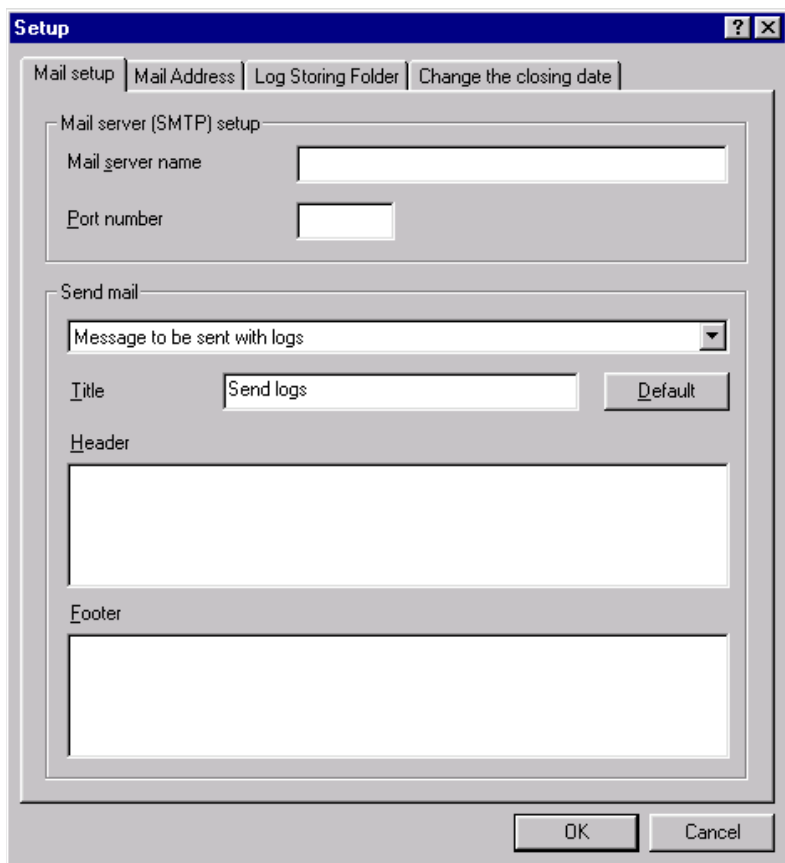
<b>Server ID ...</b>	Display Server ID.
<b>Help ...</b>	Display the Help Topics window with tabs <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Contents</li><li>• Index</li><li>• Find</li></ul>
<b>Version Info ...</b>	Display version information.

## Setting Up Automatic Email

To set up monthly automatic email of selected print log data to the administrator, open the Job Accounting software, then:

1. Click **Option** → **Setup**.

The following window appears:



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Setup". It has a blue title bar with a question mark icon and a close button (X). The dialog box contains several tabs: "Mail setup", "Mail Address", "Log Storing Folder", and "Change the closing date". The "Mail setup" tab is currently selected. Inside the dialog, there are three main sections:

- Mail server (SMTP) setup:** This section contains two text input fields. The first is labeled "Mail server name" and the second is labeled "Port number".
- Send mail:** This section contains a dropdown menu labeled "Message to be sent with logs" with a downward arrow. Below it is a "Title" label followed by a text input field containing "Send logs" and a "Default" button.
- Header:** This section contains a large, empty text area for entering the email header.
- Footer:** This section contains a large, empty text area for entering the email footer.

At the bottom right of the dialog box, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

2. Set up the general information on the **Mail Setup** tab, including the mail server, when an email is to be sent, and the header and footer text to be included with the email.
3. On the **Mail Address** tab, enter a name and email address for the sender, and the name and email address for the administrator to receive the emails.
4. On the **Log Storing Folder** tab, enter the path where the automatically exported logs are to be stored.
5. On the **Change the closing date** tab, enter the day of the month on which logs are to be closed. Log reports will automatically be emailed to the administrator on the day after this.
6. Click **OK**.

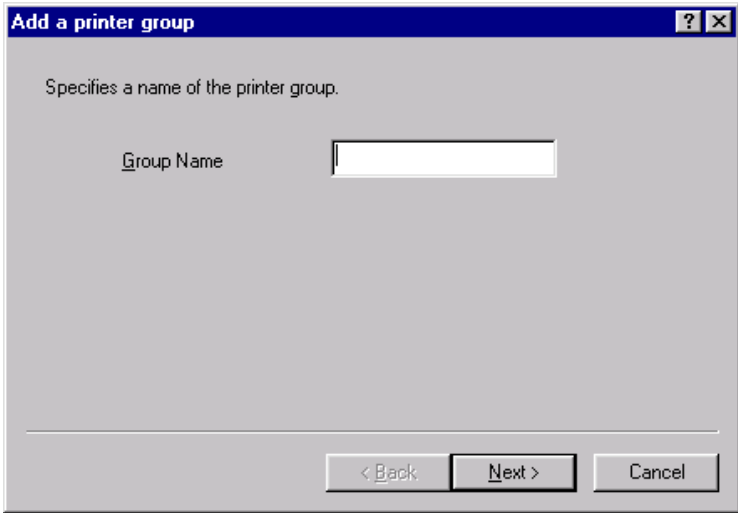


## Defining Printer Groups

If you wish to create groups of printers:

1. From the main Job Accounting window, click **Printer** → **Manages multiple printers as a group ...**

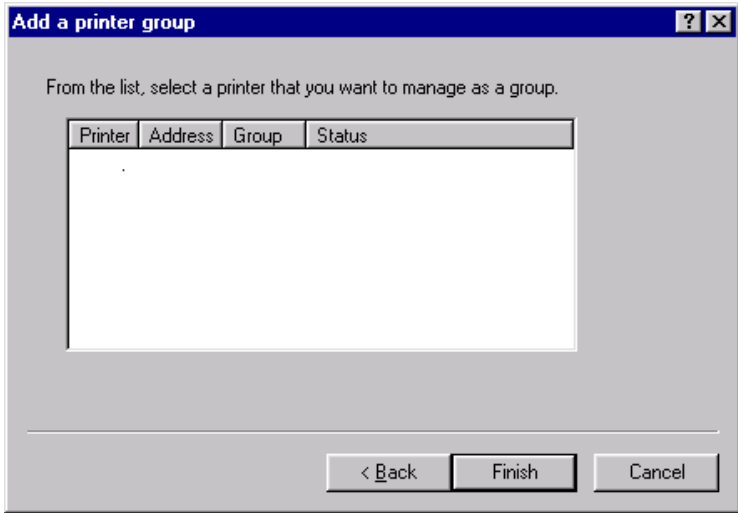
*The following window appears:*



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add a printer group" with a blue header bar containing a question mark icon and a close button. The main area is light gray and contains the text "Specifies a name of the printer group." Below this is a label "Group Name" followed by an empty text input field. At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "< Back", "Next >", and "Cancel".

2. Enter the Group Name of your choice, then click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*



### **NOTE**

**At this point, no printers have been registered, so none appear in the box. Printers can be added to established Groups as they are being registered.**

**If you create a new group after registering printers, a list of the registered printers will appear in the box and can be highlighted for inclusion in the group.**

3. Click **Finish**.

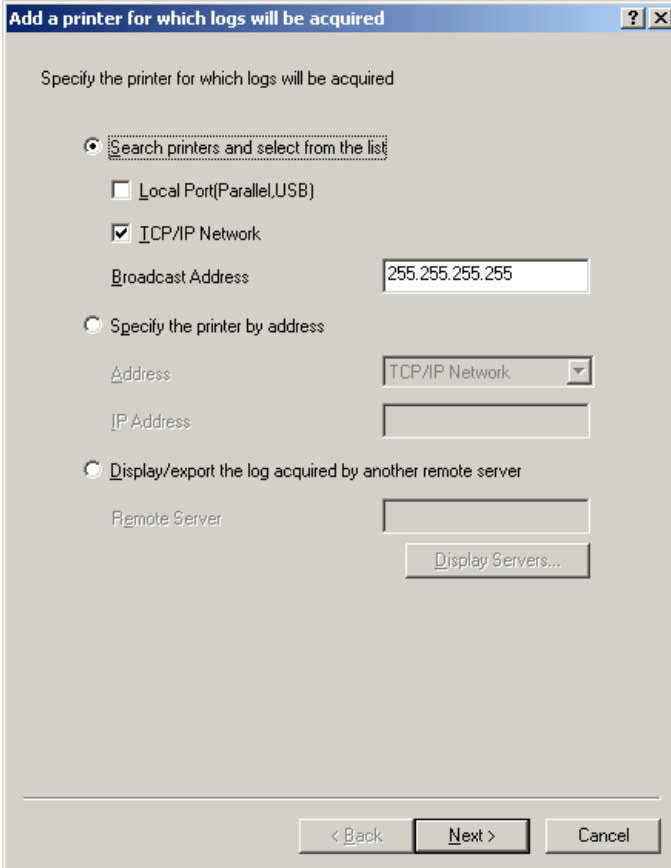
## Registering Printers

To use Print Job Accounting, you need to register printers to be managed in the Server Software.

Before starting, check that the printers are powered up and properly connected.

1. From the main Print Job Accounting window, click **Printer** → **Add a printer**.

*The following window appears:*



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add a printer for which logs will be acquired". The dialog has a blue title bar with a question mark and a close button. The main content area is light gray and contains the following elements:

- Text: "Specify the printer for which logs will be acquired"
- Radio button: "Search printers and select from the list" (selected)
- Checkbox: "Local Port(Parallel,USB)" (unchecked)
- Checkbox: "TCP/IP Network" (checked)
- Text: "Broadcast Address" with a text box containing "255.255.255.255"
- Radio button: "Specify the printer by address"
- Text: "Address" with a dropdown menu showing "TCP/IP Network"
- Text: "IP Address" with an empty text box
- Radio button: "Display/export the log acquired by another remote server"
- Text: "Remote Server" with an empty text box
- Button: "Display Servers..."

At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "< Back", "Next >", and "Cancel".

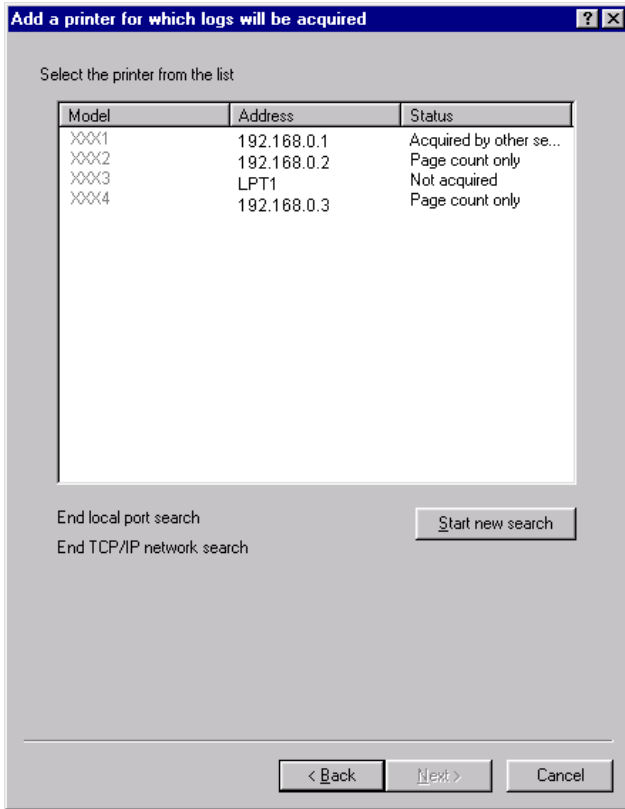
2. Select the appropriate box(es).

**NOTE**

**Only printers supported by this System will be found. If the search is unsuccessful, check that the printers are turned on, online and properly connected.**

- To have the software search out local and/or network printers, select **Search printers** and select **Local Port** and/or **TCP/IP Network**.
- To specify the printer address (local or network) manually, select **Specify the printer by address** and fill in the appropriate information.

3. Click **Next** and wait while the software searches for printers.  
*A window appears, showing a listing of all the printers found. For example:*



4. Select the printer you want to register from the list of printers searched and click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*

**Add a printer for which logs will be acquired** [?] [X]

Set Other Items

Printer Name: XXX1

Printer Group: Not in a group

Acquire Logs

Interval: 1 Hour, 0 Minutes

Time

Change Time...

Fees: XXX1

Define fees...

Operation at Log Full: Delete old logs

Inhibit the initialization of Hard Disk and Flash Memory

Auto Export Logs: Do not automatically export

Use Restrictions	Unregistered ID	Local Print
Disable Printing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Disable Color Printing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

< Back   Finish   Cancel

5. Set up the printer:

**Printer Name**

Type in a printer name containing up to 32 characters.

**Printer Group**

If the printer is to be included in a group, select the group here.

**NOTE**

**Groups must first be defined using Printer → Manages multiple printers as a group ... in the main Job Accounting window. See page 665.**

**Acquire Logs**

You can designate the time to acquire logs in one of two ways:

- by an interval of up to 24 hours

If this value exceeds 24 hours, it is set to 24 hours.

*or*

- by up to five preset times per day

Select Interval, then click **Change Time ...** to set times.

## Fees

In the drop-down box, select a fee definition to be used. Some fee settings are available with defaults.

To custom define settings for the printer, click **Define fees ...** and then click **Add** in the Defined Fees window.

*The following window appears:*

**Define fees** [?] [X]

Name: XXX1

Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	

**P**age

Color: [ 0 ] dollar(s)/pages

Mono: [ 0 ] dollar(s)/pages

**S**heet

[ 0 ] dollar(s)/sheets

OK Cancel



## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Pages Tab

- **Page:** Select to set a fee to be charged for each page printed in color and for each page printed in mono.
- **Sheet:** Select to set a fee to be charged for each printed sheet. In this case, the same fee will be charged for two-sided printing as for one-sided printing.

Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Page</b>		
<u>C</u> olor	<input type="text" value="0"/>	dollar(s)/pages
<u>M</u> ono	<input type="text" value="0"/>	dollar(s)/pages
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Sheet</b>		
	<input type="text" value="0"/>	dollar(s)/sheets

## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Toner use amount Tab

- **Toner use amount:** Select to set a standard feel per page for color and for mono printing.
- **Automatic calculation:** Use this to set up automatic calculation of fees for toner use and save it under the name you enter. Once the settings are saved, they can be used for other printers as well by selecting the saved settings name in the **Fees** drop-down box in either the “Add a printer for which logs will be acquired” window (**Printer** → **Add a Printer** → [click a printer] → **Next**) or the Option tab of the “Properties of printer from which logs are acquired” window ([click a printer in the Printer Tree] → **Printer** → **Properties** → **Option**).

Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	

**Toner use amount**

Level	Color Fee	Mono Fee
0	0	0
1	0	0
2	0	0
3	0	0
4	0	0
5	0	0

A printer used for fee automatic calculation

XXX1

Color Price  dollar(s)

Mono Price  dollar(s)

Large capacity

## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Drum use amount Tab

- **Drum use amount:** Select to set a standard fee per page for color and for mono printing.
- **Automatic calculation:** Use this to set up automatic calculation of fees for drum use and save it under the name you enter. Once the settings are saved, they can be used for other printers as well by selecting the saved settings name in the **Fees** drop-down box in either the “Add a printer for which logs will be acquired” window (**Printer** → **Add a Printer** → [click a printer] → **Next**) or the Option tab of the “Properties of printer from which logs are acquired” window ([click a printer in the Printer Tree] → **Printer** → **Properties** → **Option**).

Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	

Drum use amount

Color Fee  dollar(s)/pages

Mono Fee  dollar(s)/pages

A printer used for fee automatic calculation

▼

Color Price  dollar(s)

Mono Price  dollar(s)

## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Printer Use Time Tab

Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type

Printer Use Time

dollar(s)/minutes

- **Printer Use Time:** Select to set a fee for each minute of print time used.



## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Tray Tab

Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher
Printer Use Time	Size	Tray
Media Type		

Tray

Tray	Fees(dollar(s)/she...

- **Tray**: Select to set a fee per sheet printed which varies depending on the tray used. Click **Change** to set fees for individual trays.

## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Media Type Tab

- **Media:** Select to set a fee per sheet printed which varies depending on the media used. Click **Change** to set fees for the different media, including transparencies, labels, letterhead, card stock, etc.

Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher
Printer Use Time	Size	Tray
Media Type		

Media

Media Type	Fees(dollar(s)/she...

## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Belt fuser use amount Tab

- Belt, fuser use amount: Select to set a fee per page for belt and/or fuser usage.
- Automatic calculation: Use this to set up automatic calculation of fees for belt and fuser use and save it under the name you enter. Once the settings are saved, they can be used for other printers as well by selecting the saved settings name in the **Fees** drop-down box in either the “Add a printer for which logs will be acquired” window (**Printer** → **Add a Printer** → [click a printer] → **Next**) or the Option tab of the “Properties of printer from which logs are acquired” window ([click a printer in the Printer Tree] → **Printer** → **Properties** → **Option**).

Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	

Belt, fuser use amount

Belt Fee  dollar(s)/pages

Fuser Fee  dollar(s)/pages

A printer used for fee automatic calculation

▼

Belt Price  dollar(s)

Fuser Price  dollar(s)



## Fees

### Define Fees window

#### Finisher Tab

- **Staple:** Select to set a fee for each use of the stapler.  
*Applies only when the optional finisher is installed on applicable models.*

Printer Use Time	Size	Tray	Media Type
Pages	Toner use amount	Drum use amount	
Belt, fuser use amount		Finisher	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Staple</b>			
<input type="text" value="0"/> dollar(s)/times			

## Operation at log full

Here you can set what the printer does when the buffer for log storing becomes full and cannot store any more logs:

Operation at Log Full

<b>Cancel the job</b>	Cancels the jobs once the buffer is full.
<b>Do not acquire the log</b>	Prints without acquiring logs once the buffer is full.
<b>Delete old logs<sup>a</sup></b>	Deletes old logs and stores new logs.

a. The default setting.

## Inhibit the initialization of HDD

Inhibit the initialization of Hard Disk and Flash Memory

This controls whether or not the Hard Disk Drive (if installed) and the Printer Flash (if installed) can be initialized. If initialization is inhibited, a client cannot delete the log using the printer's front panel. Use this in order to prevent the logs stored in the printer from being deleted.

## Auto Export Logs

Sets whether or not, and how, log data will automatically be exported when it is acquired.

<b>Do not automatically export<sup>a</sup></b>	Logs are not automatically exported.
<b>Automatically export logs</b>	Automatically exports logs in the format you select (see page 703).
<b>Automatically export logs for report.</b>	Automatically exports logs in a format which works with the Microsoft Excel macro reports (see page 707).
<b>Mail logs to administrator<sup>b</sup></b>	Automatically exports logs in the format you select (see page 703), then sends an email to the Administrator with a copy of the log data attached, at the end of the day following the Closing date you specify.
<b>Mail logs for report to administrator<sup>b</sup></b>	Automatically exports logs in a format which works with the Microsoft Excel macro reports (see page 707), then sends an email to the Administrator with a copy of the report attached at the end of the day following the Closing date you specify.

- a. The default setting.
- b. To use this, you must first set up the email and closing date information: (see page 663).

## Use Restrictions

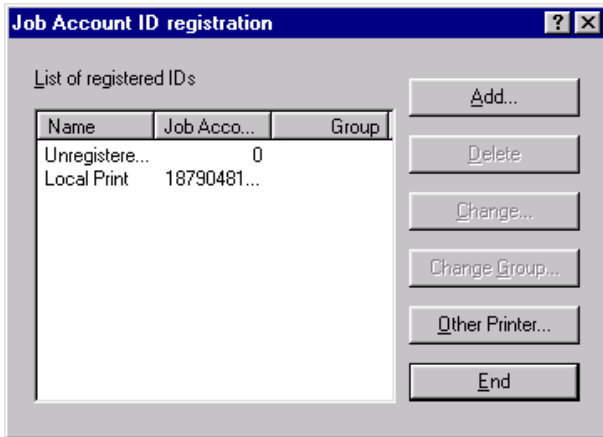
Use Restrictions	Unregistered ID	Local Print
Disable Printing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Disable Color Printing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

You can set usage limits for unregistered clients (data sent without ID) and for local print (print from operator panel such as menu map or file list). When "Disable Printing" is set, clients cannot change other settings.

- **Disable Printing:** All printing is cancelled.
- **Disable Color Printing:** Color data printing is cancelled.

6. Click **Finish**.

*The following window appears:*



7. Use this window to add User Account IDs for the printer. For more information, see step 3, ff., under “Setting Up Account IDs” on page 688.

8. When done, click **End**, then **OK**.

## Changing Settings for a Registered Printer

1. From the main Print Job Accounting window, highlight the printer you wish to change.
2. Click **Printer** → **Properties**.

*The following window appears:*



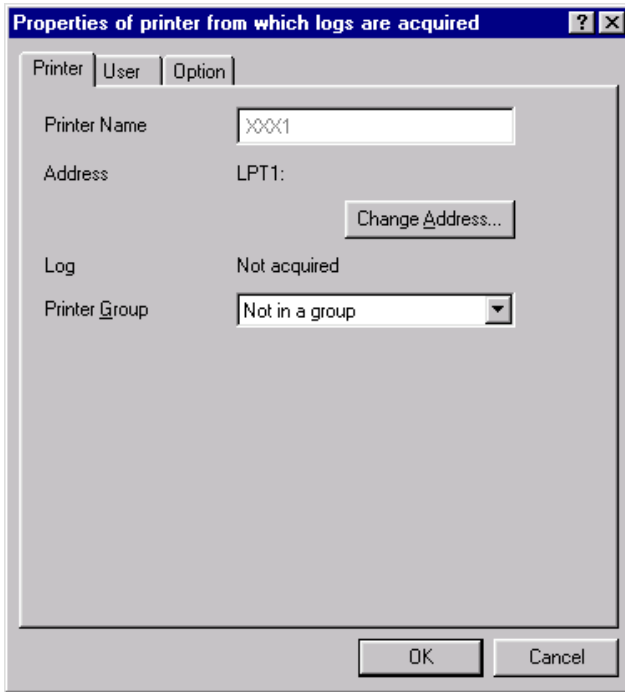
3. Make any desired changes in settings, on the various tabs:
  - **Printer** tab: change printer name, address, group
  - **User** tab: add new User IDs or change information for existing User IDs.
  - **Option** tab: modify log acquisition intervals/times, fees, Operation at Log Full, Inhibit initialization, Auto Export Logs, and Use Restrictions.
4. Click **OK**.

## Setting Up Account IDs

### Adding Account IDs for a Registered Printer

From the main Print Job Accounting window:

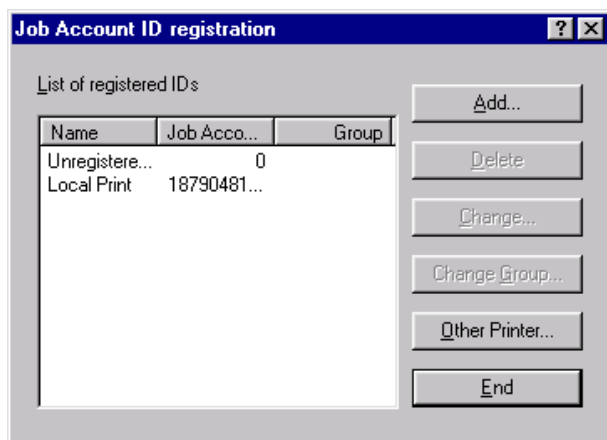
1. Double click the printer for which you wish to set up Account IDs.  
*The following window appears:*





2. On the User tab, click **Register**.

*The following window appears:*



3. Click **Add**.

*The following window appears:*

Job Account ID registration

Add a user or a user group.

Add a User

User Group: Not in a group

Manages multiple Job Account ID as a group.

Group Name: \_\_\_\_\_

E-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_

< Back   Next >   Cancel

4. Enter the appropriate selections, then click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*

Job Account ID registration

Set Job Account ID and name (optional). When multiple IDs are added, all these IDs will have the same settings for Use Restrictions, Limit Value and the Valid period.

Name	Job Account ID	Mail Address
------	----------------	--------------

Job Account ID

Name

E-mail address

Buttons: Add, Delete, Change, File..., Remote Server...

Navigation: < Back, Next >, Cancel

5. Establish the new Account ID:

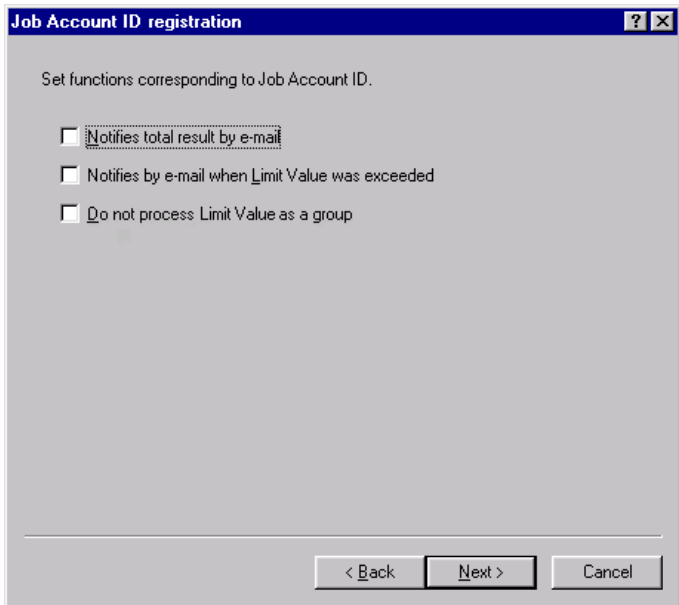
- a. Enter the following information for the new Account ID:
- Account ID number
  - Name.
  - Email address: if the user will have limits set on their printing, enter their email address so that they can be informed when their limit is exceeded and again when printing is once more available to them.

b. Click **Add**.

*The new Name/ID appears in the box.*

c. Click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*



**Notifies total result by e-mail**

Select to send this User an email summarizing their monthly usage of the printer.

**Notifies by e-mail when Limit Value is exceeded**

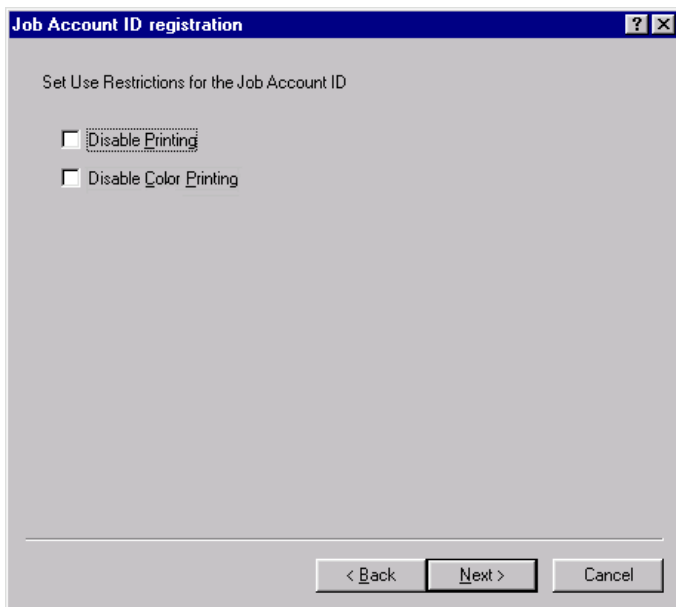
Select to alert this User by email when their set Limit Values have been exceeded, as well as when the limits have been reset and printing can be resumed.

**Do not process Limit Value as a group**

Restricts the set Limit Values to the particular user. Applies only when the printer/user belongs to a group.

d. Make your selections, then click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*



### **Disable Printing**

All printing is cancelled. When this is selected, other settings cannot be changed.

### **Disable Color Printing**

This Account ID cannot print color data. If they submit a color print job, it is automatically cancelled.

e. Select any print restrictions for the Account ID. Click **Next**.

*The following window appears:*

**Job Account ID registration** ? X

Set Limit Value for the Job Account ID. If any Limit Value is exceeded, the printer will not print jobs for that Job Account ID any more.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Printed Sheets	<input type="text"/>	sheets
<input type="checkbox"/> Fees	<input type="text"/>	dollar(\$)
<input type="checkbox"/> Printer Use Time	<input type="text"/>	min.
<input type="checkbox"/> Staple	<input type="text"/>	staples

< Back   Finish   Cancel

- f. Set limits per 24-hour period for the Account ID by any or all of the following:
- Total pages
  - Total dollars
  - Total minutes
  - Total staples used

These limits will be checked at the selected interval or at the time setting for the log.

### **NOTE**

**Whether the upper limits for a particular user have been exceeded is checked only at the set interval time. If the upper limits are exceeded between checks, printing continues even though the limit has been exceeded. At the next interval check, the User will be blocked from any further printing until the next 24-hour period starts. If you have so designated (see above), the User is informed by email that they have exceeded their limits for that 24-hour period.**

- g. Click **Finish**.
6. Repeat the previous step for each Account ID to be added.
7. Click **End**. Click **OK**.



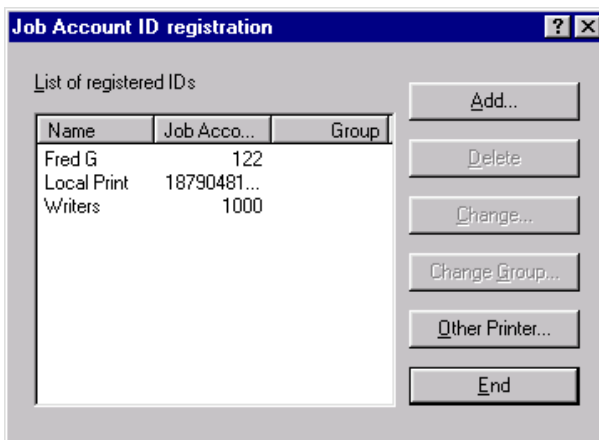
## Importing Account IDs from a Registered Printer

Once you create an account ID for a registered printer, you can import it into records for other registered printers/groups in the System. The Account ID will bring with it the same settings such as usage limits, but you can change the settings for the account on the newly assigned printer (see below) once the record is imported.

From the main Print Job Accounting window:

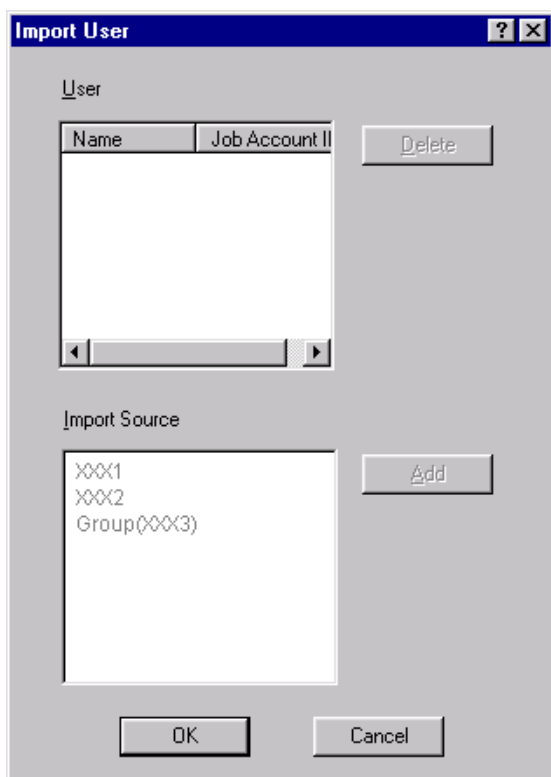
1. Double click the printer or group for which you wish to import Account IDs.
2. On the User tab, click **Register**.

*The following window appears:*



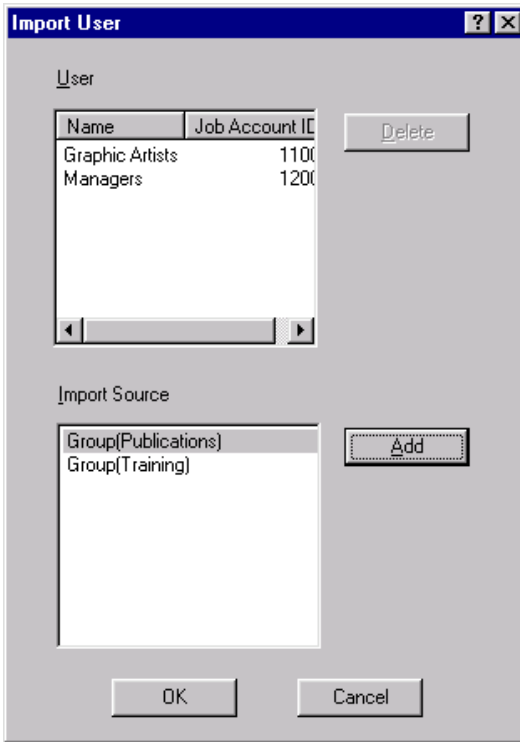
3. Click **Other Printer**.

*The following window appears:*



4. From the Import Source list, select a printer or group from which you want to import Account ID(s) and click **Add**.

*Any IDs not already registered for the printer appear in the User box:*



5. Click any Name/Account IDs that you do *not* wish to add and click **Delete**, then click **OK**.

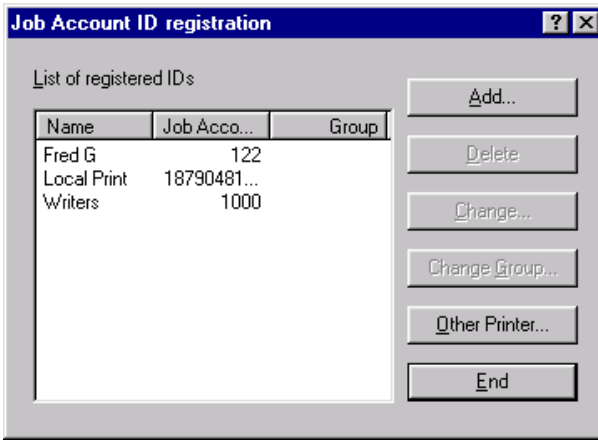
*The selected Account ID(s) are imported into the List of registered IDs for the printer.*

## Changing Account ID Settings

From the main Print Job Accounting window:

1. Open the Printer Tree and double click the printer for which you wish to change Account IDs.
2. On the User tab, click **Register**.

*The following window appears:*



3. Click the Name for which you wish to change settings, then click **Change**.

*The following window appears:*

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Properties of Job Account ID" with a blue header bar containing a help icon and a close button. Below the header are four tabs: "Job Account ID" (selected), "Use Restrictions", "Limit Value", and "Usage Status". The main area contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** A text box containing "Fred G".
- Job Account ID:** A text box containing "122".
- Status:** A text box containing "Enable Printing".
- E-mail address:** An empty text box.
- User Group:** A dropdown menu showing "Not in a group".
- Notifies total result by e-mail**
- Notifies by e-mail when Limit Value was exceeded**
- Do not process Limit Value as a group**

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

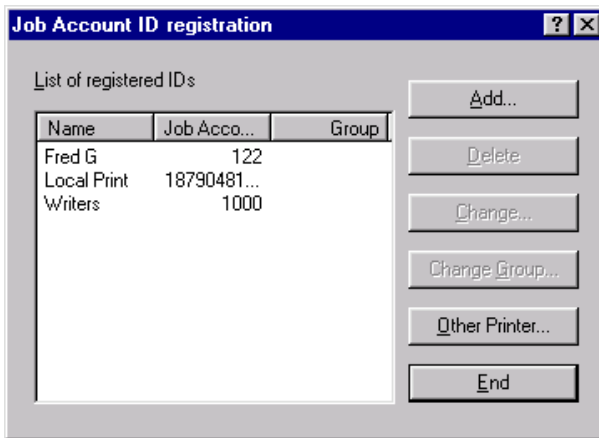
4. Make any desired changes. Click **OK**.
5. Click **End**. Click **OK**.

## Deleting Account IDs

From the main Print Job Accounting window:

1. Open the printer tree and double click the name of the printer/group for which an Account ID is to be deleted.
2. On the User tab, click **Register**.

*The following window appears:*



3. Click the Name for the Account ID to be deleted. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
5. Click **End**. Click **OK**.

## Print Logs

### NOTE

The Server computer must be running continuously, or at least be running at the scheduled time(s) each day, for the software to acquire the print job information.

### Setting Up/Changing the Log Acquisition Interval

The log acquisition interval is normally set up when you register a printer (see “Registering Printers” on page 667).

To change the log acquisition interval for a particular registered printer or group:

1. From the main Job Accounting window, click Printer to open the printer tree, then click the printer for which you wish to change the acquisition interval.
2. Click **Printer** → **Properties**.
3. On the Options tab, make any desired changes under Acquire Logs, then click **OK**.

### Manually Setting Up Items Reported in the Log

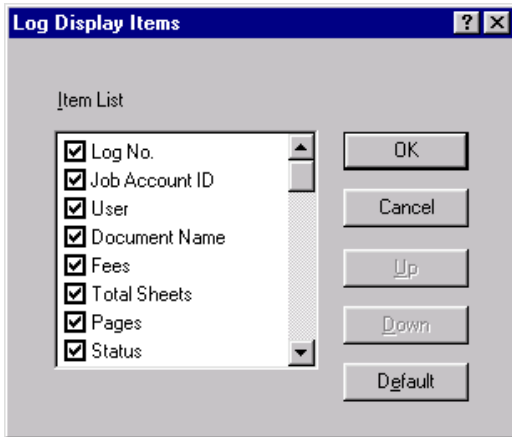
To set up the items to be displayed in, or exported from, a log:

1. From the main Job Accounting window, click the printer/group for which you wish to set up the log display.
2. Click **Log** → **Display/Export Item Settings**.
3. Click one of the following selections to set the items to be displayed and the sequence in which they will be displayed:

## Log Display Items

Standard acquisition Log.

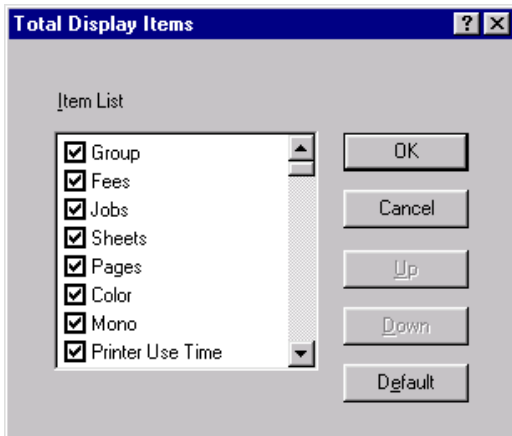
*The following window appears:*



## Total Display Items

Listing of totals for a registered printer.

*The following window appears:*

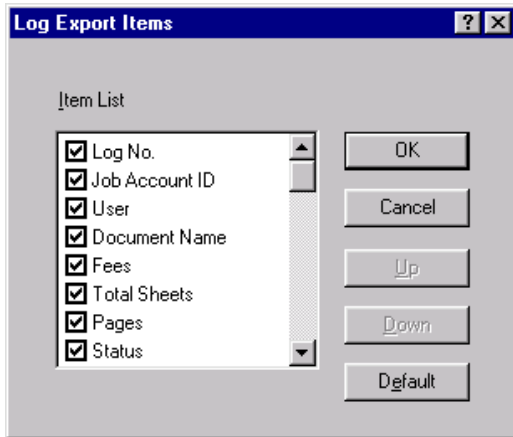




## Log Export Items

Items to be included in an exported log file.

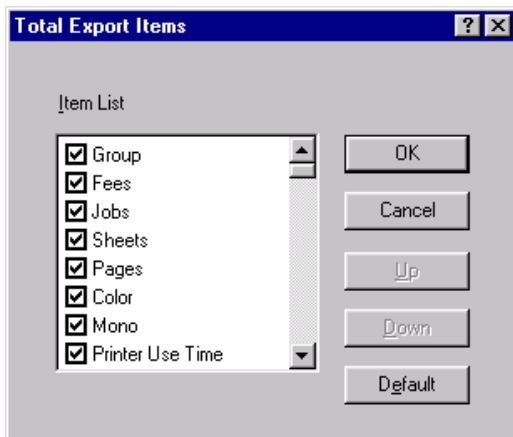
*The following window appears:*



## Total Export Items

Items to be included in an exported file containing a listing of totals for a registered printer.

*The following window appears:*



4. Make your selections:
  - a. Items to be included have a check mark in their box. To delete or add an item, click the box next to it to toggle the check mark on and off.
  - b. To change the position of the item in the log, click the name, then click Up or Down.
5. Click **OK**.

## Using the Reports Tool

The Job Accounting software can be used with Microsoft Excel to generate log reports using one of nine pre-programmed macros.

### ***Installing the Reports Tool***

1. Place the driver CD supplied with your printer in the CD-ROM drive on the Server computer and wait for the Menu Installer to open.

*If the CD does not AutoPlay, click Start Æ Run Æ Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM drive. Double-click Install.exe. Click OK.*

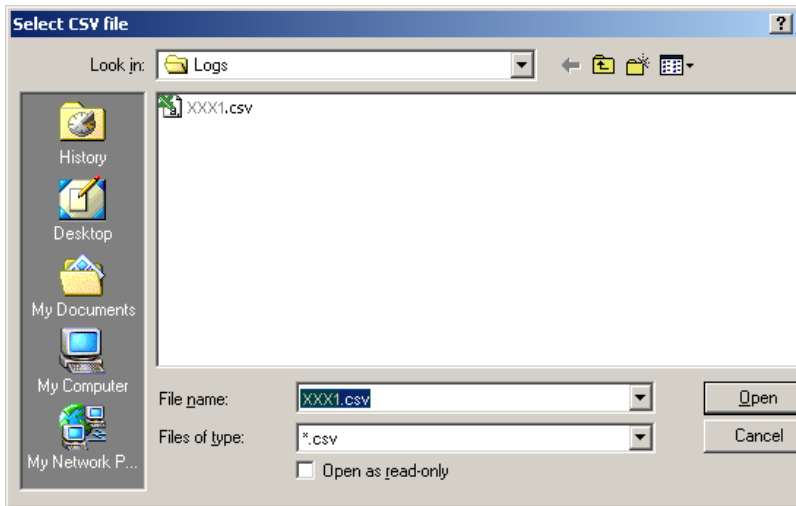
2. Click **Next** to accept the terms in the license agreement.
3. Select the language.
4. Click **Network Software** → **Administration Tools** → **Job Accounting** → **Reports Tool**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Using the Reports Tool

### ***Generating a Log Report Using Excel***

1. Make sure the Print Job Accounting server software is open and that a log has been acquired.
2. From the Start menu, click **Okidata** → **Print Control** → **Open Print Control Reports**.
3. Click **Enable Macros**.

*Excel opens. The following window appears over it:*

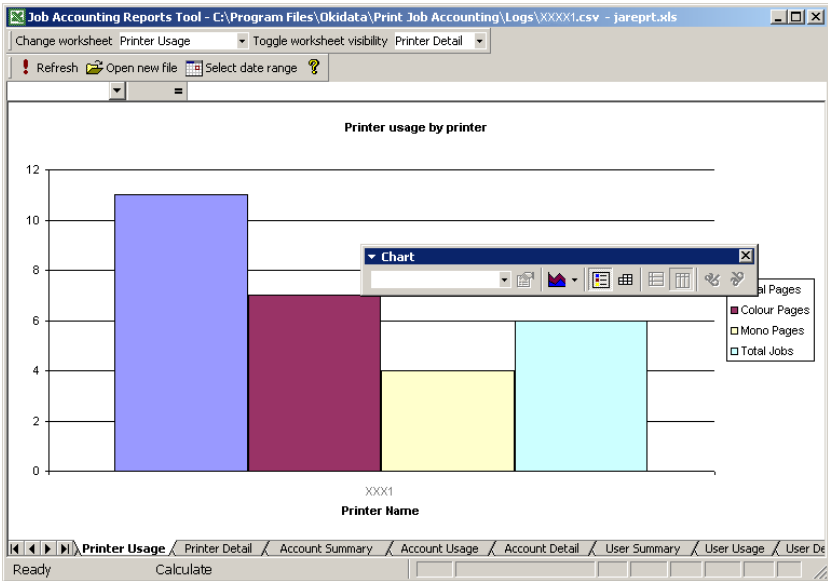


4. Browse to the log file you wish to open. Click **Open**.

*The file opens in Raw Data mode.*

5. Select the worksheet you wish to view from the Change worksheet drop-down list (e.g., Printer Usage).

*The window changes to display the selected worksheet.:*



6. To print the data, press Ctrl-P.

7. When done, click  to close Excel

## Available Excel Macros

Macro	What is Included
Account Detail	<p>Detailed information of each job for every Account ID, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account ID</li> <li>• Job ID</li> <li>• Date</li> <li>• Document Name</li> <li>• Paper Size</li> <li>• Media Type</li> <li>• Total Sheets</li> <li>• Color Pages</li> <li>• Mono Pages</li> <li>• Total Costs</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> To limit the columns displayed, click Fields. To limit the rows displayed, either limit the date range or click Accounts.</p>
Account Usage	<p>A chart of the data in the Account Summary worksheet.</p>
Account Summary	<p>Summary of information for each account.</p>
Printer Detail	<p>Detailed information for each job sent to each printer, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer Name</li> <li>• Job ID</li> <li>• Date</li> <li>• Account ID</li> <li>• User ID</li> <li>• Duplex Pages</li> <li>• Total Sheets</li> <li>• Color Pages</li> <li>• Mono Pages</li> <li>• Total Costs</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> To limit the columns displayed, click Fields. To limit the rows displayed, either limit the date range or click Accounts.</p>

## Available Excel Macros

<b>Macro</b>	<b>What is Included</b>
Printer Usage	A chart of data in the Printer Summary worksheet.
Printer Summary	The following information for each printer for which data is available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Printer Name</li><li>• Total Jobs</li><li>• Total Sheets</li><li>• Number of Color Pages Printed</li><li>• Number of Duplex Pages Printed (appears only when optional duplex unit is installed)</li><li>• Total Costs Incurred (as calculated by the Print Job Accounting software)</li></ul>
User Detail	Detailed information for each job sent to the printer, broken down by User ID, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• User ID</li><li>• Job ID</li><li>• Date</li><li>• Document Name</li><li>• Paper Size</li><li>• Media Type</li><li>• Total Sheets</li><li>• Color Pages</li><li>• Mono Pages</li><li>• Job Cost</li></ul>

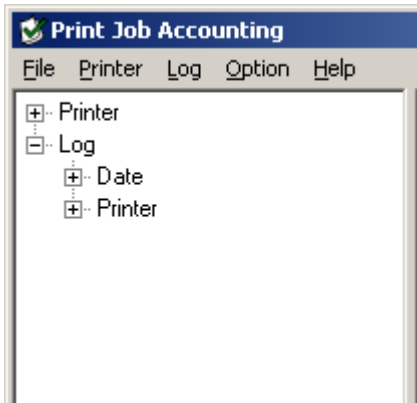
## Available Excel Macros

<b>Macro</b>	<b>What is Included</b>
User Usage	Chart of data in the User Summary worksheet.
User Summary	Includes the following for each User ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Total Jogs</li><li>• Total Sheets</li><li>• Color Pages</li><li>• Mono Pages</li><li>• Duplex Pages</li><li>• Total Costs</li></ul>



## Viewing Acquired Logs

From the main Job Accounting window, click the **[+]** beside Log to expand the Log Tree.



8. Click the **[+]** beside the submenus to drill down to the log you wish to view.
  - **Date** Submenu  
Lists the logs by date (year/month), then by registered printer.
  - **Printer** Submenu  
Lists the logs by registered printer, then date.
9. To view a log:
  - Double-click an entry
  - or
  - Click an entry, then click **Log** → **Display Log**.

## Reading Log Entries

The items displayed in Print Log are as follows:

### Log Entries [in alphabetical order]

Column	Description
1200dpi <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets printed in 1200 dpi
1200x600dpi <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets printed in 1200 x 600 dpi
600dpi <sup>a</sup>	Number of sides printed in 600 dpi
Account ID	User Account ID
Color	Number of sides printed in color
Document Name	Document Name
Duplex Print	Simplex or Duplex
Envelope Feeder <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Envelope Feeder
Log No.	The ID of the job.
Media <sup>a</sup>	Paper type used - Transparency etc.
Mono	Number of sides printed in Monochrome
Multi-Purpose Tray <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Multi-Purpose Tray
Off-line time during printing <sup>a</sup>	Offline time during printing (if any)
Off-line time during processing <sup>a</sup>	Offline time during processing (if any)
Pages	Number of printed sides
Paper Size	Paper size used
Paper Type <sup>a</sup>	Paper type used - Light, Medium etc.

## Log Entries [in alphabetical order] (continued)

Column	Description
Sheets	Number of sheets of paper
Staple	Number of staples used
Status	Result - Printed, Rejected etc.
Time printing began <sup>a</sup>	Time the printing process started
Time printing ended <sup>a</sup>	Time the printing process ended
Time the log acquisition started <sup>a</sup>	Time the log was acquired from the printer (started)
Time the log was acquired <sup>a</sup>	Time the log was acquired from the printer (completed)
Time the process began <sup>a</sup>	Time the job processing started
Time the process ended <sup>a</sup>	Time the job processing ended
Total Sheets	Number of sheets of paper
Tray1 <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Tray1
Tray2 <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Tray2
Tray3 <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Tray3
Tray4 <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Tray4
Tray5 <sup>a</sup>	Number of sheets fed from Tray5
User	User Name

- a. This item is not displayed by default. To display it, see “Manually Setting Up Items Reported in the Log” on page 703.

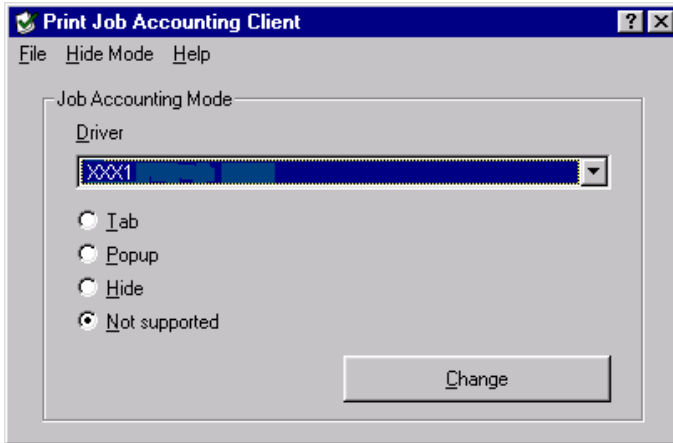
# Client Software

## Starting the Client Software

On the client computer, click

**Start** → **Programs** → **Okidata** → **Print Job Accounting Client** → **Change Job Accounting Mode.**

## Setting the User Name and Account ID



There are four Job Account Modes:

- Tab Mode
- Popup Mode
- Hide Mode
- [Not supported] Mode

Decide which mode you wish to use.

# Client Software

## *Job Account Modes*

### Tab Mode

In this mode, the tab for setting the User Name and Job Account ID will be displayed under Job Account Printer Driver Property. This mode should be selected when the computer is used by one person.

### Popup Mode

In this mode, the dialog box for entering the User Name and Job Account ID will be displayed every time printing is run. A printer client enters their assigned User Name and Account ID to print. This mode is useful if several people share the same computer.

### Hide Mode

In this mode, the System Administrator creates an ID file that describes the information on all clients. Next, each client clicks Import ID File on their computer, then specifies this file.

Printer clients need not know anything about their own Account ID.

This ID file describes the information on each and every client in one line, using the following format.

```
Login User Name, Account ID {User Name}
```

Login User Name	User name entered when logging onto Windows.
Account ID	Account ID corresponding to the user name.
{User Name}	User name displayed in this System. This is optional. If this is unspecified, the Login User Name will be used as the User Name.

Use the extension ".csv" to save the file.

## Client Software

### *Job Account Modes*

#### **[Not supported] Mode**

In this mode, all jobs to be printed will be recognized as Unregistered ID(0).

#### **NOTE**

**For print jobs recognized as Unregistered ID, you can set it so they are permitted or refused for printing, but document names will not be displayed on the print logs.**

## Checking the Status of Printers on the Network

1. Open Microsoft Internet Explorer.
2. Type in the IP address for the printer (e.g., <http://192.168.0.1>).

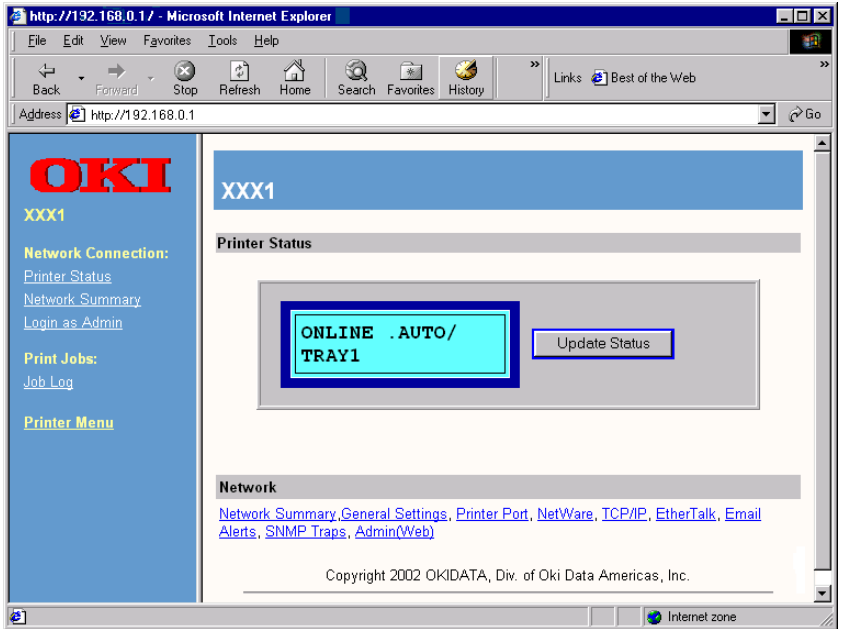
### NOTE

To find the IP address for the printer, do any of the following:

- Open the Print Job Accounting software and select the printer in the Printer Tree, then click Printer → Properties.
- Use the printer's front panel display to navigate to the network menu (see your printer's User's Guide for details).
- Print a list of menu settings (see your printer's User's Guide for details).

### 3. Press Enter.

*The following Printer Status window appears:*



## Printer Status

The default opening screen. To see real-time printer status, click the **Update Status** button.



## Network Summary

Clicking this will bring up a window with detailed information about the network, including

- General Settings
- NetWare
- TCP/IP
- JetAdmin
- LAN Server/DLC
- EtherTalk
- Port Configuration

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer browser window with the address bar set to `http://192.168.0.1`. The page displays the following content:

**OKI**  
XXX1

**Network Connection:**  
[Printer Status](#)  
[Network Summary](#)  
[Login as Admin](#)

**Print Jobs:**  
[Job Log](#)

**Printer Menu**

---

### Network Summary

**General**

Serial Number:	9043589	Cable Type:	10B
Ethernet Address:	00401789FE65	Link Status:	Good
Speed:	100Mbps	Polarity:	Normal
F/W Version:	6.51 (A232B)		
Rx Packets:	852710	Tx Packets:	856
Rx Packets Unavailable:	0	Tx Packet Errors:	0
Rx Packet Errors:	0	Tx Packet Retries:	0
Checksum Errors:	0		

**Error:**  
TCP/IP: None  
EtherTalk: None

**NetWare (DISABLED)**  
Mode: PSERVER

## Login as Admin

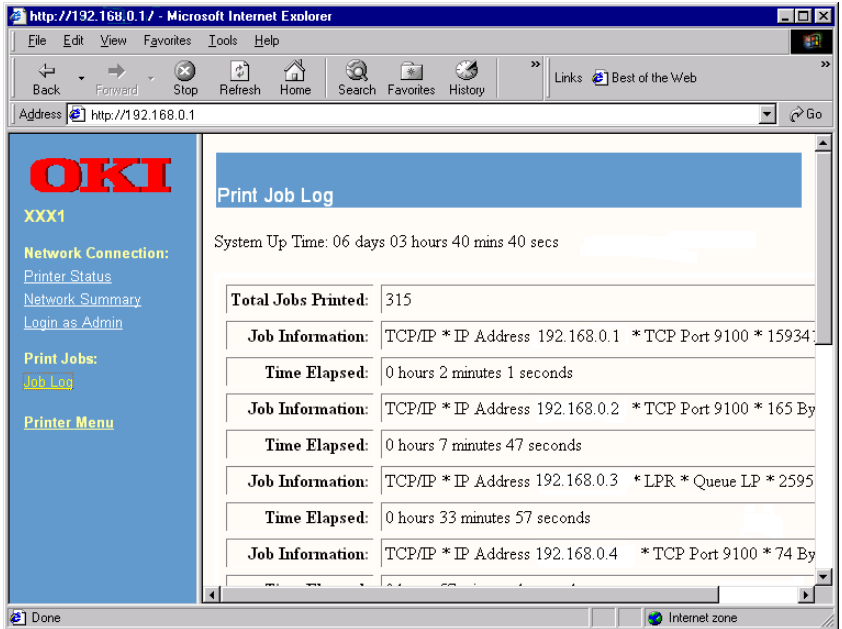
This brings up the “Enter Network Password” window. You must log in before accessing the Printer Menu:



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Enter Network Password". The title bar is blue with a question mark icon and a close button. The main area is light gray. On the left, there is a yellow key icon with a green and blue arrow pointing to the right. To the right of the icon, the text reads "Please type your user name and password." Below this, there are two labels: "Site:" followed by the IP address "192.168.0.1" and a small gray rectangular box; and "Realm:" followed by the text "Network Print Server". Below these are two text input fields: "User Name" and "Password". At the bottom left, there is a checkbox labeled "Save this password in your password list". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

## Job Log

This displays the Print Job Log for the selected printer:



**OKI**  
XXX1

**Network Connection:**  
[Printer Status](#)  
[Network Summary](#)  
[Login as Admin](#)

**Print Jobs:**  
[Job Log](#)

[Printer Menu](#)

### Print Job Log

System Up Time: 06 days 03 hours 40 mins 40 secs

<b>Total Jobs Printed:</b>	315
<b>Job Information:</b>	TCP/IP * IP Address 192.168.0.1 * TCP Port 9100 * 15934
<b>Time Elapsed:</b>	0 hours 2 minutes 1 seconds
<b>Job Information:</b>	TCP/IP * IP Address 192.168.0.2 * TCP Port 9100 * 165 By
<b>Time Elapsed:</b>	0 hours 7 minutes 47 seconds
<b>Job Information:</b>	TCP/IP * IP Address 192.168.0.3 * LPR * Queue LP * 2595
<b>Time Elapsed:</b>	0 hours 33 minutes 57 seconds
<b>Job Information:</b>	TCP/IP * IP Address 192.168.0.4 * TCP Port 9100 * 74 By

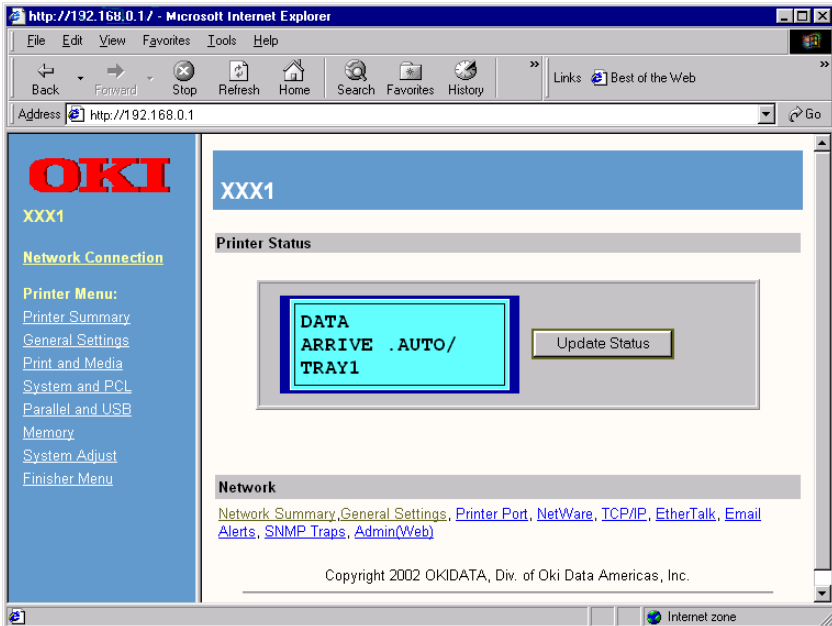
Done Internet zone

## Printer Menu

Once you are logged in as the Administrator, clicking this will bring up the following window, through which you can make changes in the printer's menu settings.

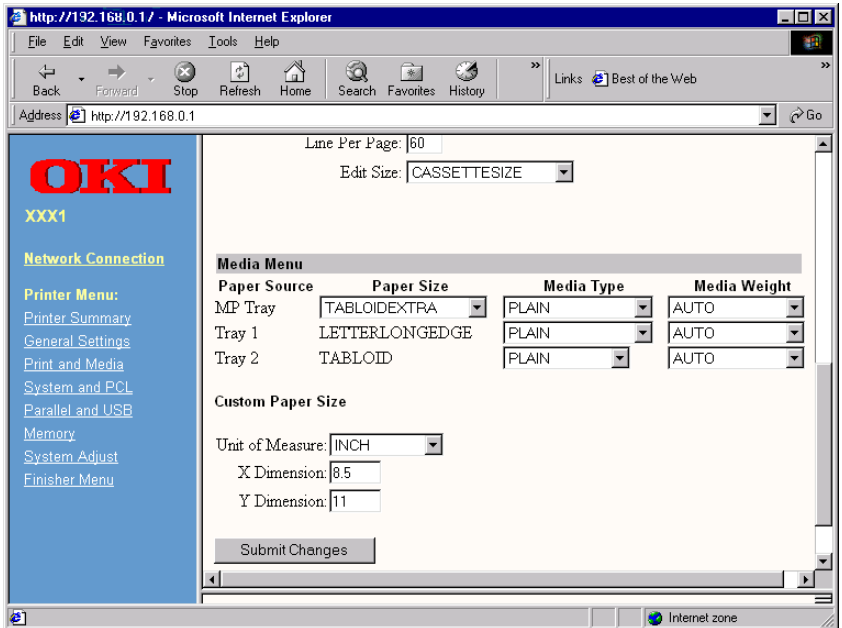
The left pane contains a list of menu setting groups from which to select:

- Printer Summary
- General Settings
- Print and Media
- System and PCL
- Parallel and USB
- Memory
- System Adjust
- Finisher Menu (appears only if optional Finisher is installed)



The System Administrator can make changes in the menu settings directly through the web page. For example:

1. Click **Print and Media**.
2. Make any changes desired.
3. Scroll down to the bottom of the screen and click **Submit Changes**:



# Troubleshooting

**Q. The printer I selected is not shown in the list when I click **Printer** → **Add a printer** → **Next**.**

**A.** If it is offline, the printer will not be shown. Check to see that the printer is online.

There are times the printer is not shown during printing. Wait for a while and try again. If it is still not shown, specify that printer's IP address in the **Specify the printer for which logs will be acquired** window before clicking **Next**.

**Q. The content of Log Pane (right side of window) is not updated.**

**A.** Click **Log** → **Refresh Display**.

**Q. The following message was displayed: "Cannot connect to the printer. Wait for a while and try again."**

**A.** Check that the printer is not offline. This message is sometimes displayed during printing. Try again later.

**Q. The following message displays when I select **Printer** → **Delete a Printer**: "Cannot delete while log is being acquired."**

**A.** With the printer selected in the Printer Tree, click **Printer** → **Start/End Log** to cancel the process by which print logs are acquired from the printer. Then click **Printer** → **Delete a Printer/Printer Group**.

**Q. The following message displays when I select **Printer** → **Acquire a Log**: "This processing cannot do between acquisition of a Log."**

**A.** A print log is already being acquired from the printer at this time.

## Known Problems / Solutions

1. When using Duplex printing with the PostScript driver, if the reverse side is blank it is not counted as a page.
2. Installer installs a file for the currency unit according to the system's standard Regional Setting. If the correct file is not installed, please check the Regional Setting. If you wish to set to the system standard, check "Set as system default local" under "Regional Setting."
3. Printing with Network Menu's "PRINT SETTING" is handled as an unregistered client job, and will not be recognized as a local print job.
4. PostScript printer drivers (Macintosh) do not store document names in the log.
5. In applications that create their own PostScript codes when using the Windows PS driver, the Job Accounting command (Job Account ID, user name) will not be output. Examples of such applications include Adobe PageMaker and CorelDraw (when the "Use PPD" check box is checked in the Print dialog box.)
6. If you print from Win2000 (Client) to Win2000 (Shared Printer Job account Mode already set), you have to remove the check from the "Enable advanced printing features" under the "Advanced" tab in the shared printer's Properties. Removing the check, however, will disable both the Booklet (PCL) and Page Order (PS) features.

# Uninstalling Print Job Accounting

## Uninstall the Server Software

1. Select a printer in the left pane of the Server Software.
2. Select **Start/end log** from the Printer menu.

### Important!

At this stage the Server Software stops acquiring print logs from the printer at the set interval time. However, the printer will continue logging until it is deleted. Be sure to perform step 3 "Delete a printer" without fail before uninstalling the Server Software.

3. Select **Delete a printer** from the Printer menu.

*You are prompted as to whether or not you wish to delete the print log for the jobs that have been run by the printer you are deleting.*

### CAUTION!

Even if you select "No" at this point, unless you register the printer again, the print log for those jobs cannot be referenced.

If you need the log even after deletion of the printer, be sure to select Export Logs from the Log menu, then save them in a file before deleting the printer.

4. Click **Start** → **Programs** → **Okidata** → **OKI Print Job Accounting** → **Delete OKI Print Job Accounting**.



# Uninstalling Print Job Accounting

## Uninstall the Client Software

On each Client computer, click

**Start** → **Programs** → **Okidata** → **OKI Print Job Accounting Client** → **Delete OKI Print Job Accounting client.**

# PrintSuperVision

## General Information

PrintSuperVision is a web-based application for managing printing devices connected to a network. PrintSuperVision provides access to networked printer data for monitoring, reporting and managing networked printers. It provides a full range of management functions for Oki printers, and for other brands of printers as well.

Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

## Features

- Provides real-time status of all your printers to monitor and report printer usage, manage consumables usage and replenishment.
- Administrator interface to the system is via a standard web browser enabling you to check on printer status and compatible multi-function devices from anywhere on the web.
- Performs initial discovery and configuration of printing devices connected to network.
- View groups of printers by list, floorplan or maps.
- Monitors devices over time, including maintenance data, and saves data for statistical reports.
- Sends mail alerts of events affecting device functionality.
- Generates reports on-screen or in XHTML, Excel and XML formats, plus Text and CSV formats.
- Integrates with Oki Data's on-line web support.

# Using

## Types of Users

### Guest Users

A user, without username, can get basic information about devices, such as type, status and location of printing devices.

### Standard Users

In addition to guest user information, standard users can get information about printing resources, configure e-mail alerts, and get basic statistics reports.

### Administrators

Can manage devices, maps, alerts, user accounts, maintenance data, and create comprehensive statistics reports.

## Typical Usage Scenarios

- The network administrator in a large organization can get customized daily reports of the status of all printers (including usage reports).
- User accounts can be configured so that a person in each department can manage their local printers.
- The system can be set to alert the local user and the administrator of problems.
- The administrator can log into the PrintSuperVision system from any client machine and manage printers on different sites, looking at a map view to see instantly the status of all the printers.

### PrintSuperVision

- allows the administrator to track the cost of the printers.
- tracks maintenance.
- advises when to replace consumables, based on current printer usage (Oki color printers).

# System Requirements

## Server Software

Pentium 75, 64MB or better with CD support running:

- Windows 98 with Microsoft Personal Web Server Version™, available for free download from Microsoft™ as Option Pack 4.0.
- Windows NT4 Workstation, SP6.0a, Microsoft Personal Web Server Version, available for free download from Microsoft as Option Pack 4.0
- Windows 2000 or NT4 Server SP6.0a, Microsoft IIS™, available for free download from Microsoft as Option Pack 4.0

## Client Software

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.01 or above
- Netscape Navigator 4.0 or above
- Recommended minimum screen resolution of 1024 x 768 pixels

## Additional Information

For more information, click on **Help** in the PrintSuperVision program.

# Network Printer Status Utility

## General Information

This utility creates an additional tab (STATUS) in the PostScript and PCL drivers that allows the client to monitor the selected printer's status.

Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

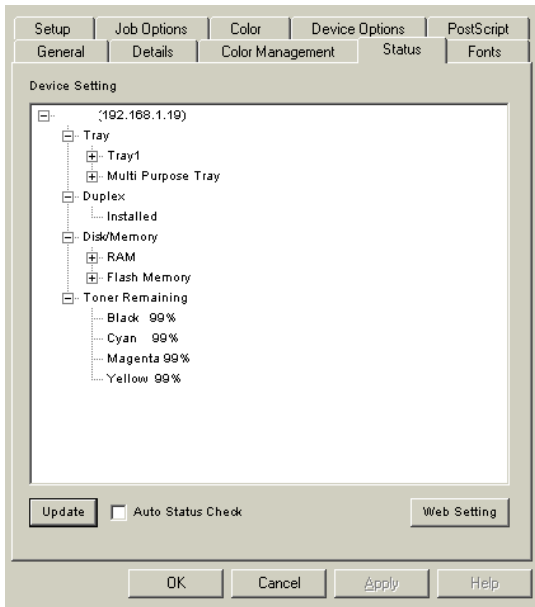
## Installation

1. Insert the Drivers, Color, and Network Utilities disk into the CD-ROM drive.  
If CD does not AutoPlay, click Start → Run → Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM and double-click Install.exe, then click OK.
2. Click **Network Software** → **Administration Tools** → **Network Printer Status**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

# Using

1. Click **Start** → **Settings** → **Printers**. Right-click the Oki Printer icon. Click **Properties**.
2. Click on the **STATUS** tab.
3. Click the **UPDATE** button to see device settings.

The following screen displays:



Click on an item to see this information:

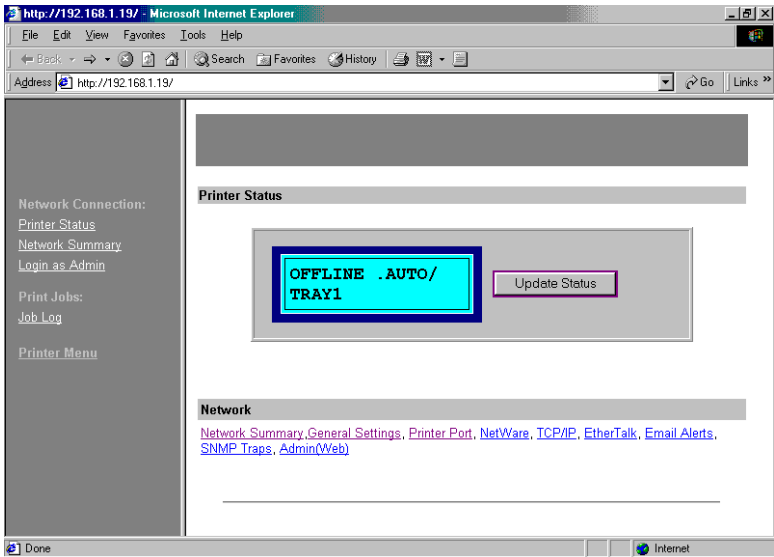
Trays:	Paper Type, weight
Duplex:	Installed/not installed
Disk/Memory:	RAM size and % used; Flash Memory size and % used
Toner Remaining:	% toner remaining is all cartridges

### **NOTE**

**If the Automatic Status Check box is checked, this utility “pings” the printer every time you open the Printer Properties dialog in the printer driver. This severely slows opening Printer Properties.**

# Checking the Printer Status

Click the WEB SETTING button. The following screen displays:



Click on the items listed on the left to see:

- Network Summary
- Login for Administrators
- Job Login
- Printer Menu

To see real-time printer status, click the **UPDATE STATUS** button.



# Oki LPR Utility

## General Information

Oki LPR Utility allows you to print directly to a printer on the network without a print server. It creates an Oki Printer Port, and installs a pop-up status box so you can monitor printer status.

Oki LPR operates in Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows XP operating systems.

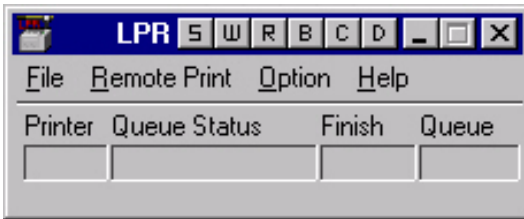
Load this program from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

## How to Install

The Oki LPR Utility supports TCP/IP. Your network administrator must set up an IP address and TCP/IP properties for your printer.

1. To install the utility, insert the Oki CD1 into the CD-ROM drive.  
If CD does not AutoPlay, click Start → Run → Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM driver and double-click Install.exe, then click OK.
2. Click **Network Software** → **Installation/Config** → **LPR Utility**.  
Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Oki LPR Status Box



The Oki LPR Utility Status Box displays the following information:

- **Printers:** Names of added printers (You can add up to 30 printers)
- **Status:** LPR Utility status (empty, connecting, sending, paused, checking status, not connected)
- **Finish:** Number of completed jobs.
- **Queue:** Number of jobs waiting to be printed.

## Additional Information

For help using the Oki LPR Utility, click on **HELP** in the program.

# Index

## Symbols

- %disk0%
  - Hard disk drive
    - PS partition 620
- %Flash0%
  - Flash Memory. PCL 620
- \*\*\* CHANGE DRUM message 505
- \*\*\* TONER LOW message 498
- \*\*\*\* DRUM NEAR LIFE message 522
- \*\*\*\* EMPTY 522
- \*\*\*\* NEAR END message 522

## Numerics

- 0
  - Zero character
    - FX emulation 107
    - PPR emulation 104
- 0 partition (PCL)
  - Hard disk drive 620
- 1 partition (Common)
  - Hard disk drive 620
- 2
  - Flash Memory. PCL 620
- 5000k monitor setting
  - Windows 2000 237
  - Windows Me/98/95 326
  - Windows NT 423
  - Windows XP 142
- 6500k monitor setting
  - Windows 2000 237, 246
  - Windows Me/98/95 326, 335
  - Windows NT 423, 432
  - Windows XP 142, 151

- 9300k monitor setting
  - Windows 2000 237, 246
  - Windows Me/98/95 326, 335
  - Windows NT 423, 432
  - Windows XP 142, 151

## A

- A4 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
  - printing a different size on 90
  - printing Letter-size on A4 101
- A5 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- A6 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Access
  - user access to printer 644
- Accounting
  - client information 652
  - printer usage 644
- Activate options
  - See *[option name]*
- Adjusting color
  - Color swatch samples 593, 594, 596
  - Color tuning 93
  - creating custom colors 593, 594, 596
  - Dark 94
  - Darkness 94, 596
  - Density 93

- 100% density adjustment 96
- Highlight 93
- Hue 596
- in software applications 596
- Lightness 596
- mid-tones 94
- of your monitor 596
- Registration
  - automatic adjustment 94
  - manual adjustment 95
- RGB numbers for applications 595
- Saturation 596
- Test Pattern 293
- Vividness 596
- Administrative password 607
- Alignment
  - colors don't align 95
- Applications
  - graphic-intensive 555
- Attention light
  - Flashing 63
  - ON 63
- Auto Adjust Registration 94
  - fine adjustment, by color 95
- Auto Tray Switch
  - Automatic switching, when paper tray is empty 89
  - sequence of use 89
  - set to ON 49

## **B**

- B5 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Back page
  - duplex printing 114

- BELT UNIT MISSING message 522
- Bi-Directional, parallel 109
- BIN files 617, 618
- Binding 89
- Black
  - Composite Black 101
  - printing black 41
  - True Black 101
- Black stripes 540
- Blank page
  - skip when printing
    - FX emulation 107
    - PCL emulation 101
    - PPR emulation 105
- Blurred print 541
- Bond, paper type 91
- Booklets, printing
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 278
    - PS 275
  - Windows Me
    - PCL 365
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 460
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 182
    - PS 179
- BUSY signal
  - Parallel 109
  - USB 110

## **C**

- CANCEL button 64
- CANCELLING JOB message 522
- Carbon Paper 74

- Card stock
  - Paper (Media) Type 91, 92
  - Paper Feed 53, 54
  - part numbers 577
- Carrier sheet 76
- Cassette Size
  - and custom paper sizes 67
- CENTRO I/F ERROR message 522
- CHANGE \*\*\*\*\* IMAGE DRUM message 505, 522
- CHANGE \*\*\*\*\* TONER 498
- CHANGE BELT UNIT message 508, 522
- CHANGE FUSER UNIT message 514, 522
- CHANGE PAPER TO \*\*\*\*\* message 522
- CHANGE TONER 39
  - message does not disappear 39, 498
- Character height
  - FX emulation 108
  - PPR emulation 105
- Character pitch
  - FX emulation 106
  - PPR emulation 103
- Character set
  - FX Emulation 106
  - PPR Emulation 103
- Characters per inch 99
- Charts
  - Color matching
    - Windows 2000 PS 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 PS 342
    - Windows NT PS 439
    - Windows XP PS 158
- CHECK \*\*\*\*\* message 523
- CHECK BELT UNIT message 523
- CHECK DUPLEX message 523
- CHECK FUSER UNIT message 523
- CHECK IMAGE DRUM message 523
- Clasps, envelopes 75
- Cleaning
  - Image drum 115, 552
  - LED heads 517
- Clearance (space) requirements for printer 25
- Clients
  - registering 651
- CMY 100% Density 96
- CMYK Color Space 96
- CMYK or RGB
  - Windows 2000 240
  - Windows Me/98/95 329
  - Windows NT 426
  - Windows XP 145
- CMYK or RGB, matching photographs
  - Windows 2000 241
  - Windows Me/98/95 330
  - Windows XP 146
- CMYK or RGB, matching specific colors
  - Windows 2000 242
  - Windows Me/98/95 331
  - Windows NT 428
  - Windows XP 147

CMYK or RGB, matching vivid colors

Windows 2000 243

Windows Me/98/95 332

Windows NT 429

Windows XP 148

CMYK vs. RGB

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 324

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

CMYK, Proofing images

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

COLLATE FAIL message 523

Collating

Windows 2000 282

Windows Me/98/95 371

Windows NT 464

Windows XP 186

Color

100% CMY density 96

black, printing 41

creating custom colors 593,  
594, 596

Darkness adjustment 596

Hue adjustment for color 596

Lightness adjustment 596

Saturation adjustment 596

Vividness adjustment 596

Color adjusting

Adjust density 93

Color swatches 593, 594, 596

Color Tuning 93, 94

in software applications 596

message 523

of your monitor 596

Color adjustment

Color Tuning 93, 94

COLOR BALANCE ADJUST

message 523

Color casts

monitor white vs. paper white

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

trying to print white

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

Color density

100% CMY density 96

Color intensity

Adjusting 78, 79, 80

Decreasing 77

Increasing 77

Color matching, Bright colors

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

Color matching, Choosing a method

Windows 2000 239

Windows Me/98/95 328

Windows NT 425

Windows XP 144

Color matching, Factors that affect

how software displays color

Windows 2000 238

Windows Me/98/95 327

Windows NT 424

Windows XP 143

Monitor settings

Windows 2000 237

Windows Me/98/95 326

Windows NT 423

Windows XP 142

Paper types

Windows 2000 238

Windows Me/98/95 327

Windows NT 424

Windows XP 143

Printer driver color settings

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 325

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

RGB vs. CMYK

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 324

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

Viewing conditions

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 325

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

Color matching, No Color Matching

Windows 2000 249

Windows Me/98/95 338

Windows NT 435

Windows XP 154

Color matching, Print in Grayscale

Windows 2000 249

Windows Me/98/95 338

Windows NT 435

Windows XP 154

Color matching, Saturated colors

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

Color matching, Solid colors

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

Color matching, Specific colors

CMYK or RGB

Windows 2000 242

Windows Me/98/95 331

Windows NT 428

Windows XP 147

RGB only

Windows 2000 242

Windows Me/98/95 331

Windows NT 428

Windows XP 147

RGB or CMYK

Windows 2000 242

Windows Me/98/95 331

Windows NT 428

Windows XP 147

Windows 2000 242, 251

Windows Me/98/95 331, 340

Windows NT 428, 437

Windows XP 147, 156

Color matching, Vivid colors

CMYK or RGB

Windows 2000 243

Windows Me/98/95 332

- Windows NT 429
- Windows XP 148
- RGB only
  - Windows 2000 243
  - Windows Me/98/95 332
  - Windows NT 429
  - Windows XP 148
- RGB or CMYK
  - Windows 2000 243
  - Windows Me/98/95 332
  - Windows NT 429
  - Windows XP 148
- Windows 2000 243
- Windows Me/98/95 332
- Windows NT 429
- Windows XP 148
- Color matching, Warm or cool colors
  - Windows 2000 237
  - Windows Me/98/95 326
  - Windows NT 423
  - Windows XP 142
- Color Menu 93
  - default settings 581
- Color printing
  - black 41
  - restrict for clients 651
- Color Profiles
  - ICC Profiles
    - Windows 2000
      - PS or PCL 257
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS or PCL 346
    - Windows XP
      - PS or PCL 162
- Color Rendering Dictionary (CRD)
  - Using ICC Profiles
    - Windows 2000 254
    - Windows Me/98/95 344
- Windows XP 159
- Windows 2000 252
- Windows Me/98/95 341
- Windows NT 438
- Windows XP 157
- Color samples (swatches) 593
- Color Settings
  - Monitor (6500K) Perceptual
    - Windows 2000 251
    - Windows Me/98/95 340
    - Windows NT 437
    - Windows XP 156
  - Monitor (6500K) Vivid
    - Windows 2000 251
    - Windows Me/98/95 340
    - Windows NT 437
    - Windows XP 156
  - Monitor (9300K)
    - Windows 2000 251
    - Windows Me/98/95 340
    - Windows NT 437
    - Windows XP 156
- Color Settings, Photographs
  - Windows 2000 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 340
  - Windows NT 437
  - Windows XP 156
- Color Swatch Utility 593, 594, 596
- Color swatches
  - matching monitor
    - Windows 2000 247
    - Windows Me/98/95 336
    - Windows NT 433
    - Windows XP 152
  - print sample 594
  - Swatch Utility Read-me File 596
- Color Temperature
  - default
    - Windows 2000 237



- Windows Me/98/95 326
- Windows NT 423
- Windows XP 142
- Color Tuning 77, 78, 79, 80, 93
  - Color Tuning Pattern
    - Printing 78
    - Sample 79
  - Dark
    - by color 94
  - Darkness (Density)
    - by color 94
  - Highlight
    - by color 93
  - Mid-tone
    - by color 94
  - See also *Color Intensity*
- Color Utilities 24
- Color, Adjusting
  - Color swatches 596
- Colors
  - See also *Color matching*
- COMMUNICATION ERROR
  - message 523
- Company logos
  - Absolute Colorimetric
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - Color matching
    - Windows 2000 242, 246, 251
    - Windows Me/98/95 331, 335, 340
    - Windows NT 428, 432, 437
    - Windows XP 147, 151, 156
- Components 26
- Composite Black 41, 101
- Computer settings vs. Printer settings 52, 67, 70, 128, 133, 223, 228, 317, 410, 414
- Condensed, fonts 103

- Confidential documents
  - Deleting
    - Windows 2000 291
    - Windows Me/98/95 380
    - Windows NT 472
    - Windows XP 194
  - Printing
    - Windows 2000 290
    - Windows Me/98/95 379
    - Windows NT 471
    - Windows XP 193
  - Using
    - Windows 2000 287
    - Windows Me/98/95 377
    - Windows NT 469
    - Windows XP 191
- Consumables
  - life expectancy
    - fuser 118, 514
    - image drum 505
      - by color 118
    - toner 498
      - by color 118
    - transfer belt 118, 508
- Usage (Life)
  - Image drum
    - by color 118
  - Toner
    - by color 118
- Control (Front) Panel 63
  - Buttons
    - diagram 64, 65
  - Display (LCD)
    - diagram 63
  - Language on display 66
    - list of available 98
  - Lights
    - diagram 63
  - Messages
    - See *Messages*
- Costs
  - tracking 644

- CPU specifications 572
- CR Code
  - FX emulation 107
  - PCL emulation 101
  - PPR emulation 105
- Curl, paper 538
  - reducing 95
- Current printer settings
  - Printing a list 82
- Custom
  - colors, creating 593, 594, 596
- Custom page size
  - See *Paper Size*

## D

- Danish, display language 98
- Darkness, adjustment for color 596
- DATA ARRIVE message 523
- Data lost, when printer turned off 88
- DATA PRESENT message 523
- Data, complex print jobs 555
- Defaults
  - Menu Settings 579
- Defaults, Paper Feed
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 228
    - PS 223
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PS or PCL 317
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 414
    - PS 410
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 133
    - PS 128
- Defaults, Paper Size
  - Windows 2000

- PCL 228
- PS 223
- Windows Me/98/95
  - PS or PCL 317
- Windows NT
  - PCL 414
  - PS 410
- Windows XP
  - PCL 133
  - PS 128
- Demonstration Page 86
- Density adjustment for color 93, 94
- DHCP/BOOTP 111
- Diagrams
  - Color matching
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - of Control (Front) Panel
    - buttons 64
    - display 63
    - lights 63
  - of Interface Ports 61
  - of loading envelopes 48
  - of loading letterhead 47
- Digital camera
  - Color matching
    - Windows 2000 246, 251
    - Windows Me/98/95 335, 340
    - Windows NT 432, 437
    - Windows XP 151, 156
  - Input Profiles
    - Windows 2000
      - PS 254
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS 344
    - Windows XP
      - PS 159
- Dimensions, of printer 574

- DIMMO 99
- DISK FILE OPERATION
  - FAILED message 523
- DISK FULL 523
  - Overlays 480, 630
    - Windows 2000 297
    - Windows Me/98/95 387
    - Windows XP 200
  - Proof and Print
    - Windows 2000 283
    - Windows Me/98/95 373
    - Windows NT 465
    - Windows XP 187
  - Secure Print
    - Windows 2000 287
    - Windows Me/98/95 377
    - Windows NT 469
    - Windows XP 191
  - Store to Hard Disk
    - Windows 2000 292
    - Windows Me/98/95 381
    - Windows NT 473
    - Windows XP 195
- Disk Maintenance Menu 113
  - default settings 590
- Display
  - language
    - list of available 98
  - messages on
    - See *Messages*
- Disposal
  - of toner 500
- Documentation (Manuals) 24
- Double sided (duplex) printing
  - See *Duplex (double sided) printing*
- dpi (dots per inch) 90
- Drivers, printer 24
  - Choosing
    - Windows 2000 215
    - Windows Me/98/95 311
    - Windows NT 402
    - Windows XP 120
  - Default in Windows
    - Windows 2000 215
    - Windows Me/98/95 311
    - Windows NT 402
    - Windows XP 120
  - Paper size 68
  - Paper type 71
  - Paper weight 71
- Drum
  - See *Image drum*
- DRUM NEAR LIFE message 522
- Duplex (double sided) printing
  - 69, 72, 73
    - Binding 89
    - Heavy weight paper 74
    - Laid paper 74
    - Memory 555
    - Paper Size, effect of 69
    - Paper Type
      - effect of 72, 73
    - Paper Type, effect of 69
    - Paper Weight
      - effect of 72, 73
    - Paper Weight, effect of 69
    - Print Menu setting 89
    - Textured paper 74
    - Windows 2000
      - PCL 273
      - PS 271
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PCL or PS 364
      - PS or PCL 362
    - Windows NT
      - PCL 458
      - PS 456
    - Windows XP
      - PCL 177
      - PS 175

- Duplex unit
  - Enabling
    - Windows 2000
      - PCL 222
      - PS 221
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS or PCL 316
    - Windows NT
      - PCL 409
      - PS 408
    - Windows XP
      - PCL 127
      - PS 126
  - Installation 566
- Dutch, display language 98

## E

- Economy
  - Toner Save mode 40, 90
- ECP and parallel transmission mode 544
- Edit Size 90
- EEPROM INITIALIZE ERROR message 523
- EEPROM Reset
  - Reset user menu settings to factory defaults 116
- EEPROM, initialize 523
- Ejection, of paper 98
- Electrical
  - power consumption 574
- Embossed paper 74
- EMPTY message 523
- Emulations
  - domestic model 101
  - FX 106
  - HIPER-W 101
  - Maintenance Menu

- Personality 97
- PCL 99, 101
- Symbol Set 100
- Tray number, by tray 115
- Tray number, multi purpose tray 115
- PPR 103
- printer emulation language 97
- Enabling options
  - See *[option name]*
- Energy
  - power consumption 574
- English, display language 98
- Envelopes 578
  - Clasps 75
  - Damaged 75
  - Duplexing 69
  - Exit path
    - Stacker (Face-up)
      - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
      - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
      - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
      - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
- Loading 48

- diagram 55
- Manual paper feed 55
- Multi purpose (MP) tray 92
- Paper exit 69
- Paper Feed 69
- Paper Size 92
- part numbers 578
- Redi-Strip seal 578
- security 578
- Size 90
- Specifications 75
- Storage 75
- Temperature requirements for printing 75
- Window 75
- Environment
  - operating the printer 574
- Epson FX fonts 86
- Error log 86
- Error messages 52, 67, 70, 128, 133, 223, 228, 317, 410, 414, 522
  - LCD panel 63
  - when printing complex data 555
- ERROR PDF to PS conversion
  - failed 599
- ERROR POSTSCRIPT
  - message 523
- Error Report 98
- Errors
  - Error Log (Report) 86
- Ethernet, frame type 111
- EtherTalk
  - NETBEUI 111
  - Protocol 111

- Executive paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Exit Path
  - Paper Size, effect of 69
  - Paper Type
    - effect of 72, 73
  - Paper Type, effect of 69
  - Paper Weight
    - effect of 72, 73
  - Paper Weight, effect of 69

## F

- Face Down
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Type 72, 73
  - Paper Weight 72, 73
- Face Up
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper type 72, 73
  - Paper Weight 72, 73
- Printing 53
  - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
  - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
  - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
  - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
- Factory defaults
  - Menu Settings 579
  - Reset Printer (Menu) Settings 116
- Faded output 542

## Files

- deleting from HDD 624, 626
- list of files in printer's memory (HDD) 623
- viewing from HDD 624

## Fit to Letter

- FX emulation 107
- PPR emulation 105

## Flash memory

- change size 112
- initialize 112
- maintenance (Storage Device Manager) 600
- PCL
  - %Flash0% 620
  - 2 620
- storing forms 612

## Flip side

- Duplex printing 114

## Font cache, size 112

## Font substitution

- Windows Me/98/95 372

## Fonts, Condensed

- PPR 103

## Fonts, downloaded to Hard disk drive 99

## Fonts, Embedded fonts in PDF files 599

## Fonts, Epson FX 86

## Fonts, fixed space 99

## Fonts, Font Source

- PCL 99

## Fonts, IBM PPR 86

## Fonts, Internal fonts 572

## Fonts, List of

- FX 86
- PCL 86
- PPR 86
- PS 86

## Fonts, PCL 86

- downloaded 99
- Flash memory 99
- font DIMM ROM 99
- internal 99
- number 99
- Resident 99

## Fonts, PDF files 599

## Fonts, PostScript 86

- Windows 2000 215
- Windows Me/98/95 311
- Windows NT 402
- Windows XP 120

## Fonts, proportional 99

## Fonts, True Type

- Windows 2000 215
- Windows Me/98/95 311
- Windows NT 402
- Windows XP 120

## Fonts, width (pitch) 99

## Form length

- FX emulation 107
- PPR emulation 105

## Forms

- ID number 622
- PCL Macros 615
- PostScript 608
- Storage Device Manager 608
- storing in printer flash memory 612
- storing on printer hard disk drive 612
- test print 614
- volume number 620
- Frame type, Ethernet 111
- French, display language 98
- Front (Control) Panel
  - Messages
    - See *Control (Front) Panel*
    - See *Messages*
- Front (Control) panel
  - See *Control (Front) Panel*
- Front panel
  - See *Control (Front) Panel*
- Fuser
  - cautions for handling 514
  - changing 514
  - FUSER UNIT MISSING message 523
  - Handling precautions 532
  - life expectancy 118, 514
  - Paper jams 532
  - roller damaged 70
- Fuser roller
  - damaged 70
- Fuser unit 514
  - part numbers 576
- FX Emulation Menu 106
  - default settings 585

## G

- Gateway address 111
- German, display language 98
- Glossy paper
  - Windows 2000 238
  - Windows Me/98/95 327
  - Windows NT 424
  - Windows XP 143
- Grain, of Paper 74
- Graphics applications vs. 'office' applications
  - Windows 2000 238
  - Windows Me/98/95 327
  - Windows NT 424
  - Windows XP 143
- Graphics, .eps files
  - Windows 2000 215
  - Windows Me/98/95 311
  - Windows NT 402
  - Windows XP 120
- Graphics, and monitor setting
  - Windows XP 142
- Graphics, and monitor settings
  - Windows 2000 237, 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 326, 340
  - Windows NT 423, 437
  - Windows XP 156
- Graphics, office printing
  - Windows 2000 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 340
  - Windows NT 437
  - Windows XP 156
- Graphics, PostScript
  - Windows 2000 215
  - Windows Me/98/95 311
  - Windows NT 402
  - Windows XP 120

## Graphics, professional

Windows 2000

PS 254

Windows Me/98/95

PS 344

Windows XP

PS 159

## Graphs

Color matching

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

## Grayscale Printing

Windows 2000 249

Windows Me/98/95 338

Windows NT 435

Windows XP 154

## H

### Hard disk drive 562

0 partition (PCL) 620

1 partition (Common) 620

deleting a document

Windows 2000

PCL or PS 295

Windows Me/98/95

PCL or PS 385

Windows NT

PCL or PS 477

Windows XP

PCL or PS 198

deleting files 624, 626

Show Resources vs. Administrator Functions 605

Disk Maintenance Menu 113

Enabling

Windows 2000

PCL 218

PS 217

Windows Me/98/95

PS or PCL 314

Windows NT

PCL 405

PS 404

Windows XP

PCL 123

PS 122

fonts, downloaded 99

formatting (Storage Device Manager) 604

formatting partitions 605

Initialize

automatically 565

Cautions before doing 565

manually 565

through Storage Device Manager 565

Maintenance 113

maintenance (Storage Device Manager) 600

needed for Password print jobs 562

needed for Proof and Print 562

needed for Secure Print jobs 562

Partitions 113

Formatting 113

Size 113

Print Jobs Menu 85

printing a document

Windows 2000

PCL or PS 294

Windows Me/98/95

PCL or PS 384

Windows NT

PCL or PS 476

Windows XP



- PCL or PS 197
- PS partition 620
- Shutdown sequence 88
- storing a document
  - Windows 2000 292
  - Windows Me/98/95 381
  - Windows NT 473
  - Windows XP 195
- storing forms 612
- viewing files 624
- Heat
  - Printing specifications 74, 75, 76
- Heavy
  - Paper Weight 72, 73, 91
- Height
  - font 99
- Hexadecimal dump 115
- Horizontal print position
  - adjustment 114
  - for duplex 114
- HST files 611
- Hue, adjustment for color 596
- Humidity
  - operating specifications 574
  - storage specifications 574

## I

- IBM PPR
  - Fonts 86
- ID Check Pattern 87
- ID number
  - Overlays 620
- IEEE-1284, and parallel transmission mode 544
- Image compression 573

- Image drum 505
  - Blanking plate 33
  - cautions for handling 505
  - changing 522
  - cleaning 115, 552
  - Exposure to light 32
  - exposure to light 32, 505
  - green surface 505
  - handling precautions 32, 530
  - Heavy weight paper 74
  - if exposed to light 530
  - Laid paper 74
  - Life
    - by color 118
  - life expectancy 505
    - by color 118
    - effects of cleaning 115
    - with heavy weight paper 74
    - with laid paper 74
    - with textured paper 74
  - life of a new toner 498
  - part numbers 575
  - Protective sheet 32
  - replacing 505
  - Test pattern (only used Authorized Service) 87
- Image expansion 573
- Information Menu 86
- Initialization sequence 56
- Initialize
  - EEPROM 523
  - FLASH 112
  - Hard disk drive 113
  - Network 111
- Input devices
  - digital cameras
  - Windows 2000 254

- Windows Me/98/95 344
- Windows XP 159
- Profiles
  - Windows 2000
    - PS 254
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PS 344
  - Windows XP
    - PS 159
- INSTALL ADDITIONAL MEMORY message 524
- INSTALL NEW IMAGE DRUM message 524
- INSTALL NEW TONER message 524
- INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE message 524
- Interface
  - Network 61, 62
  - Parallel 61, 62, 109
  - USB 61, 62, 110
- INVALID DATA message 524
- IP address 111
- I-Prime 109
- Italian, display language 98
- ITEM button 65
- J**
- Job file list 86
- L**
- Labels
  - Carrier sheet 76
  - Color laser printers 76
  - Duplexing 73
  - Exit path
    - Face-up (Stacker)
      - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
  - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
  - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
  - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
  - Multi purpose (MP) tray 92
  - Paper Exit 73
  - Paper Feed 73
  - Paper Weight 73
  - Photocopier 76
  - Recommendations 76
    - website 76
  - Temperature requirements for printing 76
  - Thickness 73
- Labels, for identifying paper trays
  - media size 570
- Landscape
  - Envelopes 48
  - Letterhead 47
- Language, on control (front) panel display 66
  - list of available languages 98
- Language, print languages 572
- LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)
  - Panel 63
    - See *Messages*
- LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) Panel
  - diagram 63
- LED head
  - cleaning 504, 505, 517, 540, 541, 542
    - precautions 504
  - Head restraint 30

- Legal
  - Tray *number* 114
- Legal 13 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Legal 14 paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Letter
  - fit to letter
    - FX emulation 107
    - PPR emulation 105
  - printing on A4 101
- Letter paper size
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
- Letterhead 91
  - Hard disk drive
    - Windows 2000 292
    - Windows Me/98/95 381
    - Windows NT 473
    - Windows XP 195
  - How to load 42, 47
    - diagram 55
  - Loading 42, 47
  - Manual paper feed 55
  - Overlays
    - Windows 2000 296, 297, 298, 299
    - Windows Me/98/95 386, 387, 388, 389
    - Windows NT 478, 479, 482, 483, 628, 629
    - Windows XP 199, 200, 201, 202
  - Paper (Media) Type 91, 92
- LF function
  - FX emulation 107
  - PCL emulation 101
  - PPR emulation 105
- Life expectancy
  - of printer 574
- Light
  - Paper Weight 72, 73, 91
- Lighting
  - daylight monitor settings
    - Windows 2000 237
    - Windows Me/98/95 326
    - Windows NT 423
    - Windows XP 142
  - sunlight vs. fluorescent
    - Windows 2000 236
    - Windows Me/98/95 325
    - Windows NT 422
    - Windows XP 141
- Lightness, adjustment for color 596
- Lights
  - Attention 63
  - Control (Front) Panel
    - diagram 63
  - Ready 56, 63
- Line length
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105
- Line pitch
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105
- Line spacing
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105

- Lines
  - lines per page 90
  - minimum width and pen width
    - adjust 102
    - printing fine lines 102
- Lines, on output
  - 113 mm intervals 540
  - 44 - 94 mm intervals 540
  - See also *Print Quality Problems*
  - evenly spaced 540
  - White, horizontal
    - 115
- LOAD message 524
- Loading paper 42, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52
  - precautions 42
- Location 25
- Logos
  - Matching colors
    - Windows 2000 242
    - Windows Me/98/95 331
    - Windows NT 428
    - Windows XP 147
- Logs
  - printing information 651
- Long edge
  - duplex (double sided) printing
    - Print Menu setting 89
  - Long edge feed 92
- LOW TONER
  - menu setting 98
- LPT WRITE ERROR message 548
- M**
- Maintenance
  - Fuser unit, replacing 514
  - Image drum
    - cleaning 115
  - Image drum, changing 505
  - LED head, cleaning 517
  - Toner cartridge, changing 498
  - Transfer belt, changing 508
- Maintenance Menu 116
  - default settings 592
- Manual paper feed
  - Cautions for using 55
  - Multi purpose (MP) tray 55
- MANUAL TIMEOUT
  - display interval of request for paper 97
- Manuals 24
- Margins
  - Left
    - FX emulation 107
    - PCL emulation 101
    - PPR emulation 105
  - minimum 573
- Measurements
  - of printer 574
- Media
  - See Paper 70
  - See *Paper*
- Media Check
  - Print Menu setting 89
- Media Menu 91, 92
  - default settings 580
- MEDIA MISMATCH message 524
- Media Type
  - Settings 52, 67, 70
- Medium
  - paper weight 72, 73
- Medium Heavy
  - Paper Weight 72, 73, 91

- Medium Light
  - Paper Weight 91
  - paper weight 72, 73
- Memory 555
  - available sizes 555
  - Enabling
    - Windows 2000
      - PS only 216
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS only 312
    - Windows NT
      - PS only 403
    - Windows XP
      - PS only 121
  - Flash
    - change size 112
    - initialization 112
  - Font cache size 112
  - list of files in printer's memory 623
  - Memory overflow
    - automatic recovery 97
    - optional 572
  - Receive buffer size 112
  - specifications 572
  - standard 572
- Memory Menu 112
  - default settings 589
- Menu
  - Restore menu 116
- Menu (Printer) Settings 82
  - Changing 83
  - Current 82
  - Lists of available settings 85
  - Menu Map 86
  - Network 111
  - Menu Map 111
  - Printing 82
  - Printing a list 82
  - reset to factory defaults 84
  - revert to stored settings 116
- Menu button 64
- Menu items
  - LCD panel 63
- Menu Map
  - Network 111
  - Printing 111
- Printing 86
- Menu Mode
  - Entering 64
  - Exiting 64
  - Moving backward 65
  - Moving through 64, 65
  - ONLINE button 64
  - Selecting settings 65

- Menus
  - Color 93
  - Disk Maintenance 113
  - FX Emulation 106
  - Information 86
  - Lists of Menus 85
  - Maintenance 116
  - Media 91, 92
  - Memory 112
  - Network 111
  - Parallel 109
  - PCL Emulation 99
  - PPR Emulation 103
  - Print 89
  - Print Jobs 85
  - Shutdown 88
  - System Adjust 114, 115
  - System Configuration 97
  - Test Print 87
  - Usage 117, 118
  - USB 110
- Message
  - ERROR PDF to PS conversion failed 599
- Messages
  - \* Asterisk symbol, repeating 526
  - Control (Front) Panel display 522, 526
  - Listed by message 522
- Messages, amount of time before deleting
  - PCL 97
  - PS 97
- Messages, CHANGE TONER 39
- Messages, DISK FULL
  - Overlays
    - Windows 2000 297
    - Windows Me/98/95 387
    - Windows XP 200
- Proof and Print
  - Windows 2000 283
  - Windows Me/98/95 373
  - Windows NT 465
  - Windows XP 187
- Secure Print
  - Windows 2000 287
  - Windows Me/98/95 377
  - Windows NT 469
  - Windows XP 191
- Store to Hard Disk
  - Windows 2000 292
  - Windows Me/98/95 381
  - Windows NT 473
  - Windows XP 195
- Messages, Error log 86
- Messages, Error messages don't display 97
- Messages, LOW TONER
  - menu setting 98
- Messages, MANUAL TIMEOUT 97
- Messages, ONLINE 56
- Messages, TONER LOW 39
- Messages, WAIT TIMEOUT 98
- Metric (US Bond) paper
  - Duplexing 72
  - Paper Exit 72
  - Paper Feed 72
  - Paper Weight 72
- Misalignment
  - when printing color 95
- Monitor Color Temperature
  - 5000k
    - Windows 2000 237
    - Windows Me/98/95 326
    - Windows NT 423

- Windows XP 142
- 6500k
  - Windows 2000 237, 246
  - Windows Me/98/95 326, 335
  - Windows NT 423, 432
  - Windows XP 142, 151
- 9300k
  - Windows 2000 237, 246
  - Windows Me/98/95 326, 335
  - Windows NT 423, 432
  - Windows XP 142, 151
- default
  - Windows 2000 237
  - Windows Me/98/95 326
  - Windows NT 423
  - Windows XP 142
- Monitor display doesn't match output
  - Windows 2000 236
  - Windows Me/98/95 324
  - Windows NT 422
  - Windows XP 141
- Monitor, matching color swatches
  - Windows 2000 247
  - Windows Me/98/95 336
  - Windows NT 433
  - Windows XP 152
- Monochrome
  - printing 154, 249, 338, 435
- Moving the printer 29, 520
  - LED head restraint 30
  - packing materials 521
  - sealing the toner 521
- Multi purpose (MP) tray 117
  - Manual paper feed 55
  - Page count 117
  - Paper Sizes 67, 69, 92
  - Paper Type 72, 73, 92
  - Paper Weight 72, 73, 92
  - PCL Emulation Tray number 115
  - Print Menu setting 89
  - Specifying use 89
  - Tray 0 522
- Multiple pages
  - Printed on one sheet
    - Windows 2000
      - PCL 259
      - PS 258
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PCL 349
      - PS 347
    - Windows NT
      - PCL 441
      - PS 440
    - Windows XP
      - PCL 164
      - PS 163

## N

- NCR Paper 74
- Netware Protocol 111

## Network

- communication protocol 97
  - DHCP/BOOTP 111
  - Ethernet frame type 111
  - EtherTalk protocol 111
  - Gateway address 111
  - graphic-intensive applications 555
  - Initialization 111
  - installation and Administrator's authority 62
  - Interfaces 61, 62
  - IP address 111
  - Menu Map 111
  - NETBEUI protocol 111
  - Netware protocol 111
  - RARP 111
  - Self-diagnosis tests 111
  - Subnet mask 111
  - TCP/IP protocol 111
  - tracking printer usage 646
- NETWORK ERROR message 524
- Network interface 573
- Network Menu 111
  - default settings 588
- Network Printer Status Utility 733
  - Windows 2000 233
  - Windows Me/98/95 321
  - Windows NT 419
  - Windows XP 138
- Network Utilities 24
- No Color Matching
  - Windows 2000 249
  - Windows Me/98/95 338
  - Windows NT 435
  - Windows XP 154

## Noises 551

Norwegian, display language 98

## Numbers

for identifying paper trays 570

Zero (0) character

FX emulation 107

PPR emulation 104

## N-up printing

Windows 2000

PCL 259

PS 258

Windows Me/98/95

PCL 349

PS 347

Windows NT

PCL 441

PS 440

Windows XP

PCL 164

PS 163

## O

### O

Letter style

FX emulation 107

PPR emulation 104

Office applications vs. graphics applications

Windows 2000 238

Windows Me/98/95 327

Windows NT 424

Windows XP 143

Office graphics

Windows 2000 246

Windows Me/98/95 335

Windows NT 432

Windows XP 151

Office printing

Monitor settings

Windows 2000 251



- Windows Me/98/95 340
- Windows NT 437
- Windows XP 156
- OFFLINE message 524
- Offline receive
  - Parallel 109
  - USB 110
- OKI Bright White Proofing Paper
  - part numbers 577
- OKI Color Matching
  - Windows 2000 249
    - PS 250
  - Windows Me/98/95 338
    - PS 339
  - Windows NT 435
    - PS 436
  - Windows XP 154
    - PS 155
- OKI LPR Utility 737
- OKI Premium Card Stock
  - part numbers 577
- OKI Premium Color Transparencies
  - part numbers 577
- OKI Premium Envelopes
  - part numbers 578
- OKI print media 577
- OKI SynFlex
  - part numbers 577
- On/Off switch 56, 59
- ONLINE
  - printer does not go online 551
- ONLINE button 64
- ONLINE message 56, 524
- OPEN UPPER COVER
  - message 524

- Options
  - Duplex unit 566
  - Internal hard disk 562
  - Memory 555
  - Paper trays 567
- Out of paper
  - automatic switching 89
    - sequence of use 89
  - switch to next available tray 50
    - sequence of use 51
- Output
  - devices
    - Output Profiles
      - Windows 2000 254
      - Windows Me/98/95 344
      - Windows XP 159
    - output doesn't match monitor display
      - Windows 2000 236, 237
      - Windows Me/98/95 324, 326
      - Windows NT 422, 423
      - Windows XP 141, 142
  - Profiles
    - Windows 2000
      - PS 254
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS 344
    - Windows XP
      - PS 159
  - Output tray
    - Face Up
      - Capacity
        - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
        - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
        - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
        - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171

- Overlays
  - ID number 620
- Overlays, Creating
  - Windows 2000 297
  - Windows Me/98/95 387
  - Windows NT 479, 629
  - Windows XP 200
- Overlays, Defining
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 306
    - PS 302
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PCL 396
    - PS 392
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 490, 642
    - PS 486, 641
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 209
    - PS 205
- Overlays, Description
  - Windows 2000 296
  - Windows Me/98/95 386
  - Windows NT 478, 628
  - Windows XP 199
- Overlays, Documents to use as
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 298
    - PS 299
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PCL 388
    - PS 389
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 482
    - PS 483
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 201
    - PS 202

- Overlays, Downloading
  - Windows 2000 300
  - Windows Me/98/95 390
  - Windows NT 484
  - Windows XP 203
- Overlays, Example
  - Windows 2000 296
  - Windows Me/98/95 386
  - Windows NT 478, 628
  - Windows XP 199

## **P**

- Packaging
  - for shipment
    - LED head restraint 30
  - materials
    - for shipping the printer 29
- Packing materials
  - shipping the printer 521
- Page counts
  - by Tray Number 117
  - Color vs. Mono 651
  - Color, pages printed with 117
  - Monochrome, pages printed with 117
  - Multi purpose (MP) tray 117
  - restricting printing 651
  - Total 117
- Page Size
  - See *Paper Size*
- Paper
  - adding paper 495
  - order of use
    - oldest paper first 495
  - tear proof 577
  - waterproof 577
- Paper (Media)
  - part numbers 577

**Paper (Media) Size**

by paper tray 573

**Paper curl**

reducing 95

when fed 538

**Paper Exit**

and Paper Size 69

**Capacity**

**Face Up**

Windows 2000 224, 232,  
262, 266

Windows Me/98/95 319,  
352, 356

Windows NT 411, 418,  
444, 450

Windows XP 129, 137,  
167, 171

capacity 573

effect of

Paper Type 72, 73

Paper Weight 72, 73

**Paper Exit, Rear**

Paper Sizes 69

Paper type 72, 73

Paper Weight 72, 73

**Paper Exit, Top**

Paper Sizes 69

Paper Type 72, 73

Paper Weight 72, 73

**Paper Feed**

effect of

Paper Type 72, 73

Paper Weight 72, 73

Problems 538

too many sheets are fed 538

**Paper Feed, and Paper Size 69**

**Paper Feed, Auto Tray Switch**

set to ON 49

**Paper Feed, Automatic**

ejection 98

switching between trays 50

sequence of use 51

**Paper Feed, Defaults**

Windows 2000

PCL 228

PS 223

Windows Me/98/95

PS or PCL 317

Windows NT

PCL 414

PS 410

Windows XP

PCL 133

PS 128

**Paper Feed, Long Edge first**

Windows 2000 264

Windows NT 448

Windows XP 169

**Paper Feed, Manual paper feed**

55, 97

**Paper Feed, MP Tray 55**

Paper Sizes 69

Paper Types 72, 73

Paper Weights 72, 73

**Paper Feed, Opening and**

closing the rear paper exit 53,

54, 55

**Paper Feed, Paper Size, effect**

of 69

**Paper Feed, Paper Type, effect**

of 69

**Paper Feed, Paper Weight,**

effect of 69

**Paper Feed, Selecting 52**

**Paper Feed, Settings 52, 67, 70**

- Paper Feed, Short Edge first
  - Windows 2000 264
  - Windows NT 448
  - Windows XP 169
- Paper Feed, Source, through
  - Print Menu 89
- Paper Feed, Straight through
  - path 53, 54
- Paper Feed, Switching between
  - paper trays 49
- Paper Feed, Tray 1
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weights 72, 73
- Paper Feed, Tray 2
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weights 72, 73
- Paper Feed, Tray 3
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weight 72, 73
- Paper gauge
  - 30 pages left 495
- Paper guides 44
  - adjusting 496
- PAPER JAM message 524
- Paper jams
  - clearing 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 534, 535, 537
    - print job cancelled 98
    - print job continues 98
    - printer does not print after
      - jam is cleared 539
- Duplex Unit 535
- frequent 538
- Front cover 529
- Fuser unit 532
- jam recovery, menu setting 98
- Opening and closing the rear
  - paper exit 53, 54, 55
- Paper loading precautions 42
- Paper separator 534
- Paper tray 528
- Paper trays, additional 537
- preventing 496
  - use oldest paper first 495
- Rear cover 531
- Straight-through exit 531
- Transfer belt 530
- Paper Loading 42, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52
  - Letterhead 42, 47
  - Paper loading precautions 42
- Paper out
  - Automatically switch to next
    - available paper tray 49, 50, 89
    - sequence of use 51
- Paper Size 69
  - Double sided printing, effect on 69
  - matching print job to tray 89
  - Paper Exit, effect on 69
  - Paper Feed, effect on 69
  - print data paper size doesn't
    - match paper tray 89
  - Printer request 550
  - Printing one size onto another 90
  - Single sided printing, effect on 69

- PAPER SIZE ERROR message 524
- Paper Size, A4 69
- Paper Size, A5 69
- Paper Size, A6 69
- Paper Size, Automatic recognition 67
- Paper Size, B5 69
- Paper Size, Custom 67, 69, 89
  - Duplexing 69
  - Paper exit 69
  - Paper Feed 69
  - Units of measure 92
    - length 92
    - width 92
- Windows 2000
  - PCL 265
  - PS 261
- Windows Me/98/95
  - PCL 355
  - PS 351
- Windows NT
  - PCL 449
  - PS 443
- Windows XP
  - PCL 170
  - PS 166
- Paper Size, Defaults
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 228
    - PS 223
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PS or PCL 317
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 414
    - PS 410
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 133
    - PS 128

- Paper Size, effect on duplex (double sided) printing 69
  - Exit Path options 69
  - Paper Feed options 69
- Paper Size, Envelopes 69
- Paper Size, Error Messages 64
- Paper Size, Executive 69
- Paper Size, Face down 69
- Paper Size, Face Up 69
- Paper Size, Fit to Letter
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105
- Paper Size, Legal 13 69
- Paper Size, Legal 14 69
- Paper Size, Length
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105
- Paper Size, Letter 69
- Paper Size, Manual Feed 67
- Paper Size, MP Tray 67, 69
- Paper Size, MP tray 92
- Paper Size, Printer driver 68
- Paper Size, Rear exit 69
- Paper Size, Selecting 67, 68
- Paper Size, Settings 52, 67, 70
- Paper Size, Standard 89
- Paper Size, Top exit 69
- Paper Size, Tray 1 69
- Paper Size, Tray 2 69
- Paper Size, Tray 3 69
- Paper Size, Tray *number* 114
- Paper Size, Wrong paper size 64
- Paper skew 573
- Paper source
  - See *Paper Feed*

- Paper trays
  - capacity 573
  - Custom page size
    - See *Paper Size*
  - Identifying with
    - labels (media size) 570
    - numbers 570
  - Multi purpose (MP) tray
    - See *Multi purpose (MP) tray*
    - See *Paper Size*
  - order of use 497
    - oldest paper first 495
  - Page counts
    - See *Page counts*
  - Rear Cover 531
  - Selecting 52
  - Straight-through exit 531
  - Tray 0 is the MP Tray 522
- Paper trays, Auto Tray Switch
  - set to ON 49
- Paper trays, Automatic switching
  - 50, 89
    - sequence of use 51, 89
- Paper trays, Enabling
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL 220
    - PS 219
  - Windows Me/98/95
    - PS or PCL 315
  - Windows NT
    - PCL 407
    - PS 406
  - Windows XP
    - PCL 125
    - PS 124
- Paper trays, Matching print job
  - paper size to tray 89
- Paper trays, optional 567
- Paper trays, Paper size
  - automatic recognition 67
- Paper trays, PCL emulation
  - number 115
    - multipurpose tray 115
- Paper trays, Sequence of use
  - automatic tray switching 89
- Paper trays, Source
  - through Print Menu 89
- Paper trays, Switching between trays 49
- Paper trays, Tray *number*
  - paper size 114
- Paper trays, Weight setting, Media Menu 91
- Paper Type
  - and Print Quality 70
    - Automatic detection 70
    - Bond 91
    - Card stock 91
    - Change settings 70
    - effect on
      - double sided printing 72, 73
      - duplex (double sided) printing 69, 72, 73
      - Exit Path 69, 72, 73
      - Paper Exit (exit path) 72, 73
      - Paper Feed 72, 73

- single sided printing 72, 73
- Face down 72, 73
- Face Up 72, 73
- Letterhead 91
- MP tray 72, 73, 92
- Printer driver 71
- Rear exit 72, 73
- Recycled 91
- Rough 91
- Selecting 70
- Settings 52, 67, 70
- Top exit 72, 73
- Transparencies 91
- Tray 1 72, 73
- Tray 2 72, 73
- Tray 3 72, 73
- Windows 2000 238
- Windows Me/98/95 327
- Windows NT 424
- Windows XP 143
- Paper Weight
  - and Print Quality 70
  - Auto 91
  - Automatic detection 70, 91
  - by Paper Tray 91
  - Change settings 70
  - effect on
    - double sided printing 72, 73
    - duplex (double sided) printing 72, 73
    - Exit Path 72, 73
    - Paper Exit (exit path) 72, 73
    - Paper Feed 69, 72, 73
    - paper trays (paper feed) 72, 73
    - single sided printing 72, 73
    - stacker capacity
      - Windows 2000 224, 232,
      - 262, 266
    - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
    - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
    - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
  - Face down 72, 73
  - Face Up 72, 73
  - Heavy 72, 73, 91
  - Light 72, 73, 91
  - Medium 72, 73
  - Medium Heavy 72, 73, 91
  - Medium Light 72, 73, 91
  - MP Tray 72, 73
  - Multi purpose (MP) tray 92
  - Printer driver 71
  - Rear exit 72, 73
  - Selecting 70
  - Top exit 72, 73
  - Tray 1 72, 73
  - Tray 2 72, 73
  - Tray 3 72, 73
  - Ultra Heavy 72, 73, 91
- Paper, Carbon paper 74
- Paper, Card stock 53, 54
- Paper, Cut-outs 74
- Paper, Embossed 74
- Paper, Finishes 74
- Paper, glossy paper 74
  - Windows 2000 238
  - Windows Me/98/95 327
  - Windows NT 424
  - Windows XP 143
- Paper, Grain differences 74
- Paper, Handling precautions 42
- Paper, Headed 74

- Paper, Label
  - Duplexing 73
  - Paper Exit 73
  - Paper Feed 73
  - Paper Weight 73
- Paper, Laid paper 74
- Paper, Menu settings 91, 92
- Paper, NCR paper 74
- Paper, Perforations 74
- Paper, Photosensitive 74
- Paper, Pressure sensitive 74
- Paper, Ragged edges 74
- Paper, Recommendations
  - website 74
- Paper, Recycled 74
  - Windows 2000 238
  - Windows Me/98/95 327
  - Windows NT 424
  - Windows XP 143
- Paper, Rough 74
- Paper, Shiny 74
- Paper, Smooth 74
- Paper, Specifications 74
- Paper, Storage 74
- Paper, Temperature
  - requirements for printing 74
- Paper, Textured paper 74
- Paper, Thermal transfer 74
- Paper, Thick paper 53, 54
- Paper, Transparencies
  - Duplexing 73
  - Paper Exit 73
  - Paper Feed 73
  - Paper Weight 73

- Paper, US Bond (Metric)
  - Duplexing 72
  - Paper Exit 72
  - Paper Feed 72
  - Paper Weight 72
- Parallel
  - ACK 109
  - ACK Width 109
  - bi-directional 109
  - BUSY 109
  - ECP 109
  - Interface 61, 62, 109
    - cannot configure 545
    - output garbled 546
    - Parallel Transmission Mode 544
    - problems 544, 545, 546
  - I-Prime 109
  - Menu 109
  - Offline Receive 109
  - Parallel Emulation Menu
    - default settings 586
  - Parallel interface 572
    - cable specifications 572
    - connection 572
    - interface levels 572
    - transmission mode 572
  - Parallel Transmission Mode 544
    - reception 109
- Partitions, of Hard disk drive 113
- Password print jobs
  - install the optional hard disk drive 562



- Administrative 607
  - Windows 2000 287
  - Windows Me/98/95 377
  - Windows NT 469
  - Windows XP 191
- PCL
  - Composite Black, printing 41
  - printing black 41
  - True black, printing 41
- PCL Emulation Menu 99
  - default settings 583
- PCL Macros (forms) 615
- PCL5c
  - internal font 572
  - print language 572
- PDF
  - embedded fonts 599
  - printing files 597
- PDF Direct Print Utility 597
- Pen width 102
- Perforations
  - in Paper 74
- Photographs, and monitor settings
  - Windows 2000 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 340
  - Windows NT 437
  - Windows XP 156
- Photographs, Color matching
  - RGB only
    - Windows 2000 241
    - Windows Me/98/95 330
    - Windows NT 427
    - Windows XP 146
  - RGB or CMYK
    - Windows 2000 241
    - Windows Me/98/95 330
  - Windows XP 146
- Soft-Proofing
  - Windows 2000 241
  - Windows Me/98/95 330
  - Windows XP 146
- Windows 2000 241, 246, 251
  - PS 253
- Windows Me/98/95 330, 335, 340, 342
  - Windows NT 427, 432, 437
  - PS 439
- Windows XP 146, 151, 156
  - PS 158
- Photographs, Color Settings
  - Windows 2000 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 340
  - Windows NT 437
  - Windows XP 156
- Photographs, printing 41
- Photosensitive Paper 74
- PIN number
  - Storage Device Manager 605
- Pitch (width)
  - font 99
- PLEASE POWER OFF message 524
- Points
  - Font Height 99
- Polish, display language 98
- Portrait
  - Envelopes 48
  - Letterhead 47
- Ports, of the printer 61
- Portuguese, display language 98
- Posters, printing
  - Windows 2000
    - PCL only 309
  - Windows Me/98/95

- PCL only 399
  - Windows NT
    - PCL only 493
  - Windows XP
    - PCL only 212
- PostScript
  - Communication Protocol Mode
    - Network 97
    - USB 97
  - Forms 608
  - process simulation generator 95
- PostScript Color Matching
  - Windows 2000 249, 252
  - Windows Me/98/95 338, 341
  - Windows NT 435, 438
  - Windows XP 154, 157
- PostScript Driver
  - Color matching
    - Windows 2000 248
    - Windows Me/98/95 337
    - Windows NT 434
    - Windows XP 153
- PostScript Fonts 86
  - Windows 2000 215
  - Windows Me/98/95 311
  - Windows NT 402
  - Windows XP 120
- PostScript3
  - internal font 572
  - print language 572
- Power
  - On/off switch 56, 59
  - operating specifications 574
  - Power cable 56
  - Power off sequence
    - Shutdown sequence 88
  - Power Save 60, 116
    - delays in printing 552
    - Setting the time 97
  - power saving specifications 574
  - Shutdown Sequence 88
  - specifications 573, 574
  - standby specifications 574
  - Start up sequence 56
  - time to startup 573
- POWER SAVE message 524
- PPR Emulation Menu 103
  - default settings 584
- Pressure Sensitive Paper 74
- Print
  - condensing 101
  - Print overrun
    - automatic recovery 97
  - Print Position adjustment
    - horizontal 114
      - for duplex 114
    - vertical 114
      - for duplex 114
- Print in Grayscale
  - Windows 2000 249
  - Windows Me/98/95 338
  - Windows NT 435
  - Windows XP 154
- Print Job Accounting
  - requirements 646
  - tracking usage and costs 644
- Print jobs
  - Cancel 64
  - complex 555
  - lots of graphics 555
- Print Jobs Menu 85
- Print logs 651
- Print margin
  - menu setting, PCL 101

Print Menu 89

- Copies, number of 89
- default settings 579
- Duplex 89

PRINT MENU MAP message 82

Print processing

- does not start 553
- slow 553
- stops 553
- takes a long time to start 552

Print quality

- 100% CMY density 96
- accuracy 573
- Adjust density 93
- adjusting color 93, 94, 596
- adjusting your monitor's colors 596
- and Fuser Roller 70
- and Paper type 70
- and Paper weight 70
- black, printing 41
- blurred text 517
- colors don't align 95
- environmental specifications 574
- faint print 498
- Heavy weight paper 74
- humidity specifications 574
- Laid paper 74
- lines 102
- not clear 517
- Print Resolution 90
- Registration 94
- resolution 572
- temperature specifications 574
- Textured paper 74
- white lines on output 517

Print quality problems 540

- aded print 542
- black stripes 540
- blurred print 541
- color adjusting 523
- color balance adjust 523
- colors don't align 95
- Demonstration Page 86
- evenly spaced lines or spots on output 540
- Lines on output
  - 44 - 94 mm intervals 540
- lines on output
  - 113 mm intervals 540
  - black 540
  - evenly spaced 540
  - white 540
- output doesn't match monitor 141, 236, 324, 422
- output is garbled or incorrect 543, 546
- shading 543
- spots, on output
  - 113 mm intervals 540
  - 44 - 94 mm intervals 540
  - evenly spaced 540
- stripes, on output
  - black 540
  - white 540
- toner rubs off output 543
- White doesn't print white
  - Windows 2000 253
  - Windows Me/98/95 342
  - Windows NT 439
  - Windows XP 158

Print queue

- High priority 89
- List 86

- Print resolution 572
  - and slow printing 553
  - Print Menu setting 90
- Print speed
  - heavy weight paper 74
  - laid paper 74
  - monochrome 90
  - specifications 573
  - textured paper 74
- Print start position 573
  - FX emulation 107
  - PPR emulation 105
- Print start times 572
- Print Status
  - LCD panel 63
- Printer
  - access 644
  - Components 26
  - Control panel 63
  - Cover, right side 529
  - CPU specifications 572
  - depth 574
  - dimensions 574
  - does not go ONLINE 551
  - does not print 539
  - height 574
  - life expectancy 574
  - Location 25
  - measurements 574
  - moving 29
  - LED head restraint 30
  - operating environment 574
  - operating specifications 574
  - packing materials 543
  - Ports 61
  - print method 572
  - Printer does not print 78
  - registering 651
  - Settings 82
  - Shipping the printer 29
  - Space around 25
  - specifications 572
  - storage specifications 574
  - tracking usage 644
  - Unpacking 23
  - weight 574
  - width 574
- Printer (Menu) Settings
  - factory defaults, resetting to 116
  - See *Menu (Printer) Settings*
- Printer does not print 52, 67, 70, 128, 133, 223, 228, 317, 410, 414
- Printer drivers 24
  - Choosing
    - Windows 2000 215
    - Windows Me/98/95 311
    - Windows NT 402
    - Windows XP 120
  - Color settings
    - Windows 2000 236
    - Windows Me/98/95 325
    - Windows NT 422
    - Windows XP 141
  - Default driver in Windows
    - Windows 2000 215
    - Windows Me/98/95 311
    - Windows NT 402

- Windows XP 120
- Paper size 68
- Paper type 71
- Paper weight 71
- Printer Settings
  - Changing 83
  - Current 82
  - Network 111
  - Printing 82
  - Printing a list 82
  - Reset to Factory Defaults 84
- Printer settings vs. Computer Settings 67, 70, 128, 133, 223, 228, 317, 410, 414
- Printer settings vs. Computer settings 52
- Printer Status Utility
  - Windows 2000 233
  - Windows Me/98/95 321
  - Windows NT 419
  - Windows XP 138
- Printing
  - Problems
    - See *Print Quality Problems*
  - colors 572
  - Confidential printing
    - See *Secure Printing*
  - creating custom colors 593, 594, 596
  - delay before printing starts 552
  - does not start for a long time 552
  - method 572
  - noises 551
  - PDF files 597
  - printer does not print 539, 553
  - problems
    - complex data won't print 555
    - Secure printing
      - See *Secure Printing*
    - single sheets
      - and effect on transfer belt 508
    - skew 538
    - slow printing 553
      - due to high Print Resolution 553
      - stops unexpectedly 553
  - Printing black 41
  - Printing combination of text and graphics 41
  - PRINTING message 524
  - Printing multiple pages on one sheet (n-up)
    - Windows 2000
      - PCL 259
      - PS 258
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PCL 349
      - PS 347
    - Windows NT
      - PCL 441
      - PS 440
    - Windows XP
      - PCL 164
      - PS 163
  - Printing photographs 41
  - Printing problems
    - Slow printing
      - Windows Me/98/95 321
      - Windows NT 419
      - Windows XP 138
  - Printing temperatures 74, 75, 76
  - Printing, cancelling 64
  - Printing, double sided 69, 72, 73
  - Printing, duplex (double sided) 69, 72, 73

- Printing, Face Up 53
  - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
  - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
  - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
  - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
- Printing, Force the printer to print 64
- Printing, Problems
  - Slow printing
    - Windows 2000 233
- Printing, reducing text to fit 107
- Printing, simplex (single sided) 69, 72, 73
- Printing, single sided 69, 72, 73
- PrintSuperVision 730
- PRN files
  - Storage Device Manager 611
- PRNUSBX WRITE ERROR message 548
- Problem Solving
  - Error Log (Report) 86
- PROCESSING message 524
- Profiles
  - Input
    - Windows 2000
      - PS 254
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS 344
    - Windows XP
      - PS 159
  - Output
    - Windows 2000
      - PS 254
    - Windows Me/98/95
      - PS 344
    - Windows XP
      - PS 159

- Projects
  - Storage Device Manager 610
- Proof and print
  - Deleting Copies
    - Windows 2000 286
    - Windows Me/98/95 376
    - Windows NT 468
    - Windows XP 190
  - install the optional hard disk drive 562
  - Printing Copies
    - Windows 2000 285
    - Windows Me/98/95 375
    - Windows NT 467
    - Windows XP 189
  - Using
    - Windows 2000 283
    - Windows Me/98/95 373
    - Windows NT 465
    - Windows XP 187
- Proofing
  - CMYK color images
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - paper, part numbers 577
- Protocol
  - EtherTalk 111
  - NETBEUI 111
  - Netware 111
  - TCP/IP 111
- Pure black 41
- R**
  - RAM CHECK message 524
  - RARP 111
  - RAW mode
    - Network 97
    - USB 97

- Ready light 56
  - Flashing 63
  - ON 63
- Rear paper exit
  - Opening and closing 53, 54, 55
- Rear stopper 44
- Receive buffer
  - full
    - Parallel 109
    - USB 110
  - size 112
- Recovery
  - Automatic
    - memory overflow 97
    - print overrun 97
- Recycled
  - Paper (Media) Type 91
- Recycled paper 74
  - Paper (Media) Type 91
  - Windows 2000 238
  - Windows Me/98/95 327
  - Windows NT 424
  - Windows XP 143
- Redi-Strip Envelopes 578
- Reducing text to fit 107
  - letter to A4 101
- Registering
  - clients 651
  - printers 651
- Registration
  - Auto Adjust 94
  - fine adjustment, by color 95
- REGISTRATION ADJUST TEST
  - message 525
- REGISTRATION ERROR
  - message 525
- Relative Colorimetric
  - PS
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
- REMOVE THE PAPER message
  - 525
- Rendering Intents
  - Absolute Colorimetric
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - Auto
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - Perceptual
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - Relative Colorimetric
    - Windows 2000P 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
  - Saturation
    - Windows 2000 253
    - Windows Me/98/95 342
    - Windows NT 439
    - Windows XP 158
- Rendering, Color Rendering
  - Dictionaries
    - Windows 2000 252
    - Windows Me/98/95 341
    - Windows NT 438
    - Windows XP 157

## Reports

Color Swatch Sample 594

Error 98

Error Log 86

Hexadecimal dump 115

information about print jobs 651

List of current printer settings  
82

list of files in printer's memory  
(HDD) 623

Network Administrator 651

## Resolution

### Print

#### Changing

Windows 2000 270

Windows Me/98/95 360

Windows NT 454

Windows XP 174

Print Menu setting 90

## Resource save

Font cache size 112

## Restore Menu 116

## RGB

numbers for software  
applications 595

## RGB only, matching photographs

Windows 2000 241

Windows Me/98/95 330

Windows NT 427

Windows XP 146

## RGB only, matching specific colors

Windows 2000 242

Windows Me/98/95 331

Windows NT 428

Windows XP 147

## RGB only, matching vivid colors

Windows 2000 243

Windows Me/98/95 332

Windows NT 429

Windows XP 148

## RGB or CMYK

Windows 2000 240

Windows Me/98/95 329

Windows NT 426

Windows XP 145

## RGB or CMYK, matching photographs

Windows 2000 241

Windows Me/98/95 330

Windows XP 146

## RGB or CMYK, matching specific colors

Windows 2000 242

Windows Me/98/95 331

Windows NT 428

Windows XP 147

## RGB or CMYK, matching vivid colors

Windows 2000 243

Windows Me/98/95 332

Windows NT 429

Windows XP 148

## RGB vs. CMYK

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 324

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

## RGB, setting your own color values

Windows 2000 247

Windows Me/98/95 336

Windows NT 433

Windows XP 152



RGB, Using ICC Profiles

PS

Windows 2000 254

Windows Me/98/95 344

Windows XP 159

RGB, Windows ICM Color

Matching

PCL or PS

Windows 2000 257

Windows Me/98/95 346

Windows XP 162

Rough

Paper (Media) Type 91

Rough paper

Paper (Media) Type 91

## S

Sample

Color Swatches 594

Saturation, adjustment for color

596

Saving

Toner 90

Second page

Duplex printing 114

Secure print

deleting a job from the front  
(control) panel

Windows 2000 291

Windows Me/98/95 380

Windows NT 472

Windows XP 194

install the optional hard disk  
drive 562

printing at the printer

Windows 2000 290

Windows Me/98/95 379

Windows NT 471

Windows XP 193

Using

Windows 2000 287

Windows Me/98/95 377

Windows NT 469

Windows XP 191

Security envelopes 578

SELECT button 65

Self-sealing envelopes 75

Service

ID Check Pattern 87

Image drum test 87

SERVICE CALL message 525

SERVICE CALL/034 message  
560

Settings

Menu 82

Printer 82

Shading 543

Shipping the printer 29, 520

packing materials 29, 521

LED head restraint 30

sealing the toner 521

Short edge

duplex (double sided) printing

Print Menu setting 89

Shutdown

Shutdown Menu 88

Shutdown sequence

Data lost, when printer  
turned off 88

SHUTDOWN message 525

Simplex

Single sided printing 69, 72, 73

Single sided

Simplex printing 69, 72, 73

Size

of Flash memory 112

of Font Cache 112

of Receive Buffer 112

SIZE MISMATCH message 525

- Skew, paper 538
- Slow printing 553
  - and Print Resolution 553
  - Windows 2000 233
  - Windows Me/98/95 321
  - Windows NT 419
  - Windows XP 138
- Soft reset
  - USB 110
- Software applications
  - how color is displayed
    - Windows 2000 238
    - Windows Me/98/95 327
    - Windows NT 424
    - Windows XP 143
  - Media Type 52, 67, 70
  - Paper Feed 52, 67, 70
  - Paper Size 52, 67, 70
  - Paper Type 52, 67, 70
- Software Utilities 600, 733
- Spanish, display language 98
- Specifications, for printer 572
- Speed, print
  - Monochrome 90
- Spots, on output
  - 113 mm intervals 540
  - 44 - 94 mm intervals 540
  - evenly spaced 540
  - See *Print Quality Problems*
- sRGB, Color matching
  - Windows 2000 251
  - Windows Me/98/95 340
  - Windows NT 437
  - Windows XP 156
- sRGB, Color Matching Method
  - Windows 2000 246
  - Windows Me/98/95 335
  - Windows NT 432
  - Windows XP 151
- Stacker
  - Output capacity
    - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
    - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
    - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
    - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
- STACKER FULL message 525
- Stains
  - toner 498
- Status messages 522
  - See *Messages*
- Status Utility
  - Windows 2000 233
  - Windows Me/98/95 321
  - Windows NT 419
  - Windows XP 138
- Storage
  - of paper 74
- Storage device manager 600
- Straight through paper feed path
  - 53, 54
    - Paper type 72, 73
    - Paper weight 72, 73
    - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
    - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
    - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
    - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171

- Stripes, on output
  - See *Print Quality Problems*
- Subnet mask 111
- Sunlight
  - monitor settings
    - Windows 2000 237
    - Windows Me/98/95 326
    - Windows NT 423
    - Windows XP 142
- Support
  - website 74, 76
- Swedish, display language 98
- SWOP 95
- Symbol sets
  - FX emulation 106
  - PCL emulation 100
  - PPR emulation 104
- Synflex print media 577
- System Adjust Menu 114, 115
- System Administrator
  - installing a network connection 62
- System Configuration Menu 97
  - default settings 582
- System Menu
  - default settings 591

## T

- TCP/IP Protocol 111
- Tear proof
  - paper 577
- Television
  - default Color Temperature setting
    - Windows 2000 237
    - Windows Me/98/95 326
    - Windows NT 423
    - Windows XP 142

- Temperature
  - operating specifications 574
  - Printing specifications 74, 75, 76
  - Requirements for printing
    - for envelopes 75
    - for labels 76
    - for paper 74
  - storage specifications 574
- Test
  - Registration Adjust 525
- Test Print Menu 87
  - ID Check Pattern 87
- Tests
  - Network self-diagnosis 111
- Text
  - Height
    - FX emulation 108
    - PPR emulation 105
    - reducing to fit on letter-size paper 107
- Thermal Transfer Paper 74
- Thickness
  - Paper, Labels 73
- Time
  - start up time 573
  - to first print
    - color 572
    - mono 572
- TOF
  - See *Top of Form*
- Toner 498
  - Black 41
  - disposal 500
  - Handling precautions 34
  - Installation 34, 498
    - Messages don't clear 39
  - Life

- by color 118
- life expectancy 498
  - by color 118
  - of first toner cartridge in a new image drum 498
- LOW TONER
  - menu setting 98
- messages do not clear 498
- packing for shipment 521
- part numbers 575
- replacing 505
- rubs off output 543
- safety precautions 498
- sealing for shipping 521
- stains 498
- toner layer thickness 95
- TONER LOW
  - does not disappear 39
  - printer stops printing 98
- Toner Reproduction Curve (TRC) 93
- Toner Save
  - mode 40
  - Print Menu setting 90
- TONER LOW message 39, 522
  - message does not clear 498
- Toner Save 40, 174, 270, 361, 455
- TONER SENSOR ERROR
  - message 522
- Top of Form
  - position
    - FX emulation 107
    - PPR emulation 105
- Transfer belt
  - Life 118
  - life expectancy 508
  - part numbers 576
  - replacing 508

- Transparencies 91, 92
  - auto detection 90
- Duplexing 73
- Exit path
  - Stacker (Face-up)
    - Windows 2000 224, 232, 262, 266
    - Windows Me/98/95 319, 352, 356
    - Windows NT 411, 418, 444, 450
    - Windows XP 129, 137, 167, 171
  - Paper Exit 73
  - Paper Feed 73
  - Paper Weight 73
  - part numbers 577
  - Print Menu setting 90
- Tray 0 is the MP Tray 522
- Tray 1
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weights 72, 73
- Tray 2
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weights 72, 73
- Tray 3
  - Paper Sizes 69
  - Paper Types 72, 73
  - Paper Weight 72, 73
- TRC, Toner Reproduction Curve compensation 96
  - See *Toner*

- Troubleshooting 551
  - Error Log (Report) 86
  - Fuser Roller damaged 70
  - Hexadecimal dump 115
  - Labels 76
  - website 74, 76
- True Black 41, 101
- True Type Fonts
  - Windows 2000 215
  - Windows Me/98/95 311
  - Windows NT 402
  - Windows XP 120
- Turkish, display language 98

## U

- Ultra Heavy
  - Paper Weight 72, 73, 91
  - printer (menu) setting 74
- Unpacking 23
- UNSUITABLE SIZE message 525
- US Bond (Metric) paper
  - Duplexing 72
  - Paper Exit 72
  - Paper Feed 72
  - Paper Weight 72
- Usage
  - Fuser life 118
  - Image drum life
    - by drum color 118
    - effect of cleaning 115
  - Page counts
    - by Tray Number 117
    - Color 117
    - Monochrome 117
    - Multi purpose (MP) tray 117

- Total 117
- reports 651
- Toner life
  - by color 118
- Transfer belt life 118
- Usage Menu 117, 118
- USB 572
  - cable specifications 572
  - cannot configure 547
  - communication protocol 97
  - Interface 61, 62, 110
  - Menu 110
  - Menu, default settings 587
  - Offline Receive 110
  - precautions when using 547
  - Soft reset 110
  - transmission mode 572
- USB I/F ERROR message 525
- USB interface
  - connection 572
- User menu settings
  - reset to factory defaults 116
- Using ICC Profiles
  - Windows 2000 249
    - PS 254
  - Windows Me/98/95 338
    - PS 344
  - Windows XP 154
    - PS 159
- Utilities
  - Color 24
  - Color Swatch 593, 594, 596
  - Network 24
  - network printer status 733
  - OKI LPR 737
  - PDF Direct Print 597
  - PrintSuperVision 730
  - storage device manager 600

## V

VALUE button 65

Verso

duplex printing 114

Vertical print position adjustment

114

for duplex 114

Viewing conditions

fluorescent lighting vs. sunlight

Windows 2000 236

Windows Me/98/95 325

Windows NT 422

Windows XP 141

Vivid colors

Color matching

Windows 2000 243

Windows Me/98/95 332

Windows NT 429

Windows XP 148

Vividness, adjustment for color

596

Volume number

forms 620

## W

WAIT TIMEOUT 98

Warm up sequence 56

WARMING UP message 525

Watermarks

Windows 2000

PCL only 280

Windows Me/98/95 367

PCL only 369

Windows NT

PCL only 462

Windows XP

PCL only 184

Waterproof

paper 577

Wattage

power consumption 574

Website for Oki Data 74, 76

Weight

of printer 574

White color casts

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

White lines on output

Image drum cleaning 115

White page skip

FX emulation 107

PCL emulation 101

PPR emulation 105

White print matches paper white

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

White, monitor white vs. paper white

Windows 2000 253

Windows Me/98/95 342

Windows NT 439

Windows XP 158

Width

Font 99

Window envelopes 75

Windows ICM Color Matching

Windows 2000 257

Windows Me/98/95 346

Windows XP 162

Wrong paper size messages 64

## **X**

### x adjust

- horizontal position 114
- for duplex 114

## **Y**

### y adjust

- vertical position 114
- for duplex 114

## **Z**

### Zero character

- FX emulation 107
- PPR emulation 104